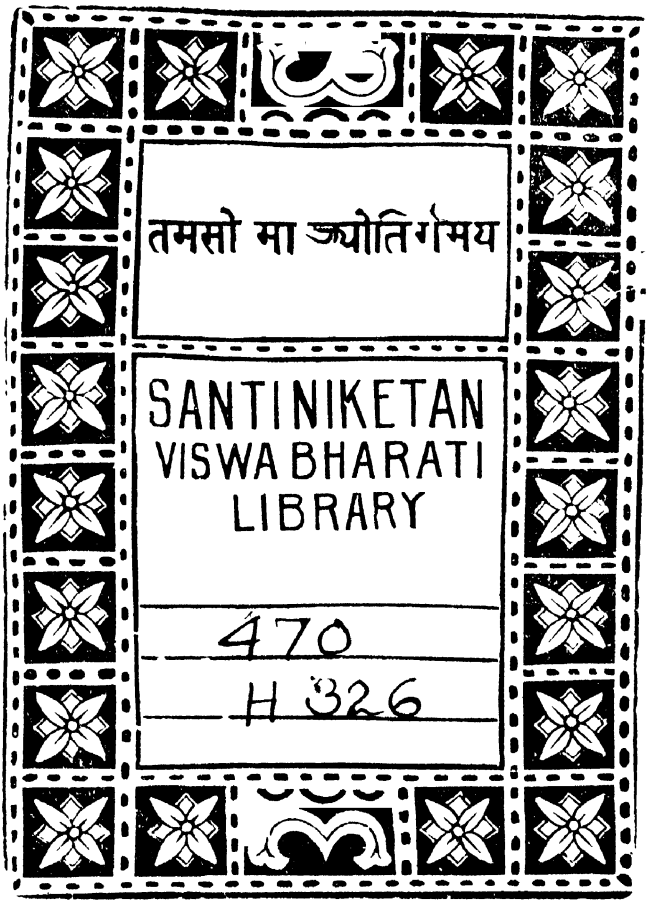

तमसो मा ज्योतिर्गमय
SANTINIKETAN
VISWA BHARATI
LIBRARY
470
H 326

MATRICULATION LATIN COURSE

MATRICULATION
LATIN COURSE

BY

B. J. HAYES, M.A. Lond. and Camb.

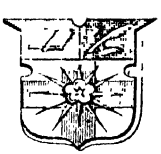
Author of "Tutorial Latin Grammar," "Junior Latin Course," etc.

AND

A. J. F. COLLINS, M.A. Oxon.

Author of "Higher Latin Composition," etc.

Fourth Impression



London: W. B. CLIVE

University Tutorial Press Ltd.

High St., New Oxford St., W.C.

1920

PREFACE.

Most British Universities at their Matriculation or Entrance Examination in Latin require from candidates (1) a knowledge of grammar, tested by questions and by sentences for translation into Latin, (2) translation at sight into English. These are the requirements for which the present book provides. It is assumed that the learner has gone through the regular accidence in some more elementary book, but full provision is made at the beginning of the Course for recapitulation of this, alongside of the study of new matter.

The extracts provide a certain amount of practice in reading, and especially in the translation of passages detached from their context, but they do not profess to take the place of a reader on the lines of *Matriculation Selections from Latin Authors*,[1] which contains longer extracts as representative as space permits of what is best in classical Latin literature.

The lessons have been arranged in such an order as to enable the learner to construe an easy piece of Latin as soon as possible. Accordingly details as to case-usages have been postponed, and the commonest infinitive, participial, and subjunctive constructions have been dealt with earlier. For purpose of reference the accidence has been

[1] *Matriculation Selections from Latin Authors.* By Watt and Hayes (Univ. Tutorial Press, 4s.).

LESSON		PAGE
18.	FINAL CLAUSES; VERBS OF FEARING	111
19.	DEPENDENT COMMAND; PRONOUNS IN COMPLEX SENTENCES	115
20.	FINAL RELATIVE CLAUSES; QUIN	119
21.	CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	123
22.	,, ,, (*continued*)...	127
23.	,, ,, (*continued*)	130
24.	TEMPORAL CLAUSES	134
25.	,, ,, (*continued*)	138
26.	,, ,, (*continued*)	141
27.	CONCESSIVE CLAUSES	144
28.	CAUSAL CLAUSES	149
29.	LOCAL AND COMPARATIVE CLAUSES ...	152
30.	PARTICIPLES AND CLAUSES	156
31.	COMPLEX SENTENCES; REPORTED DESCRIPTION AND CONDITION	159
32.	PROSODY AND SCANSION	165
33.	THE PERIOD	170
34.	IRREGULARITIES OF 1ST DECLENSION; THE ACCUSATIVE	175
35.	,, ,, 2ND AND 3RD DECLENSIONS; THE ACCUSATIVE (*continued*) ...	179
36.	THE GENITIVE	185
37.	IRREGULARITIES OF 4TH AND 5TH DECLENSIONS; THE DATIVE...	192
38.	HETEROCLITE SUBSTANTIVES; THE LOCATIVE ...	198
39.	GREEK SUBSTANTIVES; THE ABLATIVE	204
40.	THE ABLATIVE (*continued*); FUTURE IMPERATIVE ...	209
41.	CASE-USAGES (MISCELLANEOUS); SOME ADVERBS	216
42.	SUB-DEPENDENT CLAUSES	221
43.	,, ,, (*continued*)	226
44.	PREPOSITIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS	230
45.	CONTRACTED FORMS OF VERBS; THE TENSES	237

LESSON PAGE
46. ORATIO OBLIQUA 241
47. ROMAN CALENDAR 246
48. ROMAN MONEY; PRAENOMINA 249

PART II. (SUMMARY OF ACCIDENCE.)

SUBSTANTIVES 253
ADJECTIVES 259
NUMERALS 263
PRONOUNS, PERSONAL, DEMONSTRATIVE, ETC. 264
SYNOPSIS OF PRONOUNS 268
VERBS:—
TABLE OF BASES 269
SUM 270
REGULAR VERBS 272
DEPONENT VERBS 290
PRINCIPAL PARTS 294
IRREGULAR VERBS 322
ADVERBS 332
PREPOSITIONS 333

PART III. (SUMMARY OF SYNTAX.)

TABLE OF CASE-USAGES 334
,, ,, SUBJUNCTIVE USAGES 336
TENSES IN ORATIO OBLIQUA 338
WORD-ORDER AND IDIOM 339

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY 343
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY 362
INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS 385

INTRODUCTION.

Alphabet.

1. Classical Latin, *i.e.* Latin of the best period, is the language of Roman literature during the century preceding the death of the Emperor Augustus (14 A.D.).

2. The Latin **alphabet** consisted of the capital letters now used for printing English, except that it had not **J**, **U**, or **W**.

The same form (**I**) served for the vowel **I** and the consonant **J**, and accordingly the form **J** is not used in current editions of the ancient authors or in Latin words in this book.

U and **V** were also denoted by the same form (**V**), but the modern distinction has, in deference to custom and for convenience' sake, been retained in this book, **U** (u) being used as a vowel and also after **Q**.

Note.—The letter **i** is usually a consonant when it begins a word and is followed by a vowel (**iam**), and when it stands between two vowels (**māior**).

Marks of Quantity.

3. Vowels are said to be of **long** or **short** quantity, according to the time occupied by their pronunciation.

The sign (-) denotes that the quantity of the vowel over which it is placed is long, the sign (˘) denotes that the quantity of the vowel is short. These signs are not used in the ordinary writing or printing of Latin.

Obs. Our knowledge of the quantities of Latin vowels is mainly derived from the poets. Latin metre is based on the quantity of the syllable, *i.e.* the time which it takes to pronounce a syllable. The vowel in a short syllable is short; in a long syllable the vowel, if followed by a single consonant or a vowel, is long; but if in a

long syllable the vowel is followed by two consonants or by one of the double consonants **x**, **z**, the vowel itself may be a long one or a short one. The quantity of such vowels has in most cases been settled by philological research, but the subject is not one that need trouble a beginner.

A syllable with a short vowel may be either long or short if its vowel be followed by two consonants of which the first is a mute (**b**, **p**; **g**, **c**; **d**, **t**) or **f**, and the second **l** or **r**. The mark (˘) is sometimes placed over the vowels of such syllables; *e.g.* **pă̆trēs**, plural of **pater**, *father*.

In the case of a word ending in **m** and followed in verse by a word beginning with a vowel, the final **m** and the vowel preceding it were, as far as the metre was concerned, treated as non-existent. For instance the words **monstrum horrendum ingens**, *huge dreadful monster*, make only five syllables in verse: **monstr^{um} horrend^{um} ingens**. Hence the quantity of the vowel preceding a final **m** cannot always be ascertained: such a vowel is generally pronounced short.

4. In this book the quantity of every **long** vowel is marked except in the case of—

(1) diphthongs (these are always long);

(2) vowels followed in the same word by **x** or **z**, or by two consonants, which necessarily make the syllable long;

(3) vowels preceding **m** at the end of a word.

Accentuation.

5. Latin words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable, *e.g.* **pa'ter**, *father*; **mā'ter**, *mother*, *i.e.* the first syllable is pronounced with more stress than the second, though the stress is **not** so marked as in the English words *fa'ther*, *mo'ther*.

Latin words of more than two syllables are accented on the penultimate (last syllable but one) if that syllable is long, *e.g.* **sorō'rēs**, *sisters*; but on the ante-penultimate (last syllable but two) if the penultimate is short, *e.g.* **do'minus**, *lord*; **fami'lia**, *household*.

Obs. The mark of accentuation is not used in writing or printing Latin.

PRONUNCIATION.

6. The following is approximately the pronunciation of the vowels, diphthongs, and consonants. In the case of a vowel, the quantities must be strictly observed.

VOWELS :—

ā, as second *a* in *papa*	**a**, as first *a* in *papa*
ē, as *e* in *prey* (Fr. *é* in *blé*), not e^{i}	**e**, as *e* in *set*
ī, as second *i* in *quinine*	**i**, as first *i* in *quinine*
ō, as second *o* in *follow*, not o^{u}	**o**, as first *o* in *follow*
ū, as *oo* in *boot*	**u**, as *oo* in *foot*
ȳ, like Latin ī uttered with rounded lips, or like *u* in Fr. *pure*	**y**, like Latin i uttered with rounded lips, or like *u* in Fr. *pu*

DIPHTHONGS :—

ae, nearly as *ai* in *Isaiah* (broadly pronounced)
au, as *ou* in *house*
oe, as *oi* in *boil*
ei, as *ei* in *eight*
eu, as *eu* in *feud*
ui, as French *oui*

} rarely used

NOTE.—The true pronunciation of the diphthongs is best ascertained by pronouncing the vowels of which they are composed quickly one after the other; the sounds indicated above are only approximations.

CONSONANTS :—

c, always hard, as in *can*
g, always hard, as in *go*
i (in some books printed **j**), as *y* in *ye*
r, always rolled, as *rr* in *furrier*
s, always sharp, as in *hiss* (not as in *his*)
v, as *w* in *we*
x, always as *cs*, not *gs*
z, as *dz* in *adze*

COMBINATIONS:—

bs, as *ps*; *e.g.* **trabs**, *beam*, is pronounced *trraps*
ch, **ph**, **th**, as *c*, *p*, *t*, followed by aspirate; compare *inkhorn*, *loophole*, *boathouse*
gu (before a vowel), as *gu* in *language*
qu, as *qu* in *queen*
su, as *sw* in *sweet*

The other consonants have their normal English value; t is never to be pronounced *sh* as in *diction*, nor *s* as in English *rose*.

When a consonant is doubled, it must be pronounced twice; *e.g.* **reddit**, *he gives back*, differs from **redit**, *he goes back*, just as "red deer" differs from "red ear."

PART I.

LESSON 1.

Present indicative of **sum** *and of the four regular conjugations; substantives and adjectives of the first and second declensions; simple uses of the cases.*

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

The present indicative of **sum** (§ 472), and the **present** indicative, both active and passive, of **amō, moneō, regō,** and **audiō** (§§ 473-80); the declension of **mensa** (§ 436), **dominus, magister, regnum** (§ 437), **bonus, niger** (§ 452).

Verbs.

7. In Latin, as in English, **verbs** are **inflected,** *i.e.* have different terminations or *suffixes* to denote corresponding differences in meaning. But in Latin these suffixes are more numerous than in English and express differences of voice, mood, tense, person, and number.

8. In Latin, too, these forms not only vary according to the person of the subject; they often **contain the subject in themselves,** especially in the first and second persons, *e.g.* **amās,** *thou lovest,* **amat,** *he loves,* as well as **Gaius amat,** *Gaius loves.*

9. The two **numbers,** singular and plural, are used as in English, except that the use of plural for singular in the second person, which is common in modern English, never occurs in Latin; e.g. *you love* is **amās** (singular), never (unless more persons than one are addressed) **amātis** (plural).

10. A Latin verb, with certain exceptions to be remarked later (Lessons 12–16), belongs to one or other of four **conjugations**, *i.e.* it has inflections in the present, imperfect, and future tenses similar to those possessed by one of the four verbs **amō, moneō, regō, audiō** (§§ 473-480).

The four conjugations are distinguished by the ending of the present infinitive active, which is

in the first conjugation **-āre** (**A** conjugation)
„ second „ **-ēre** (**E** conjugation)
„ third „ **-ere** (consonant conjugation)
„ fourth „ **-īre** (**I** conjugation).

11. The unchangeable part of an inflected verb to which the suffixes are added is called the **base**. The base from which the present indicative tense is formed is found by cutting off the last three letters of the present infinitive active (*e.g.* **am-, reg-**). In Part II., where the conjugation of these verbs is given, the base is separated from the suffix by a hyphen.

12. Meaning of the present indicative. In English the present indicative has two forms, e.g. *I love* and *I am loving*, according as stress is laid on the action itself or on its continuance. In Latin the one form **amō** covers both.

Substantives.

13. These have **inflexions** that indicate number and case. There are in Latin six cases—nominative, vocative, accusative, genitive, dative, ablative—of which the simpler meanings are given in §§ 20-27.

There are five **declensions** of substantives, *i.e.* Latin substantives are severally inflected in five different ways.

The vocabulary at the end of this book indicates to which declension a substantive belongs by giving after the nominative singular the suffix of the genitive singular.

14. The **base** of a substantive, *i.e.* the unchangeable part to which the case-suffixes are added, can always be ascertained by cutting off the suffix of the genitive singular. Thus the base of **mensa** (§ 436) is **mens-**, that of **magister** (§ 437) is **magistr-**.

15. In Latin, as in English, there are three **genders**, masculine, feminine, and neuter; but in Latin the masculine and feminine genders are not confined to substantives denoting persons.

The **gender** of a Latin substantive may be ascertained in some instances from its **meaning**. Thus—

(*a*) Names of **men, months, winds,** and **rivers** are **masculine.**

(*b*) Names of **women, islands, towns,** and **trees** are **feminine.**

(*c*) **Indeclinable substantives** are **neuter.**

Obs. A substantive which denotes a person—man or woman—may vary in gender according to its meaning; *e.g.* **sacerdōs**, *priest* or *priestess*, *m.* or *f.*

When, however, the gender of the substantive cannot be inferred from the meaning, it may be decided by the **termination** of the **nominative singular** and the **declension** to which the substantive belongs. The general rules for gender according to termination and declension will be dealt with under each declension.

NOTE.—The **gender** of substantives will be found in the vocabulary; in this book m. = masculine, f. = feminine, c. = common, *i.e.* either masculine or feminine, n. = neuter.

16. First Declension (cp. § 436). All substantives of this declension are feminine, unless the gender is determined by meaning (§ 15,*a*).

Classed among the males must be
Hadria, *Adriatic Sea.*

17. Second Declension (cp. § 437). The declension of substantives in **-us** and **-er** differs only in the nom. and voc. sing.

In substantives like **magister** the voc. sing. has the same form as the nominative. In the other cases **-e** is dropped before **-r**.

Obs. **Puer**, *boy*, has base **puer-**, gen. **puerī**, and retains the **e** throughout. So also **socer**, *father-in-law*, **gener**, *son-in-law*, **līberī** (pl.), *children*, **Līber**, *the god Bacchus*.

Substantives of this declension are masculine if the nom. sing. ends in **-us** or **-er**, neuter if it ends in **-um**.

The above rule does not apply to such words as are feminine by meaning (§ 15, *b*).

RULE. *Exc.* Neuters twain begin our rhyme:

Masc. in **-us**. **Vulgus**, *mob*, and **vīrus**, *slime*;
Vulgus—neuter commonly—
Sometimes masculine may be.

Feminine in **-us** are found
Alvus, *paunch*, and **humus**, *ground*;

Also **arctos**,* **carbasus**, *Constellation of the Bear, linen,*
Colus, **vannus**, **pampinus**. *Distaff, winnowing-fan, vine-leaf.*

ADJECTIVES.

18. The form of a Latin adjective varies in accordance with the gender, number, and case of the substantive to which it refers.

timidus servus	*a timid slave*
timidus nauta	*a timid sailor*
timida puella	*a timid girl*
magnum regnum	*a large kingdom*

19. In certain adjectives (called **adjectives of the first class**) the masculine and neuter forms follow the second declension, and the feminine forms follow the first declension, *e.g.* the masculines **bonus** (§ 452), **niger** (§ 452; base **nigr-**) are declined like **dominus**, **magister**; the feminines **bona**, **nigra**, like **mensa**; and the neuters **bonum**, **nigrum**, like **regnum**. A few adjectives, *e.g.* **tener**, *tender* (base **tener-**), retain the **e** throughout, like **puer**.

* Greek form; see § 448.

Simple Meanings of the Cases.

20. (1) The **nominative**, as in English, expresses the subject of the sentence, the simple sentence consisting, in its normal form, of a substantive as the subject and a verb as the predicate. The verb agrees with its subject both in number and person:—

magister clāmat	*the master calls*
magistrī clāmant	*the masters call*
bona puella amātur	*the good girl is loved*
multī servī in prātō sunt	*many slaves are in the meadow* (or *there are many slaves in the meadow*)

21. The verb **sum**, *I am*, generally requires the addition of some substantive or adjective before it can stand as a complete predicate; if a substantive is added, it must be in the same case as the subject; if an adjective, it must be in the same gender, number, and case as the subject.

Coriolī est oppidum	*Corioli is a town*
nautae sunt malī	*the sailors are wicked*

22. (2) The **vocative** denotes the person addressed.

puerī, dormītis	*boys, you are asleep*

23. (3) The **accusative** denotes the direct object of a transitive verb, *i.e.* the person or thing whom an action directly affects.

rēgīna puellam amat	*the queen loves the girl*

24. The accusative also follows many prepositions, *e.g.* **in**, *into*, **sub**, *up to*, **per**, *through*, in phrases expressing motion.

equus in agrum venit	*the horse comes into the field*
per prātum ambulāmus	*we are walking through the meadow*

25. (4) The **genitive** case corresponds to the English possessive case, and also expresses nearly all the other meanings of a substantive governed by *of*, whether this substantive depends on another substantive or on an adjective.

rēgīnae fīlia	*the queen's daughter*
Vergiliī scripta	*the writings of Vergil*
corōna rosārum	*a wreath of roses*
cupidus est glōriae	*he is desirous of glory*

26. (5) The **dative** is used with the transitive verbs of *showing*, *telling*, and *giving* to express the indirect object, *i.e.* the person or thing *to* whom something is shown, told, or given. It is also used as the indirect object of intransitive or passive verbs, or of adjectives such as in English are often followed by *to* or *for* (§ 346).

agricola rēgīnae cervum indicat	*the farmer shows the queen the stag*
puer magistrō pāret	*the boy is obedient to his master*
pōma puerīs dantur	*the apples are being given to the boys*
puerī verba avō grāta sunt	*the boy's words are pleasing to his grandfather*
tibi grātiās agō	*I thank* (lit. *render thanks to*) *you*

27. (6) The **ablative** has three significations, which must be kept distinct:—

(*a*) **local**, denoting the *place where* an action takes place. The ablative here does duty for a partly lost case, the locative (§ 361). With certain exceptions, this ablative is used in prose with prepositions, *e.g.* **in**, *in* or *on*, **sub**, *under*.

magister in hortō stat	*the master is standing in the garden*
multa pōma sub mūrō sunt	*there are many apples under the wall*

Obs. Note the difference between **in** and **sub** with the accusative (§ 24) and with the ablative.

(*b*) **instrumental**, denoting the instrument *with* or *by means of* which an action is performed or a state brought about (ablative of the instrument). The ablative here does duty for a lost case, the instrumental. It is found with both active and passive verbs, and is generally used without a preposition.

rēgīna insulam portīs mūnit	*the queen fortifies the island with gates*
insula portīs mūnītur	*the island is being fortified with gates*
agrī aquā madidī sunt	*the fields are wet with water*

(*c*) **ablative proper** (**ablātiō** = *taking away*), denoting the *place from which* something comes or is separated, or answering, more generally, the question *From what?* This ablative is commonly used with prepositions, *e.g.* **ā** (**ab** before vowels), [*away*] *from*, **ē** (**ex** before vowels), *out of*, **dē**, [*down*] *from*.

agricolae amīcus ab oppidō celeriter venit	*the farmer's friend is coming quickly from the town*
Rōmānōs ā perīculō līberat	*he frees the Romans from danger*
Brūtus cōpiās ex oppidō dūcit	*Brutus leads his forces out of the town*

Order of Words.

28. The usual **order** of words in a Latin sentence, as will be gathered from the above examples, is: (1) subject with its attribute, (2) indirect object, (3) direct object, (4) ablative, (5) adverb, (6) verb. The attribute usually precedes the substantive. The order in Latin, however, is less rigid than it is in English and is liable to be changed for the sake of emphasising some word in the sentence. For all words but the subject, the beginning is the emphatic position; for the subject, the end.

puellam rēgīna amat	*it is the girl that the queen loves*
sunt in pratō multī servī	*there are many slaves in the meadow*

29. Conjunctions linking two simple sentences, *e.g.* **et**, *and*, **sed**, *but*, **nam**, *for*, are generally placed before the second.

venit et videt	*he comes and sees*

There are certain conjunctions, however, which cannot come first, such as **enim**, *for*, **autem**, *but*. For the purpose of the following exercises these are marked with an asterisk in the English-Latin vocabulary. They follow the first word in the sentence in which they refer, but cannot come between a preposition and its case.

venit; nautam enim videt	*he comes; for he sees the sailor*
in silvā enim habitat deus	*for in the wood there lives a god*

On the other hand, a genitive depending on a substantive governed by a preposition frequently comes between the preposition and the substantive.

in Marcī agrō ambulō	*I am walking in Marcus' field*

For a fuller treatment of this subject see §§ 527-36.

Exercises.

30. The vocabularies (Latin-English and English-Latin) at the end of the book contain all words used in the exercises except pronouns, numerals and prepositions, for which see §§ 456-470 and 520-523.

Words in square brackets [ ] are not to be translated.

Words joined by a hyphen are to be translated by a single word in Latin; but some which are not so joined may or may not be so translated, according to the rules given in this and the following lessons.

READING LESSON 1.

The Farmer and his Servants.

Mane agricola somnum exuit; e lecto salit. Mox servos e somno excitat, cuncti enim adhuc dormiunt. "Aurora venit," dicit agricola; "sed adhuc dormitis, o servi; nondum terram curvo aratro vertitis. Arduus est labor, scio; et hodie ventus infestus per caelum mittitur. Sed semper agricolae servo impigro favemus; et certum argenti praemium bonis servis nunc paro." Non mora est; audiunt verba domini, oculos aperiunt, in agros excedunt, terram aratris fatigant, praemium exspectant

EXERCISE 1.

1. The master praises the slave. 2. The boys are walking into the temple. 3. The son of the queen is safe, and he is giving thanks to the gods. 4. The farmer's private gardens are full of roses. 5. The barbarians always salute the dawn; for the dawn, they think, is a goddess. 6. The wicked crowd of sailors approves the deed. 7. Suddenly Bacchus is aroused from (*e*) sleep. 8. In the forest there are [some] good apples; but they are now being plucked from (*de*) the branches. 9. The spear is being fixed into the ground; I see [its] shadow. 10. You care-for [your] beautiful gardens, farmers, but not for [your] unhealthy slaves. 11. He is striking the Roman sailor with a spear. 12. The white horse is running in the meadow. 13. Nymphs, the daughters of gods, inhabit the streams 14. In the woods the goddess Diana kills the tall stags with [her] spear; so the Romans believe. 15. Flame rises, and water falls; but we are-ignorant-of the cause. 16. The slave hears [his] master's words, and is hiding the wine. 17. The farmer is sitting on [his] horse outside the gate of the villa, and is drinking water. 18. The slaves are coming from the town to-day, and are bringing-back many letters. 19. Boys never heed their masters' words. 20. It is the queen that the timid slaves hear.

LESSON 2.

Imperfect and future indicative of **sum** *and of the regular verbs; imperative;* **capiō**; *simple questions; substantival use of adjectives.*

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

The imperfect and future indicative and present infinitive of **sum** (§ 472); the imperfect and future indicative and imperative, active and passive, of **amō, moneō, regō, audiō** (§§ 473-80); the corresponding tenses together with the present indicative of **capiō** (§ 481).

Imperfect and Future Indicative, and Present Imperative.

31. These are formed from the same base as is the present indicative (§ 11). Thus **am-ō**, future active **am-ābō**; **reg-ō**, future passive **reg-ar**; **aud-iō**, present imperative passive **aud-īre**. This base is known as the **present base** of a verb.

Note.—Three regular verbs drop the final **-e** in the 2nd sing. pres. imper. act., viz. **dīcō, dūcō, faciō**, thus: **dīc**, *say*; **dūc**, *lead*; **fac**, *make* or *do*.

32. The **imperfect indicative** (*e.g.* **amābam**) answers generally to the English continuous past (*I was loving*). It is also used to express habitual action in past time (*I used to love*). When the past tense in English (e.g. *loved*) is used in either of these senses, it is of course translated by the Latin imperfect.

Marcum quondam amābam *formerly I loved Marcus*

33. The **present imperative** is used, as in English, in direct commands.

servī, audīte verba dominī	*slaves, hear the master's words*

VERBS BELONGING TO THE THIRD CONJUGATION, WITH THE SHORT -I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

34. Some verbs, like **capiō** (§ 481), belong, in the tenses formed from the present base, partly to the third and partly to the fourth conjugation. The present infinitive in **-ere** stamps them as belonging to the third conjugation (§ 10), but they are conjugated like **audiō** in those parts in which the **i** of **audiō** is followed by a vowel, *i.e.* in which the **i** is short; in other parts they are conjugated like **regō**.

QUESTIONS.

35. **Simple questions** are in English of two kinds:—

(*a*) those introduced by some interrogative adjective, pronoun, or adverb, e.g. *which of the two? who? why?*

(*b*) those not so introduced, but indicated by an inversion of subject and verb, e.g. *was he looking at the boy?*

36. Questions of the class (*a*) are in Latin, as in English, introduced by **interrogative adjectives, pronouns,** and **adverbs.** Examples of such adjectives are **quantus,** *how great?* **quot,** *how many?* **Quantus** is declined like **bonus,** but **quot** is indeclinable, *i.e.* it does not change its form whatever may be the number. gender, or case of its substantive. As in English, such words can be used to introduce exclamations as well as questions.

quanta erat turba?	*how great was the crowd?*
quanta erat turba!	*how great was the crowd!*
quot cervōs caedēmus?	*how many stags shall we kill?*

Obs. In the first example **turba** is the subject and **quanta** part of the predicate, corresponding respectively to **nautae** and **malī** in the example above (§ 21).

37. Examples of interrogative adverbs are **cūr**, *why?* **ubi**, *where?* **unde**, *whence?* **quō**, *whither?* **quandō**, *when?*

cūr aquila ad āram veniēbat?	*why was the eagle coming to the altar?*
unde venīs, et quō curris?	*whence are you coming* (or *where do you come from*) *and whither* (or *where*) *are you running?*
ubi nunc es?	*where are you now?*

NOTE.—*Whither?* in English is almost obsolete, and *where?* does duty for both *in what place?* and *to what place?* In translation from English into Latin *where?* meaning *in what place?* is to be rendered by **ubi**, but *where?* meaning *to what place?* by **quō**. Similarly *whence?* has largely given place to *where . . . from?*

38. Questions of the class (*b*) are introduced in Latin by an **interrogative particle**:—

-ne, simply asking for information;
num, expecting the answer "no";
nonne, expecting the answer "yes."

The particle **-ne** is **enclitic**, *i.e.* it cannot stand by itself. It is appended to the emphatic word in the question, and this word as a rule stands first in the sentence. **-ne** is used without regard to the character of the answer expected, though the character of that answer is often clear from the context.

NOTE.—Sometimes the interrogative particle is omitted.

Nerviōsne (*or* **Nerviōs**) **superābit Caesar?**	*will Caesar overcome the Nervii?*
Caesarne Nerviōs superābit?	*is it Caesar who will overcome the Nervii?*
num barbarōs Rōmulus regēbat?	*Romulus did not rule over barbarians, did he?*
nonne Rōmānōs Sulla regit?	*does not Sulla rule Romans?*

Obs. **Nonne** = **nōn** (*not*) + **ne**, and so answers exactly to the English question containing a *not*.

Enclitics.

39. For the purpose of accentuation **-ne** is regarded as forming part of the word to which it is appended, *e.g.* **superāvit'ne**. The same is the case with **-que**, *and*, a word which connects more closely than **et**, and so is often used to couple two substantives or adjectives. It is added to the *second* of the two words it connects, *e.g.* **servī dominīque**, *slaves and masters*.

Adjectives used Substantivally.

40. Adjectives may be used in Latin, as sometimes in English, as **substantives**; masculine adjectives, especially in the plural, denoting *men*, and the neuter adjectives (nom. and acc., sing. or pl.) denoting *things*.

bonī honesta probant	*the good* (i.e. *good men*) *approve of honourable things*
prūdentis est tacēre, stultī sē nimium laudāre	*it is characteristic of a wise man to hold his tongue, of a fool to praise himself too much*
bonī malum nōn amant	*the good do not love evil* (or *what is evil*)

Omission of Personal Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives.

41. Personal pronouns are much less frequently used in Latin than in English.

(1) The pronouns of the **1st** and **2nd persons** are in Latin used in the nominative for the sake of emphasis or contrast only; in the other cases they are used as in English; cp. § 8.

(2) Latin has no personal pronoun of the **3rd person**, except the reflexive **sē**. For emphasis or contrast **hīc**, *this*, or **ille**, *that*, may be used, or with reference to something just mentioned **is** (§ 156). But, generally speaking,

the subject of a sentence, if of the 3rd person, is in the first instance expressed by a substantive and is after that left unexpressed; the same holds good also of the direct object.

Marcus ōlim prātum servābat; Gaius nunc vastat	*Marcus formerly preserved the meadow; Gaius is now destroying it*
tū templa aedificās, ego dīruō	*you build temples, I pull them down*

42. Possessive adjectives are used in Latin only when they are needed for the sake of clearness or emphasis. Those belonging to the first and second persons are —

meus, *my* **noster**, *our* **tuus**, *thy* **vester**, *your*

Obs. **Meus** and **tuus** are declined like **bonus** (§ 452), **noster** and **vester** like **niger** (§ 452). The voc. sing. masc. of **meus** is **mī**.

Marcus fīlium equitāre docet	*Marcus is teaching his son to ride*
fīlium equitāre doceō	*I am teaching my son to ride*
Marcus fīlium meum equitāre docet	*Marcus is teaching my son to ride*

READING LESSON 2.

The Wolf and the Lamb.

Lupus et agnus quondam ad fluvium veniebant; inopia aquae compelluntur. Supra stabat lupus, infra agnus, longeque a lupo distat. At cupidus cibi lupus belli causam quaerit. "Bibo sane aquam," exclamat, "sed valde ingratam bibo. Tua est culpa, agne improbe. Cur ita turbidum facis fluvium?" Nihil primum respondit agnus: nimiam saevitiam minasque lupi timet. Tandem, "Querela tua iniusta est," inquit, "domine; ad tuam ripam primum decurrit aqua, deinde ad meam." "Unde igitur turbatur?" exclamat lupus. "Nescio." "Magnum malum

est ignorantia, dicit lupus, "et semper punietur." Statim ad agnum currit, miserumque occidit.

EXERCISE 2.

1. Why are you coming from the town? I am avoiding many and great dangers. 2. I will show the bull to the husbandman; perhaps he will buy [it]. 3. Just men do not fear the threats of [their] enemies. 4. They endure threats and chains with equanimity [say, "with an equal mind"]. 5. I was walking yesterday on the bank of the stream. 6. The fields are pleasant, the stream cool; come to-morrow and you will see [them]. 7. Will you find at last the eagle's nest? 8. As yet (*adhuc*) you are safe; the Romans will not approach your hiding-place. 9. But you will perhaps be forced into the open plain. 10. Where will you hide your money, slaves? the master will certainly find it, and you will be beaten with rods. 11. Sick men are never favourable to the healthy. 12. Do they not envy them? and how great evils are always being produced by envy! 13. Where will the sailors be driven? They are now approaching the rocks. 14. Few men now enter the temples, few worship the gods. 15. The gods are weak, they say, and give not [say, "nor give"] help. 16. You are not ill to-day also, are you? 17. Brutus is an honourable man, is he not? 18. How many letters will the queen write? I do not know, but the messenger will carry them. 19. The eagles' nests hold many eggs, and are always in a high place. 20. Don't you see? Many boys are coming from their games (*sing.*) through the wood; the rest are being left in the field.

LESSON 3.

Tenses of the indicative active formed from the perfect base; 3rd declension, I-stems, in substantives and adjectives; further simple uses of the accusative and genitive.

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

The perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative of **sum** (§ 472); the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative active of **amō, moneō, regō, audiō** (§§ 473-6), **capiō** (§ 481).

The declension of **nūbēs, hostis** (§ 438), **urbs, dens** (§ 439), **mare** (§ 440), **animal** (§ 441), **tristis, fēlix** (§ 454).

Perfect Tenses of the Indicative Active.

43. The preceding lessons included some tenses formed from the present base of verbs. The tenses in this lesson are formed from the **perfect base**; *e.g.* the perfect base of **amō** is **amāv-**, from which is formed the perfect indicative active **amāv-ī**, the pluperfect **amāv-eram**, the future-perfect **amāv-erō**.

44. The suffixes that are added to the perfect bases to form the above tenses are the **same in every conjugation**, and, in fact, in every Latin verb. Thus, given the perfect base of **sum**, viz. **fu-**, the pluperfect is **fu-eram**. The **perfect base** must be ascertained by cutting off the **-ī** of the perfect indicative.

Obs. In most verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations the perfect bases are formed like those of **amō, moneō,** and **audiō,** *i.e.* they end in **-āv-, -u-, -īv-** respectively. Exceptions will be found in § 498. The perfect bases in verbs of the third conjugation cannot be brought under a single rule and must be learned in the case of each verb. The most important verbs are tabulated in § 498.

45. The perfect indicative has a double function: it is equivalent to (*a*) the English simple past, (*b*) the English present-perfect (simple or continuous). Thus amāvī denotes (*a*) *I loved*, (*b*) *I have loved* or *I have been loving.*

(*a*) **quot piscēs herī cēpistī?**	*how many fish did you catch yesterday?*
(*b*) **quot piscēs adhūc cēpistī?**	*how many fish have you caught up to now?*

SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION (§§ 438-44).

46. Substantives of this declension fall into two main classes: (1) those which have genitive plural ending in **-ium** (I-stems), (2) those which have genitive plural ending in **-um** preceded by a consonant (consonant-stems).

47. As in the second declension, the suffixes in this declension vary according as the substantive is (*a*) masculine or feminine, (*b*) neuter.

(1) I-SUBSTANTIVES.

48. This class is chiefly composed of (*a*) **masculine and feminine substantives** with an equal number of syllables in the nom. sing. and gen. sing.: these are known as **parisyllabic** substantives (pār = *equal*); (*b*) **neuter substantives** in **-e, -al, -ar.**

49. (*a*) **Masculine and Feminine I-substantives.** These add **-ēs** or **-is** to the base in the nom. sing. Compare the declension of **nūbēs, hostis** (§ 438).

50. Substantives with the base ending in two consonants also belong to this declension; these have the suffix **-s** in the nom. sing. Compare the declension of **urbs, dens** (§ 439).

51. (*b*) **Neuter I-substantives.** Substantives with nom. sing. ending in **-e** drop the **-e** in the base. Compare the declension of **mare** (§ 440).

ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS (§ 454).

52. Adjectives of this class are declined like substantives of the third declension. Those which follow the declension of the I-substantives fall into two main divisions:—

(1) Adjectives which have two forms in the nom. sing., one for the masculine and feminine, the other for the neuter;

(2) Adjectives having in the nom. sing. one form which serves for all genders alike, and with base ending in a long syllable.

53. Adjectives that belong to division (1) above are those, like **tristis** (§ 454), of which the masculine and feminine singular ends in **-is**, the neuter singular ending in **-e** and being declined like **mare** (§ 440). The interrogative adjective **quālis**, *of what kind?* (compare **quantus**, § 36), belongs to this division.

54. Adjectives that belong to division (2) above have the nominative singular ending in **-s** or its equivalent, and are declined like **urbs** (§ 439) and **dens** (§ 439), except that the nom. and acc. neut. plur. end in **-ia**, and that the ablative singular may end in **-ī**. Examples: **fēlix** (= **fēlic-s**, § 454), **prūdens** (§ 454).

SIMPLE USES OF THE CASES (*continued*).

55. Accusative. As in English, the object of verbs of *making* or *calling* (known as factitive verbs) has a **predicate** in agreement with it.

Clōdium tribūnum creant	*they elect Clodius tribune*
Gāium sapientem appellant	*they call Gaius wise*

Obs. When a sentence such as the above is reproduced in a passive form, the predicative word agrees with the subject of the passive verb; the above examples become **Clōdius creātur tribūnus, Gāius appellātur sapiens.** This use corresponds exactly to that of the nominative after the verb **sum** (§ 21).

56. As in English, a verb of *teaching* takes two accusatives, the one of the person, the other of the subject taught.

puerōs elementa docēbam	*I was teaching boys their letters*

In Latin, as occasionally in English, verbs that denote *asking* [*for*] something also take two such accusatives.

clāvem portārum Marcum poscēbat	*he was asking Marcus for the key of the gates*
sententiam Titum rogābit	*he will ask Titus* [*for*] *his opinion*

57. When sentences such as the above are reproduced in a passive form, the thing with reference to which the action is performed (*e.g.* the thing taught or asked for) is retained in the accusative.

puerī elementa docēbantur (or **discēbant**)	*the boys were being taught their letters*
Marcus clāvem poscēbātur	*Marcus was being asked for the key*
Titus sententiam rogābitur	*Titus will be asked his opinion*

Obs. **Discō** (*I learn*) is generally used instead of **doceor.**

58. Genitive. The possessive genitive (§ 25) can, as occasionally in English, be used as a **predicate** with **sum,** etc. It may, together with the verb, often be translated *belongs to.*

aurum ōlim hostium, nunc Rōmānōrum est	*the gold was formerly the enemy's; it now belongs to the Romans*

Obs. The enemy, used collectively, is usually translated by the plural **hostēs.**

READING LESSON 3.

A Haunted Spot.

Erat quondam in urbe Athenis magnus et fertilis ager, sed valde infamis. Per silentium noctis sonus vinculorum longe primum, deinde e proximo, reddebatur: mox forma senis sordidi et tristis apparebat; longa erat barba, capilli super frontem horrebant; palmis catenas gerebat quatiebatque. Inde omnibus per timorem noctes erant maestae et dirae; vigiliae morbos, morbi mortem gignebant. Nam interdiu quoque memoria formae ante oculos erat; senex interdiu non apparuit, sed omnes velut praesentem timuerunt. Locus inde ab hominibus et animalibus deserebatur; monstrum ibi manebat.

EXERCISE 3.

1. I have read your letter, but I do not understand it. Why did you not write yesterday? 2. I asked Tullius for bread, but he did not listen to my words. 3. Is he cruel by nature (*abl.*)? Is he foolish? We do not know. 4. Why do you (*plur.*) fear the enemy? 5. They are not brave, nor do they expect victory. 6. My bird has flown far [away]; I have never lost a bird before. What kind [of bird] was it? 7. Preserve [me] safe, gods of-my-country (*adj.*); I always cared for your altars. 8. The profane never entered your temples, for I guarded them. Shall I be deserted now? 9. The beams of the temples are being burned with fire: the flames are rising still. 10. Your life will be preserved and you will be chosen as queen. 11. Hear now the words of your servant. 12. How many roses did the girl gather in the garden? She gathered no roses [at all]. The shower stopped her. 13. I used to teach our citizens the art of war. 14. They are now learning the arts of peace; but what kind of men are teaching them? 15. He has given back the booty to the enemy: all [men] are blaming him. 16. You have conquered to-day, but you will be defeated to-morrow. 17. A black serpent is hiding in the grass; the teeth of serpents carry death for

all. 18. The life of animals is short; but they are happy, for they are-ignorant-of death. 19. After the victory, the Romans seized all the ships of their allies. 20. The seats of the mighty have fallen, their lofty columns are being covered with sand; the farmers are ploughing in their cities.

LESSON 4.

Indicative passive of regular verbs (perfect tenses); third declension of substantives and adjectives (consonant-stems); further simple uses of the dative and ablative.

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

The perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative passive of **amō, moneō, regō, audiō, capiō** (§§ 477-81); the declension of **hiems, princeps** (§ 442), **crūs, opus** (§ 443), **pauper** (§ 455).

Perfect Tenses of the Indicative Passive.

59. These tenses are made up of the perfect participle passive of each of the verbs, with the addition of the present, imperfect, and future tenses of **sum**. This perfect participle is formed by adding **-us** to a third base (cp. §§ 31, 43) of the verb, the **supine base**. *E.g.* the supine bases of **moneō** and **regō** are **monit-** and **rect-**, from which are formed the perfect participles passive **monitus** and **rectus**.

60. The supine base is ascertained by cutting off the **-um** of the accusative supine.

Obs. In most verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations the supine bases are formed like those of **amō, moneō**, and **audiō**, *i.e.* they end in **-āt-, -it-, -īt-** respectively. Exceptions will be found in § 498. The supine bases in verbs of the third conjugation cannot be brought under a single rule and must be learned in the case of each verb. The most important verbs are tabulated in § 498.

61. The three forms—

(1) Present infinitive active,
(2) Perfect indicative active (first person singular),
(3) Supine (accusative),

together with the present indicative active (first person singular), are called the **principal parts** of a verb, and must be known before a verb can be conjugated.

62. The **past participle** is really an adjective, as in English, and so is inflected throughout (like **bonus**); thus—

puellae amātae sunt	*the girls have been loved*

This corresponds in syntax exactly to **puellae bonae sunt.**

63. In the case of verbs that express the **bringing of a thing into a certain condition**, the perfect participle may denote the present condition brought about by past action.

mūniō	*I fortify* (i.e *put into a fortified condition*)
urbs mūnīta est	either (*a*) *the city was* or *has been fortified* (i.e. *put into a fortified condition*) or (*b*) *the city is fortified* (i.e. *is in a fortified condition*)
urbs mūnīta fuit	*the city was fortified* (i.e. *was in a fortified condition*)
urbs mūnītur	*the city is being fortified*

SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

(2) CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES (§§ 442-3).

64. The genitive plural of these substantives usually ends in **-um** preceded by a consonant, and they form the second (and larger) division of the third declension (cp. § 46). They mainly include (*a*) **masculine and feminine substantives** with a larger number of syllables in the gen. sing. than in the nom. sing.—these are known as **imparisyllabic** substantives (**impār** = *unequal*): cp. the declension of **hiems, princeps** (§ 442); (*b*) **neuter substantives** other than those in **-e, -al, -ar**: cp. the declension of **crūs, opus** (§ 443).

ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS (*continued*) (§ 455).

65. The adjectives that are declined like consonant-substantives are—

(1) Adjectives of the comparative degree, like **longior**, *longer* (§ 455);

(2) Adjectives having in the nom. sing. one form for all genders alike, and with base ending in a short syllable. Example: **pauper** (see its declension, § 455).

SIMPLE USES OF THE CASES (*continued*).

66. Dative. Some common intransitive verbs in Latin which are constructed with the dative (of the indirect object, § 26) are usually translated by transitive verbs in English. Thus **pāreō**, *I am obedient to*, is usually translated *I obey*.

Such verbs are the following:—

Verb (Indic. and Inf.).	Meaning.	Usual English rendering.
plac-eō, -ēre	*to be pleasing*	*to please*
pār-eō, -ēre	*to be obedient*	*to obey*
serv-iō, -īre	*to be a slave*	*to serve*
imper-ō, -āre	*to give orders*	*to command*
suād-eō, -ēre	*to recommend*	*to persuade*
noc-eō, -ēre	*to be harmful*	*to harm*
ignosc-ō, -ere	*to overlook (an offence)*	*to pardon*
indulg-eō, -ēre	*to give way, be kind*	*to indulge*
parc-ō, -ere	*to be sparing*	*to spare*
crēd-ō, -ere	*to entrust*	*to trust, believe*
fīd-ō, -ere	*to have confidence*	*to trust*
fav-eō, -ēre	*to be favourable*	*to favour*

67. Ablative. The **instrumental** ablative (§ 27, *b*) is used, generally without a preposition, to express the **cause** of an action (**ablative of cause**) or the manner in which it is performed (**ablative of manner**).

vīrēs Cicerōnem lassitūdine dēfēcērunt	*his strength failed Cicero owing to fatigue*
magnā celeritāte ad castra veniēbat	*he was coming to the camp with great speed*

68. The **ablative proper** (§ 27, *c*) is most commonly used to express the agent, *i.e.* the **person by whom** an action is performed; it cannot stand without the preposition **ā** (**ab** before vowels), and is found with passive verbs only.

Sophoclēs ā fīliīs in iūdicium vocātus est	*Sophocles was brought to trial by his sons*

Obs. This use should be contrasted with that of the ablative of the instrument (§ 27, *b*), which is used with substantives denoting *things*, not *persons*. The ablative of the agent really expresses the source *from* which an action proceeds.

69. This ablative is also used with other prepositions, such as **sine**, *without*, **procul**, *far from*.

READING LESSON 4.

The Boy and his Father.

(*Filius. Pater.*)

Pa. Condemnavi filium meum et castigabo.

Venit Filius.

Fi. Veniam, pater, pro facinore rogo.

Pa. Frustra, diu enim deliberavi, poenam igitur reddes.

Fi. Lacrimis misericordiam oro.

Pa. Natura ignavus videris * et matris filius.

Fi. Ignarus peccavi; factum confiteor, sed non impium putavi.

Pa. Mala devoravisti et parentes decipiebas; factum enim celavisti. Vestigia autem tua manifesta erant, et servus matri indicavit. Semper filium meum a puero virtutem docui; unde mendacium discis? Nescio.

Tum pater strenue sed sine ira puerum castigavit.

EXERCISE 4.

1. All good things consist (say, "are placed") in virtue. 2. Cowards obey tyrants, but brave men do not obey them; rather do they kill them. 3. There were frequent showers, and the branches of the trees were heavy with water. 4. A high tower was standing on the hill and all Troy was seen thence. 5. I, a letter of Naso (*declined like leo*), have come from a distant shore, and am weary with the sea. 6. "You will behold Rome," he said; "your lot surpasses mine." 7. My father is now an old man; but still he does not pay his taxes. 8. Fortune favours the brave; but even brave men have yielded to adverse fortune. 9. The boar is being bitten by the dogs and driven to the mountains. 10. What (say, "how great") a weight of silver you are carrying! I will take a part of your burden. 11. The Greeks called the moon the sister of the sun, and made the moon and the sun gods. 12. They were considered [as] the children of Jupiter and Latona. 13. All his forces were led out-of the camp by the general; a few soldiers only were left [as] guards. 14. Difficult [tasks] are only surmounted by great labour. 15. Nothing is too difficult for the human race. 16. The baggage was sent-forward, and the soldiers fortified their camp. 17. Meanwhile the cavalry sought-for water, and at last they came to a wide river. 18. Your plan is not an easy [one], but I will ask Caesar for help. 19. Why do you ask for a reward of bravery, soldiers? 20. No rewards will be given, no booty taken, but you are fighting now for-the-sake-of your wives and children.

---

* The passive of **videō** often means *seem*.

LESSON 5.

Fourth and fifth declensions of substantives; deponents and semi-deponents; simple uses of the infinitive; impersonal use of intransitive verbs.

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

The declension of **gradus** (§ 445), **genū** (§ 445), **diēs** (§ 446); the indicative, infinitive, and imperative of **hortor, vereor, loquor, partior** (§§ 482-5); the principal parts of the verbs in thick type of the first two conjugations, active (§§ 486-7) and deponent (§§ 491-2); the infinitive of **sum** and of the regular verbs.

Fourth and Fifth Declensions of Substantives.

70. Fourth Declension. This declension contains substantives of two classes:—

(1) Masculine (and some feminine) words, with nom. sing. ending in **-us**. Example: **gradus**, m. (§ 445).

(2) Neuter words, with nom. sing. ending in **-ū**. Example: **genū** (§ 445).

71. Substantives of the fourth declension are masculine if the nom. sing. ends in **-us**, neuter if it ends in **-ū**. (Some in **-us** are feminine in accordance with § 15.)

Rule. Masc. in **-us**.

Exc. Feminine are found in **-us**,
Acus, *needle*, **porticus**, *Portico.*
Manus, *hand*, and **domus**, *home*,
Tribus, civil *tribe* at Rome,
Īdūs * (plural word), *the Ides*—
Day on which the month divides.

* **Īdūs** was the name given to the 13th day of some months, to the 15th of others. See *Roman Calendar*, §§ 427-30.

72. Fifth Declension. Example: **diēs** (§ 446).

The substantives of this declension are all feminine, except **diēs**, *m.*, which is sometimes feminine in the singular, when it means *an appointed day.*

exspectāta diēs aderat	*the looked-for day was at hand*

The commonest word in this declension is **rēs**, which may be translated *matter, circumstance,* etc.

Rēs publica (*the state,* lit. *the public matter*) is sometimes written as one word, but its declension is not thereby affected; *e.g.* the accusative is **rempublicam.**

Diēs and **rēs** are the only words of the fifth declension which have gen., dat., and abl. plural.

Deponents and Semi-deponents.

73. Some Latin verbs which are conjugated in the passive only are the equivalents of English active verbs; such verbs are called **deponents.**

These deponent verbs are for all practical purposes equivalent both in meaning and in usage to active verbs, either transitive (as **amplector,** *I embrace*) or intransitive (as **glōrior,** *I boast*).

74. There are four conjugations of regular deponent verbs resembling the passives of the regular verbs; *e.g.* **hortor** (§ 482) is conjugated like **amor, vereor** (§ 483) like **moneor, loquor** (§ 484) like **regor, partior** (§ 485) like **audior.** Deponent verbs have also participles active in form.

75. Deponent verbs have no perfect tenses active in form, and consequently no perfect base; all their tenses are formed from the present and supine bases in the same way as the tenses of the passive voice of regular verbs.

76. The perfect participles of the deponents of the third conjugation must be committed to memory like the supines of the active verbs (§ 60). **The principal parts** of a depo-

nent verb (cp. § 61) are the present indicative, present infinitive, and the perfect indicative (*i.e.* the perfect participle + **sum**).

77. Among the principal parts of verbs to be learned with this lesson will be found certain verbs which are deponent (*i.e.* have a passive form with an active sense) in their perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses only (including perfect infinitive and perfect participle); such are **audeō** and **gaudeō** (§ 492). The tenses formed from the present base are active in form as well as meaning. These verbs are called **semi-deponent.**

78. Among the verbs whose principal parts are to be learned with this lesson will be found some that are compounded with prepositions. These should be noted, but the rules for the formation of compound verbs will be given later.

Impersonal Use of Intransitive Verbs in the Passive.

79. Verbs which are transitive in the active voice are conjugated throughout in the passive; intransitive verbs can only be used **impersonally** in the passive. A verb is said to be used impersonally when it expresses merely the occurrence of an action; it is so used only in the third person singular or the infinitive.

venītur in montēs	*the mountains are being reached*, or *they come to the mountains* (lit. *there-is-a-coming to the mountains*)
ventum est in montēs	*the mountains were reached*

80. The intransitive verbs that take the dative of the indirect object, in § 66, can only be used in the passive in this impersonal way, the dative being retained.

lēgātus mīlitibus imperat	*the lieutenant commands the soldiers*

ā lēgātō militibus imperātur	*the soldiers are commanded* (lit. *there-is-a-giving-of-orders to the soldiers*) *by the lieutenant*

Obs. An intransitive verb in Latin is often rendered by a transitive verb in English, and conversely: hence in Latin the **indirect object**, whether the verb is active or passive, becomes in English the **direct object** of the **active** verb or the **subject** of the **passive**. See the above examples.

81. Several verbs are used only impersonally (as in English), *e.g.* **pluit**, *it rains*; while many verbs may be used in the plural with a general reference, *e.g.* **crēdunt**, *people believe*.

The Infinitive.

82. The **present infinitive active** (**amāre**, *to love*), **present infinitive passive** or **deponent** (**amārī**, *to be loved*; **hortārī**, *to exhort*), and **perfect infinitive active** (**amāvisse**, *to have loved*) are the only true infinitive forms existing in Latin. The other tenses of the infinitive are compounded as follows:—

(1) (*a*) Fut. infin. act. (in all verbs) = fut. part. + **esse**. Examples, **amātūrus esse**, *to be about to love*; **hortātūrus esse**, *to be about to exhort*; **futūrus esse** (or **fore**), *to be about to be*.

(*b*) Perf. infin. pass. (active meaning in deponents) = perf. partic. + **esse**. Examples, **amātus esse**, *to have been loved*; **hortātus esse**, *to have exhorted* (so **amātus** = *having been loved*; **hortātus** = *having exhorted*).

(2) Fut. infin. pass. (not in deponents) = accusative supine + **īrī**. Example, **amātum īrī**.

83. The true infinitive is an **indeclinable neuter substantive** and can stand to the finite verb, as it does in English, in the relation of (*a*) subject, (*b*) predicate, or (*c*) object, being used in the first two cases as a **nominative** and in the third as an accusative.

(*a*) **hūmānum est errāre**	*to err is human* (or *it is human to err*)
bonum est pārēre	*obedience* (*to obey*) *is a good thing*
(*b*) **deī esse intelleguntur**	*the gods are understood to exist*
amāvisse dīcitur	*he is said to have loved*
(*c*) **Gāius laudārī dēbet**	*Gaius ought to be praised*
puerōs canere docēbam	*I was teaching the boys singing* (or *to sing*)

Obs. This last example answers exactly to **puerōs elementa docēbām** (§ 56). Similarly the passive form of the above would be **puerī canere docēbantur.**

84. Inasmuch as the infinitive, besides being a substantive, also implies verbal action, it may, as in English, be modified by an adverb or may have an object (direct or indirect) of its own in the same case as the object of the finite verb from which it is formed.

sapientis est cautē vīvere	*it is characteristic* (or *the part*) *of a wise man to live carefully*
bonum est magistrō pārēre	*it is good to obey one's master*
puellam amāvisse dīcitur	*he is said to have loved the girl*

Contrast with this the following:—

deī beātī esse intelleguntur	*the gods are understood to be happy* (or *it is understood that the gods are happy*)
amātus esse dīcitur	*he is said to have been loved*

Here, as in the simple sentences **deī beātī sunt** and **amātus est,** the adjective (**beātī**) and perfect participle (equivalent here to an adjective) simply complete the predicate and naturally agree with the subject of the main verb. The last example shows the composite nature of the perfect infinitive passive (§ 82).

READING LESSON 5.

The Fox and the Crow.

Corvus quondam fame motus est, et de fenestra carnem dolo rapiebat. Volavit in altam arborem, et carnem edere cupiebat. Sed vulpes factum vidit, deinde sic coepit loqui: "O quantus, corve, pennarum tuarum est splendor; quantum decus in corpore et vultu geris. Sed non vocem habes; ab aliis igitur avibus superaris." Sed corvus, "Audi tamen," inquit, "meae vocis sonum." Ostendit vocem, sed carnem, heu! de rostro cadere sinit; et prudens vulpes avidis statim dentibus corripit. Sic fraude vulpis captus est corvus, et amaris lacrimis stultitiam deflevit.

EXERCISE 5.

1. Death is not miserable; the approach of death is miserable. 2. Caesar is hastening to depart from the city. 3. News has come (use the verb *to report* impersonally) about a serious rising of the Gauls. 4. How many cities is Pompeius said to have fortified? 5. It is difficult to say, but they were many. 6. Did you not forbid Domitius to blockade Corfinium? 7. All the advantages of the long war will now be lost. 8. Appius held not only authority but [absolute] rule over (*in*, with *acc.*) his household. 9. The slaves feared [their] master, his children venerated him, he was beloved by all; within his house ancestral [say, "of ancestors"] custom flourished. 10. The Roman general told the king his name and race.

11. I prefer friendship to all things, but I do not make a whole family my friends. 12. I spared Cinna and now he desires to kill me. 13. But I am not angry, for how many men have I not spared! 14. The Greeks are said to have mixed their wine with water. 15. Guard well the bridge, and it will be difficult to come across the river. 16. Marius lay hid among the marshes of Minturnae

(*pl.*), but afterwards fled to Africa. 17. There seems to have been a great slaughter of all the citizens. 18. I have lost my book. Did you move it from the table? 19. It is [characteristic] of a fool only to follow [after] easy-things (*n. pl.*). 20. "Make your way to the next town, you Sabines (*Sabini*)," said the Roman general; "we will follow, and we shall not (say, "nor shall we") lay waste your fields." The Roman's words were believed by the Sabines.

LESSON 6.

Personal pronouns and adjectives; uses of the gerund; the infinitive (continued); accusative and infinitive.

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

The declension of **ego, nōs, tū, vōs, sē** (§§ 458-9); the gerunds of the regular verbs.

Personal Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives.

85. It has already been remarked (§ 41) that personal pronouns and possessives are usually omitted in Latin when their omission causes no ambiguity and when there is no emphasis laid upon them. Thus, the personal pronouns **ego, tū**, are seldom used in the nominative except for emphasis or contrast.

vōs abscēdite; ego in urbe manēbō	*do you depart; I will remain in the city*

86. The personal pronouns of the first and second person are used as reflexives; *e.g.* **mē dēfendō**, *I defend myself*; **tibi indulgēs**, *you are indulgent to yourself.*

For the third person there is a special form, viz. **sē**, *himself, herself, itself, themselves*; *e.g.* **sē dēfendit**, *he defends himself.*

Sē refers to the subject of the sentence, and therefore cannot be used to translate *him* in such a sentence as *I defend him.* There is in Latin no pronoun of the third person exactly corresponding to the English *he, she, it* (the *demonstrative* pronouns which are used in such a case will be treated in Lesson 11).

87. Just as the adjective **meus** (§ 42) corresponds to the pronoun **ego**, so **suus** (*his own, their own*, etc.) corresponds to **sē**, and is similarly used, *i.e.* to refer to that which is possessed by the subject of the sentence when there is any emphasis required on the possessive adjective, or when ambiguity would be caused by its omission.

suum nōn meum librum āmīsit	*he lost his book, not mine*

Obs. In English *his*, as well as *his own*, is used reflexively.

88. The preposition **cum**, *with* (= *together with*, or *accompanied by*), when used with the personal pronouns, always follows them as an enclitic; **cum** takes the ablative.

venī mēcum	*come with me*
nōbīscum cucurrit	*he ran with us*
cum Marcō equitāvit	*he rode with Marcus*

Obs. With meaning *together with* (Lat. **cum** with ablative) must be carefully distinguished from *with* marking the instrument by means of which an action is done (Lat. ablative, § 27, *b*).

The Gerund.

89. The **gerund** is formed by adding (*a*) **-andum**, (*b*) **-endum**, (*c*) **-iendum**, to the present bases of verbs of the (*a*) first, (*b*) second and third, (*c*) fourth conjugations. Verbs like **capiō** follow in their gerunds the fourth conjugation.

90. The gerund is an **abstract substantive of neuter gender** declined (like **regnum**, § 437) in the singular only; it expresses the action denoted by the verb, *e.g.* **amandum**, *loving, i.e.* the act of loving, and corresponds to the English gerund, or verbal noun in *-ing* (e.g. *I take exercise by walking*).

91. The **nominative** of the gerund is, as a rule, found **only** in the case of **intransitive** verbs; it is therefore included in brackets ( ) in the tables of the regular conjugations.

The **accusative** of the gerund, but only of intransitive verbs, is used instead of the infinitive after prepositions, especially after **ad**.

The **genitive, dative,** and **ablative** of the gerund are used in accordance with the rules for case-usage, but the dative gerund is always intransitive.

Accusative:—

vīrēs nostrae nōn sufficiunt ad resistendum	*our strength is not enough for resisting* (or *resistance*)

Genitive:—

cupidus sum audiendī	*I am desirous of hearing*

Dative:—

erant pugnandō parēs nostrī	*our men were equal to fighting*

Ablative:—

vēra virtūs in pārendō posita est	*true valour consists in obeying* (or *obedience*)
tū nōbīs cunctandō restituis rem	*thou by delay restorest our fortune to us*

92. The **gerund**, like the infinitive (§ 84), besides being a substantive, also **implies verbal action**, and so it may, as in English, have an adverb or an object of its own. The dative of the indirect object is used freely after the gerund of intransitive verbs, but the accusative of the direct object is used only after the genitive and ablative cases; and even here it is not very common, another construction (the gerundive construction, which will be treated later—in Lesson 17) taking its place.

breve tempus satis longum est ad bene vīvendum	*a short time is long enough for living well* (or *for a good life*)
cupidus sum tē audiendī	*I am desirous of hearing you*

Uses of the Infinitive (*continued*).

93. Certain verbs are only (or chiefly) used in the third person, with an infinitive as subject and generally a personal pronoun as object. Such verbs are called **impersonal**.

Most of them are transitive but some are intransitive, their object thus being respectively direct (in the accusative) or indirect (in the dative).

decet mē venīre	[literally] *to come bescems me*, or *I am right in coming*
licet mihi venīre	[literally] *to come is lawful for me*, or *I am allowed to come* or *I may come*

94. These verbs, which are of the second conjugation and denote **a state or condition of the mind**, are as follows:—

TRANSITIVE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	
dec-et	-ēre	decu-it	*it bescems*
dēdec-et	-ēre	dēdecu-it	*it misbescems*
miser-et	-ēre	miseru-it	*it moves to pity*
oport-et	-ēre	oportu-it	*it behoves*
paenit-et	-ēre	paenitu-it	*it makes sorry*
pig-et	-ēre	pigu-it	*it troubles*
pud-et	-ēre	pudu-it or puditum est	*it shames*
taed-et	-ēre	pertaesum est	*it wearies*

INTRANSITIVE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	
lib-et	-ēre	libu-it or libitum est	*it is pleasing* } with
lic-et	-ēre	licu-it or licitum est	*it is lawful* } dative

Obs. These verbs are not as a rule translated by English impersonal verbs; *e.g.* **mē miseret** may be rendered *I pity*; **nōs oportet**, *we ought*; **tē paenitēbat**, *you were sorry*; **eōs pudēbit**, *they will be ashamed*; **mihi libet**, *I like*; **tibi licet**, *you may* or *you are allowed.*

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

95. The **infinitive**, when used as the direct object of a verb, besides having its own object (§ 84) **can also have its own subject.** This subject is in the **accusative.** The infinitive with its subject is generally translated by a clause introduced by *that.* The verb to which the infinitive (together with its subject) stands as the direct object is generally one of **saying** or one expressing some

mental process such as *perceiving, thinking, rejoicing, wishing*, or the verbs iubeō (*I command*), vetō (*I forbid*).

mē sapere dīcit	*he says that I am wise*
vōs bonōs esse putō	*I think that you are good*
vim cupimus exstinguī	*we want violence to be stamped out*
fāma est arborem cecidisse	*there is a report that the tree has fallen*
sē observārī dīcit	*he says that he is being watched*

Obs. **Sē** in this last example refers, according to the rule already given (§ 86), to the subject of the main verb (**dīcit**). It cannot be left out, even if not emphatic.

96. The tenses of the infinitive are to be construed in relation to that of the main verb; the use of the present, future, or perfect infinitive implies that its action takes place at the same time as, after, or before that of the main verb.

arborem	(1) **cadere** (2) **cāsūram esse** (3) **cecidisse**	**dīcit**	*he says that the tree*	*is falling* *will fall* *has fallen*
arborem	(1) **cadere** (2) **cāsūram esse** (3) **cecidisse**	**dixit**	*he said that the tree*	*was falling* *would fall* *had fallen*

Obs. In English the tense of the verb in the subordinate clause changes with that of the verb in the main clause. In Latin this is not so. The man's original words in each set of examples above would be—**arbor** (1) **cadit**, (2) **cadet**, (3) **cecidit**, respectively, and these tenses are retained in Latin (though not in English) whether the main verb of the sentence in which his words are reported is present (**dīcit**) or past (**dixit**).

97. After verbs of **hoping, promising,** and **threatening** the accusative and **future** infinitive construction is regular in Latin, though in English the present infinitive is generally used.

spērat sē regnātūrum [esse]	*he hopes to* (i.e. *that he will*) *rule*
prōmīsit sē mihi praemium datūrum [esse]	*he promised to* (i.e. *that he would*) *give me the reward*

Obs. The verb **esse** is frequently omitted in the future infinitive active or (less commonly) in the perfect infinitive passive.

98. When an infinitive that is the subject of **libet** or **licet** (§ 94) is itself constructed with an adjective or substantive as its own predicate, the adjective may be either in the **accusative** or in the **dative**; the dative is more usual.

libet tibi bonō (*or* **bonum**) **esse**	*you are pleased to be good*
licēbat Marcō Tulliō consulem (*or* **consulī**) **creārī**	*Marcus Tullius was allowed to be elected consul*

99. When the clause after a verb of saying is **negatived** in English, it is more usual in Latin to use the negative verb of saying (**negō**, *I deny*) with an affirmative infinitive.

arborem cadere negat	*he says that the tree is not falling*

READING LESSON 6.

The Merchant of Venice.

(*Iudaeus.* *Antonius.*)

Iu. De adventu tuo mihi nuntiatum est; nonne pecuniam comparandi cupidus es?

An. Fateor; amicus meus me grandem pecuniam poscit. Dicit se cupere puellam nobilem in matrimonium ducere.

Iu. Ignotus mihi est amicus tuus; tu autem canem me quondam appellavisti, et iam audes pecuniam me rogare?

An. Iterum te canem appellabo, canis enim, non homo, mihi videris. Sic censeo, neque umquam opinionem meam celavi.

Iu. Et amicus tamen tibi esse volo, et pecuniam libet mihi praestare, neque fenus postulo. Sane argentum reddes, scio; sed pro ludibrio talia propono—aut pecuniam

aut libram carnis tuae oportebit te mihi reddere. Rides? Putasne me semper tristem esse et avarum?

An. Rideo, et probo; libenter negotium suscipiam, et multam esse liberalitatem in Iudaei animo dicam.

EXERCISE 6.

1. All the boys were ashamed that they had been foolish, and repented of their folly (*gen.*). 2. He threatens to drive us away; I am not pleased to perform his orders. 3. I am afraid to refuse; for by refusing I shall be forced to depart. 4. They will have laid their bodies down (say, "laid-down their bodies") under the branches of a high tree. 5. I taught you to obey the king, but I did not teach you to-be-a-flatterer. 6. He said to me that he had not sold all his corn. 7. Caesar replied that the messengers had been spared, but that he had ordered all the soldiers to be killed. 8. He said that he was not merciful to traitors. 9. It was clear that the army would be destroyed. The general therefore fled with us. 10. The boughs of the oaks have been torn away by lightning.

11. You deceived me and I said that you would not rejoice. 12. We are forbidden by the treaty to approach the cities of the Gauls. 13. We have promised neither to lay waste their fields, nor to destroy their crops. 14. They were forced to walk under a spear; it was a sign of their surrender. 15. Do you think we ought to believe Vergilius? 16. He says that the Trojan leader descended to the abode of Pluto and spoke to his father. 17. All men know that we are right to obey the laws of our country. 18. They say that the Roman fleet will enter the river to-morrow. I am eager to see it. 19. By punishing you I make you fit for learning. 20. I hope to see the soldiers depart to-morrow.

LESSON 7.

Revision of the declensions; some principal parts of verbs (continued); present participle; apposition.

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

The declension of **ācer** (§ 454); principal parts of verbs of the third conjugation in thick type, from **canō** to **fingō** (§ 488, A-c); present participles of the regular verbs.

Gender of Substantives of the Third Declension.

100. The gender of substantives of this declension is determined according to the ending of the nom. sing. as follows:—

Masculine: Words ending in **-er, -o, -or, -os**; also imparisyllabic words in **-es**.

Feminine: Words ending in **-as, -aus, -is, -x**; **-s** following another consonant; also parisyllabic words in **-es**.

Neuter: Words ending in **-ar, -ur, -us**; **-l, -a, -n, -c, -e, -t**.

Obs. In this as in other declensions the form does not affect a word's gender when the latter is determined by the meaning; *e. g.* **fūr**, *thief*, is masculine, notwithstanding the rule that words ending in **-ur** are neuter.

Rhyme.—The genders of declension three
From each word's ending we may see:
-er, -o, -or, -os are masculine;
-as, -aus, -is, -x are feminine,
-s also after a consonant,
and **-es** that has no increment;
-es otherwise is masculine.
Of neuter endings there are nine:
Note **-ar**, and **-ur**, and **-us**; the rest
By **l a n c e t** are remembered best

101. *Feminine and Neuter Substantives with Masculine Endings.*

RULE. Masc. in **-er.** *Exc.* Feminine is **linter**, *boat*;
Learn these neuters nine by rote:
Iter, *journey*, **vēr**, *the spring*,
Verber, *lash*—unpleasant thing!
Sūber, **piper**, and **cadāver**, *Cork, pepper, corpse.*
Acer, **ūber**, and **papāver**. *Maple, fertility, poppy.*

Masc. in **-o.** *Exc.* Female are words in **-do** and **-go**,
Though **cardō**, *hinge*, and **ordō**, *row*,
Are masculine, with **ligō**, *hoe*.
Margō is common. Female call *Border.*
The abstract* nouns in **-iō** all.
To **ēchō** give the female gender, *Echo.*
The same to **carō** (**carnis**) render. *Flesh.*

Masc in **-or.** *Exc.* A feminine is **arbor**, *tree*;
As neuter substantives we see
Cor (**cordis**), *heart*; and **ador**, *grain*;
With **marmor**, *marble*; **aequor**, *main.*

Masc. in **-os.** *Exc.* Call feminine the *whetstone*, **cōs**,
Likewise the woman's *dowry*, **dōs**;
Of Latin substantives alone
These neuter are: **os** (**ossis**), *bone*,
And eke **ōs** (**ōris**), *mouth*; a few
Greek nouns in **-os** are neuter too.

Masc. imparisyllabic in **-es.** *Exc.* **Aes** (**aeris**), *bronze*, has increment,
Yet with the neuter nouns it went.
And **quiēs**, *rest*, with **mercēs**, *pay*,
Are classed as feminine alway;
So also five more—**merges**, **seges**, *Sheaf, cornfield.*
With **compēs**, **requiēs**, and **teges**. *Fetter, repose, mat.*

* An abstract noun is properly the name of a quality, attribute, or circumstance of a thing; often it is transferred to denote a thing with which that quality, etc., is in some way associated; *e.g.* **statiō**, *a standing*, commonly means *a standing-place, station.*

102. *Masculine and Neuter Substantives with Feminine Endings.*

Rule. Fem. in **-as.**

Exc. **Ās**, *copper coin*, is known as male,
Vas (vadis), too, who offers bail; *Surety.*
Vās (vāsis), neuter, means a *pail.* *Vessel.*

Fem. in **-is.**

Exc. Here such nouns in **-is** as be
Masculine set forth you see:
Amnis, lapis, both from **collis** *Stream, stone, hill.*
Falling; ignis blown by **follis**; *Fire, bellows.*
Sanguis, *blood*, and *sword-blade*, **ensis**;
Orbis too, wherein each **mensis** *Circuit, month.*
Year by year recurs; and **crīnis**,
Hair, is male, and (mostly) **fīnis**; *End.*
He who **pānis**, **piscis** spurneth *Bread, fish.*
Soon to **cinis**, **pulvis** turneth. *Ash, dust.*

Rarer **fascis, sentis, callis,** *Fagot, bramble, rough path.*
Axis, postis, and **nātālis,** *Axle-tree, door-post, birthday.*
Vectis, fustis, and **canālis,** *Crow-bar, cudgel, channel.*
Torris, caulis, cucumis, *Firebrand, cabbage, cucumber.*
Unguis, fūnis, vermis, glīs. *Finger-* or *toe-nail, rope, worm, dormouse.*

Fem. in **-x.**

Exc. Masculine are found in **-x**
Apex, vertex, shepherd's **grex,** *Summit, eddy, flock.*
Calix, cortex, thōrax, frutex, *Cup, bark of tree, breastplate, shrub.*
Pollex, pūmex, silex, cōdex. *Thumb, pumice-stone, flint, book.*

Fem. in **-s** following another consonant.

Exc. As masculine count **mons**, *a mount*;
With **pons**, *a bridge*, and **fons**, *a fount*;
So **dens**, *a tooth*, and **bidens**, *hoe*;
But **bidens**, *sheep*, for female know.
Male, too, are **tridens, occidens,** *Trident.*
The *West*, and dawning **oriens,** *East.*
With **chalybs, hydrops, torrens, rudens,** *Steel, dropsy, torrent, rope.*
And **gryps** and fractions such as **triens.** *Griffin, one-third* of an *as* or other unit.

Fem. parisyllabic in **-es.**

Exc. Masculine is found in **-es,**
Scimitar, **acīnacēs.**

103. *Masculine and Feminine Substantives with Neuter Endings.*

RULE. Neut. in **-ur.** *Exc.* These are masculine in **-ur**:
Vultur, turtur, and **furfur.** *Vulture, turtle-dove, bran.*

Neut. in **-us.** *Exc.* A group of well-known nouns in **-ūs**
Are female: *slavery,* **servitūs,**
And **virtūs,** *valour; safety,* **salūs,**
With **tellūs,** *earth,* and swampy **palūs,** *Marsh*
Iuventūs, *youth,* **senectūs,** *eld*
(Throughout these nouns **u** long is held);
So **incūs,** *anvil*; short **u** keep
In **pecus** (**pecudis**), *a sheep.*
With feminines count long-necked **grūs,** *Crane.*
But **lepus,** *hare,* is male; and **mūs,**
The mouse, is common; so is **sūs.** *Pig.*

Neut. in **-l.** *Exc.* Of males in **-l** take note of one
Besides **sāl,** *salt*: that's **sōl,** *the sun.*

Neut. in **-n.** *Exc.* Two males in **-n** are **pecten,** *comb,*
And **delphīn** in his ocean home. *Dolphin.*

ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS (*continued*).

104. Besides the adjectives, declined like **I**-substantives, of two forms or one form in the nom. sing. (§ 52), there are a few adjectives which have **three forms** in the nominative singular, one for each gender; *e.g.* **ācer** (see its declension, § 454). **Celer** (*swift*) is declined like **ācer**, except that it (*a*) retains the **e** before **r** throughout, (*b*) has genitive plural **celerum.**

PRESENT AND FUTURE PARTICIPLES.

105. The **future participle** is chiefly used to form the future infinitive active with the verb **esse** (§ 97). The participles **futūrus** (*about to be*), **ventūrus** (*about to come*), are, however, not uncommon as adjectives meaning *future.* The future participle is also used with other parts of **esse** to form a compound future tense.

scriptūrus sum	*I am about* (or *intending*) *to write*
scriptūrus eram	*I was going to write*

106. The present (*e.g.* **amans, hortans**) and future (*e.g* **amātūrus, hortātūrus**) participles are always **active** in meaning. The present participle is formed from the present base and the future from the supine base. **There is no present or future participle passive in Latin.**

Obs. **Present participles** are declined like the third declension adjectives which have one termination in the nom. and acc. sing. for all genders (*e.g.* **prūdens**, § 454).

107. The time denoted by the present participle **is always the same as that denoted by the main verb.**

Catilīna pugnans cecidit	*Catilina fell fighting*
Marcum dormientem interfēcit	*he killed the sleeping Marcus*
Sullae sacrificantī anguis appāruit	*a snake appeared to Sulla while he was sacrificing*

Obs. It follows that the English present participle in such a sentence as "leaving his wife he went away from the city" cannot be translated by the present participle in Latin, for *leaving* here is an idiomatic expression for *having left*, *i.e.* its time is antecedent to that of the main verb.

108. Just as the infinitive and gerund are at the same time substantives and verbals (§§ 84, 92), so **the participle is both an adjective and a verbal**: being the first, it must agree with its noun in number, gender, and case; being the second, it may govern either a direct or an indirect object, or be modified by an adverb.

Gāius Marcum hastam iacientem interfēcit	*Gaius killed Marcus as the latter was casting a spear*
Sullae sacra facientī anguis appāruit	*a snake appeared to Sulla as he was performing the sacred rites*
hostēs mūrum aggredientēs invēnimus	*we came on the enemy who* (or *as they* or *when they*) *were attacking the wall*

109. It will be seen from the above examples that the Latin present participle does not often correspond to the English present participle by itself; but (1) on the one hand, the English present participle is often strengthened by *while*; (2) on the other, the Latin present participle often corresponds to a relative, temporal, causal, or concessive ("though") clause in English.

Apposition.

110. A substantive may stand to another substantive in the relation of an attribute, and is then said to be in **apposition** to it. A substantive agrees in case with the substantive to which it is in apposition, but not necessarily in number.

tē canam, magnī Iovis et deōrum nuntium	*thee will I hymn, the messenger of great Jupiter and the gods*
Coriolī oppidum captum	*the town of Corioli was taken*

Obs. Note that apposition is often represented by the English preposition *of*. (**Coriolī** is nominative plural.)

111. A substantive in apposition often has special reference to the time of action, and must then be translated with the addition of *when* or *as*. This use is due to the fact that the verb **sum** has no present participle.

Cicerō consul tālia fēcit	*Cicero did such things when (he was) consul*

READING LESSON 7.

The Frog and the Ox.

Rana quondam bovem in prato vidit. Tacta est invidia tantae magnitudinis et sibi dixit, "Putat se bos valde magnificum esse; cur autem tam superbus est? Ego etiam grandi forma praedita sum." Pellem igitur inflans natos suos sic interrogavit, "En! num lata fio, num ampla, num splendida, num magnifica? Nonne bos prae me parvus

videtur?" Sed a bove ranam adhuc superari responderunt. Rana igitur ingenti nisu iterum cutem intendit, et similiter quaerebat. "Nondum," dixerunt, "nondum tu in certamine es victrix." Tum rana, "Sane iam nitenti mihi bene succedet." Nati, bonum sperantes exitum, in caelum tollunt clamorem magnum; sed heu! ranae frustra se inflanti ruptum est corpus.

Homo inops, potentem cupidus imitandi, cadit.

EXERCISE 7.

1. We were weary of waiting; the bridge was not safe, and it was not [say, "nor was it"] easy to send our army across the river. 2. It is characteristic of a foolish man to break the laws of his country. 3. The life of a man who always obeys the laws ought to be praised. 4. Sextus said that he would walk with me through the city and show me the wall that surrounds it. 5. King Alexander wept, knowing he would not conquer other worlds. 6. I am ashamed to say that I have been deceived by Tullius. 7. We have played enough; we must now work. 8. He asked me in the Senate for my opinion; but I was not allowed to speak. 9. Do you not think that the consul acted wrongly? He did not order the senators to be silent; he only laughed. 10. Marius when dictator allowed Saturninus to be killed, contrary-to the laws.

11. The body of a tribune used to be sacred, by the custom of [our] ancestors. 12. I sowed the seed yesterday; soon the tree will have grown [up], and we shall sit under its branches and eat the fruit. 13. Showers will be sent-down by Jupiter, king of the gods, to the fields. 14. I believe that such-things also feel thirst. 15. The command of the sea has been given to Pompeius by the Manilian [*Manilius*, adj.] law. 16. Ought the Roman people to grant so-great a power? 17. As-yet you are unconquered, Caesar; but punishment will come, and a Roman will avenge me, the Gaul. 18. It has often come into my mind [say, "into the mind to-me"], when I am thinking-over such things, that the gods surely exist. 19. Will you not all come with me to-day to the temple? 20. The centurion hurls his javelin at the enemy and pierces one as he runs forward out of the line-of-battle.

LESSON 8.

Comparison of adjectives; the perfect participle.

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

The declension of **longior** (§ 455); principal parts of the verbs in dark type of the third conjugation, from **afflīgō** to **suescō** (§ 488, C-D).

Comparison of Adjectives.

112. Adjectives have (where their meaning admits of it) in Latin, as in English, three degrees of comparison—positive, comparative, and superlative. These degrees are generally in Latin, as often in English, denoted by means of suffixes: *e.g.* **longus**, *long*; **longior**, *longer*; **longissimus**, *longest*.

113. There is, however, this difference between the two languages in the use of these degrees, that whereas in English a standard of comparison is always expressed or distinctly understood (*e.g.* "longer than this," "longest of all"), in Latin the comparative may denote that the quality exists to a considerable or to an excessive degree, the superlative that it exists to a high degree; thus **longior** sometimes means *somewhat long* or *too long*, and **longissimus** often denotes *very long*.

114. The general rule for the formation of the degrees of comparison is as follows:—

To the base of the positive add—

-ior to form the nom. sing. masc. of the comparative;
-issimus ,, ,, ,, ,, superlative.

Positive. (Nom. Sing. Masc.)		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
longus	*long*	**long-**	**longior**	**longissimus**
prūdens	*discreet*	**prūdent-**	**prūdentior**	**prūdentissimus**

All comparative adjectives are declined like **longior** (§ 455), and all superlatives like **bonus** (§ 452).

115. There are certain exceptions to the above rule:—

I. The superlative of adjectives with nom. sing. masc. ending in **-er** is formed by adding **-rimus** to the nom. sing. masc. (The comparative is formed by adding **-ior** to the base according to the rule.)

EXAMPLES.

Positive. (Nom. Sing. Masc.)		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
pulcher	*beautiful*	**pulchr-**	**pulchrior**	**pulcherrimus**
pauper	*poor*	**pauper-**	**pauperior**	**pauperrimus**
ācer	*keen*	**ācr-**	**ācrior**	**ācerrimus**
celer	*swift*	**celer-**	**celerior**	**celerrimus**
So also—				
vetus	*old*	**veter-**	**(vetustior)**	**veterrimus**

116. II. Adjectives ending in **-dicus**, **-ficus**, and **-volus** form their comparative and superlative as if their positive ended in **-dīcens** (base, **dīcent-**; cp. **dīcō**, *I say*), **-ficens** (base, **ficent-**; cp. **faciō**, *I make*), **-volens** (base, **volent-**; cp. **volō**, *I will*).

EXAMPLES.

Positive.	Base from which Comp. and Superl. are formed.	Comparative.	Superlative.
maledicus *slanderous*	**maledīcent-**	**maledīcentior**	**maledīcentissimus**
benevolus *benevolent*	**benevolent-**	**benevolentior**	**benevolentissimus**

117. III. Adjectives with base ending in a vowel (other than **u** in the combination **gu** or **qu**) have no special forms for the comparative or superlative; the comparative is expressed by **magis** and the superlative by **maximē** preceding the positive.

EXAMPLES.

Positive.		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
pius	*dutiful*	**pi-**	**magis pius**	**maximē pius**
arduus	*lofty*	**ardu-**	**magis arduus**	**maximē arduus**
But—				
pinguis	*fat*	**pingu-**	**pinguior**	**pinguissimus**
antiquus	*ancient*	**antiqu-**	**antiquior**	**antiquissimus**

Means of Expressing Comparison.

118. **Quam** is very commonly used after comparative adjectives and adverbs in the sense of *than*.

(*a*) When two persons or things are compared, the substantives denoting them must, if **quam** is used, be in the same case.

odiīs acriōribus quam vīribus certat	*he fights with greater hatred than strength*
nihil est iūcundius quam ōtiōsa senectūs	*nothing is pleasanter than a calm old age*
hasta mea validior est quam Marcī (hasta)	*my spear is stronger than Marcus' (spear)*

Obs. The second **hasta** may in the last example be omitted, as *spear* in English.

(*b*) When the subject of comparison is the degree in which two adjectives are respectively applicable to a substantive, **magis** is used with the former adjective, or both adjectives are comparative. In both constructions the gender, number, and case of the two adjectives are the same. When **magis** is used, it is implied that the second adjective is not really applicable at all.

patiens est magis quam validus	*he is enduring rather than strong*
rēgis victōria clārior quam ūtilior erat	*the king's victory was more brilliant than useful*

Perfect Participles.

119. A **perfect participle** is very commonly **used alone** as the complete predicate, instead of forming part of the predicate (**as** in the perfect indicative passive) with **est** or **sunt**.

continuō audītae vōcēs	*forthwith cries were heard*

120. The perfect participle is that most frequently used in Latin. Like the other participles, it can (1) be used as a qualifying adjective, (2) retain its verbal force.

The perfect participle, when derived from a **transitive active verb**, is **passive** in meaning and may have an infinitive or prepositional phrase dependent upon it; but when derived from a **deponent verb** is **active** in meaning and may govern an object, direct or indirect. For exceptions see §§ 412, 413.

For examples of (2) above see § 124; the following are examples of (1):—

decemvirī propter hominēs territōs librum inspexērunt	*a commission often inspected the books on account of the terrified men*
exspectāta diēs aderat	*the looked-for day was at hand*

NOTE.—Some participles, both present and perfect, may be used purely as attributes and admit of degrees of comparison, like ordinary adjectives; *e.g.* **amans** (*loving*) makes **amantior, amantissimus; īrātus** (*angry*, past part. of **īrascor**) makes **īrātior, īrātissimus.**

121. The usage of the participle in Latin is so characteristic of the Latin language and so different from our English idiom, that the literal translation often fails to render the force of the original. Hence the need for studying the following rules and examples.

122. When the perfect participle is in the **nominative**, *i.e.* in agreement with the subject of the sentence, sometimes a literal, sometimes a more idiomatic rendering will be the best English equivalent.

(*a*) **rex locūtus consēdit**	*the king having spoken sat down* or *when the king had finished speaking he sat down*
(*b*) **mīlitēs urbem expugnāre ā duce iussī prōgrediēbantur**	*the soldiers, being ordered* (or *when ordered* or *when they were ordered*) *by the general to storm the city, advanced;* or *the soldiers were ordered by the general to storm the city: they then advanced*

(*c*) **dux mīlitēs hortātus prōgrediēbātur**	*the general, after exhorting the soldiers, advanced*
(*d*) **ab urbe expulsī, colloquium petīvērunt**	*being driven* (or *since they were driven*) *from the city, they asked for a parley*
(*e*) **deōs testātus ē templō excessit**	*calling* (or *after calling*) *the gods to witness, he left the temple*
(*f*) **deōs nōn testātus ē templō excessit**	*he left the temple without calling the gods to witness*

123. The alternative rendering of (*a*) contains two coordinate verbs, whereas in the Latin the participle (**locūtus**) represents the less important or subordinate idea. The main idea is that the king sat down: **locūtus** marks the time or circumstance.

Note also in (*b*) the idiomatic use of *when ordered* for the more complete *when they were ordered*; cp. the use of *while* in translating the present participle (§ 107).

In (*d*) as in (*b*) the participle is rendered by an English adverbial clause.

In (*e*) and (*f*) the Latin perfect is most idiomatically rendered by an English present participle or by the substitution of a preposition and gerund for the participle. The Latin is more exact than the English in the use of the tenses: the man left the temple *after having called* or *without having called* the gods to witness. So **ratus** (§ 492) is often translated *thinking*, and **veritus** *fearing*, but literally they mean *having thought*, *having feared*.

124. When the participle is in agreement with a substantive which is the **object** (direct or indirect) of the main verb, or for other reasons is in a case other than the nominative, the differences of idiom in the two languages become in translation still more apparent.

(*a*) **Pompēius bellum dēlātum confēcit**	*Pompeius finished the war which had been entrusted to him*
(*b*) **rēgī haec locūtō pāruērunt**	*they obeyed the king when he had thus spoken*
(*c*) **Caesar mīlitem captum occīdit**	*Caesar, having captured the soldier, killed him*
(*d*) **Caesar mīlitī captō pepercit**	*Caesar, having captured the soldier, spared him*

(*e*) **verba ōrātōris audīta in tabellīs notāvit**	*on* (or *after*) *hearing the ambassador's words he put them down in a note-book*, or *he listened to the ambassador's words and put them down in a note-book*

125. A relative clause might be used to render **captum** in (*c*), **captō** in (*d*), or **audīta** in (*e*), as in the case of **dēlātum** in (*a*).

In the translations of (*c*) and (*d*) the Latin perfect participles passive are rendered by English perfect participles active. There being no **active** perfect participle of **capiō** which could agree with the subject, the passive perfect participle agreeing with the object is used instead.

The literal translations of the above are :—

Caesar killed (or *spared*) *the captured soldier.*

Alternative renderings are

Caesar killed (or *spared*) *the soldier whom he had captured,*

or

Caesar captured and killed (or *spared*) *the soldier.*

126. From these examples it will be gathered that the participial phrase becomes in English—

(1) the corresponding participle or participial phrase;
(2) an adjectival clause or phrase ;
(3) an adverbial clause or phrase (of time, cause, etc.) ;
(4) a principal sentence **coordinate** with that which renders the Latin finite verb.

The last is often the commonest and neatest method of translation. The **simple** sentence in the Latin, with its one main verb, becomes a **compound** sentence in English with two or more coordinate main verbs. It may be said briefly that, whereas a paragraph of English prose tends to a sequence of coordinate sentences or clauses, Latin tends to the use of participles and dependent or sub-dependent clauses gathered round a single principal verb.

READING LESSON 8.

Caesar's Troops fail to occupy the Breakwater at Alexandria.

In talibus rebus occupatus Caesar milites hortatus est; tum remigum magnus numerus ex longis navibus nostris in molem se eiciebat. Pars studio spectandi ferebatur, pars etiam cupiditate pugnandi. Primo naves hostium lapidibus ac fundis a mole repellebant ac multum proficere multitudine telorum videbantur. Sed a latere aperto ausi sunt egredi ex navibus Alexandrini pauci; Romani temere in naves fugere incipiebant. Tali fuga incitati Alexandrini plures navibus egrediebantur nostrosque acrius perturbatos insequebantur. Pars militum in navibus longis remanserat, et iam scalas rapiebat navesque a terra repellebat, hostes enim naves putabant occupaturos. Talibus rebus perturbati reliqui milites, ratique a tergo se circumdatum iri et discessu navium in maximum periculum esse venturos, munitionem in ponte institutam reliquerunt et magno cursu incitati ad naves contenderunt.—*From Caesar, Bell. Alex.*, 20.

EXERCISE 8.

[*Use participles where possible.*]

1. The condemned men were shut up in the prison. 2. After the woman had stepped aside, Tarquinius never saw her again. 3. The books he had bought were preserved afterwards by the Romans with great care. 4. My father Hamilcar, while sacrificing, brought [say, "moved"] me to the altar and forced me to swear that I would never be the friend of the Roman people. 5. Caesar made his way with greater speed across the Alps. 6. The city was already blockaded, but he recaptured it. 7. Why do we not accept the rule that all men have accepted? 8. So spoke Theodotus,

but the people heard his words in silence. 9. The Egyptians were wont to bury the bodies of those who had died, the Romans to burn [them]. 10. The long expected day was-at-hand; the king, stretching-out his arms, spoke to the assembled people.

11. I pardoned the fellow's outrageous request. 12. The years glide [by], but we must not complain. 13. Have you ever seen a tower falling to the ground? 14. I saw such a fall once, of a tower [that was] full of soldiers. 15. By obeying the king you have broken the laws. 16. I have at last found the book that I had lost for so long. 17. I suspected that you had taken away the book. 18. It is not for mortals (*gen.*) to command the gods. 19. Will you try to buy for us the house which has been built near the river? 20. Favorinus, the philosopher, said to a youth who was very fond of old words, and often used them in his daily talk, "Curius and Fabricius, men of ancient time [say, "very ancient men"], spoke the simplest words with (*cum*) their friends."

LESSON 9.

Adverbs and comparison of adverbs; some principal parts of verbs (continued); ablative absolute.

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

Principal parts of verbs in thick type of the third conjugation, from **alō** to **coepiō** (§§ 488, E-489).

Adverbs formed from Adjectives (including Participles)

127. From adjectives of the first class, *i.e.* those which follow the first and second declensions of substantives, adverbs are formed by the addition of **-ē** to the base of the adjectives.

Examples.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
acūtus, *sharp*	**acūt-**	**acūtē**, *sharply*
līber, *free*	**līber-**	**līberē**, *freely*

Note.—A few adverbs ending in **-iter** are formed from adjectives of the first class; *e.g.* **largiter** (also **largē**), *abundantly*, from **largus**, *abundant*.

128. From adjectives of the second class, *i.e.* those which follow the third declension of substantives, adverbs are formed by the addition of **-iter** to the base of the adjective; but if the base of the adjective ends in **nt**, **-er** is added instead of **-iter**.

Examples.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
memor, *mindful*	**memor-**	**memoriter**, *by heart*
ācer, *keen*	**ācr-**	**ācriter**, *keenly*
brevis, *short*	**brev-**	**breviter**, *briefly*
diligens, *careful*	**diligent-**	**diligenter**, *carefully*

129. The accusative singular neuter of an adjective is often used as an adverb, sometimes even when a special form for the adverb exists; *e.g.* **multum**, *much* (from **multus**), **facile**, *easily* (from **facilis**), **plērumque**, *very often* (from **plērīque**, pl.), *very many*.

130. The following are irregularly formed:—

From **audax**,	*bold*,	**audacter**,	*boldly*
,, **bonus**,	*good*,	**bene**,	*well*
,, **citus**,	*quick*,	**cito**,	*quickly*
,, **difficilis**,	*difficult*,	**difficulter**,	*with difficulty*
,, **magnus**,	*great*,	**magnopere**,	*greatly*
,, **malus**,	*bad*,	**male**,	*badly*

Obs. **Magnopere** (also written as two words, **magnō opere**) properly means *with great labour*; hence, *very much*, *greatly*.

Comparison of Adverbs.

131. A **comparative adverb** is the accusative singular neuter of the corresponding comparative adjective.

A **superlative adverb** is formed by adding **-ē** to the base of the corresponding superlative adjective.

Examples.

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adjective,	**acūtus**, *sharp*	**acūtior**	**acūtissimus**
Adverb,	**acūtē**, *sharply*	**acūtius**	**acūtissimē**
Adjective,	**ācer**, *keen*	**ācrior**	**ācerrimus**
Adverb,	**ācriter**, *keenly*	**ācrius**	**ācerrimē**

132. Comparative and Superlative Adverbs not formed from Adjectives:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
diū, *long*	**diūtius**	**diūtissimē**
nūper, *recently*	——	**nūperrimē**
saepe, *often*	**saepius**	**saepissimē**

133. Quam, used with superlative adjectives and adverbs, is represented by the English phrase *as . . . as possible.*

Caesar quam celerrimē (*or* quam brevissimō itinere) in Galliam contendēbat	*Caesar was hastening to Gaul as quickly as possible* (or *by the shortest possible road*)

Ablative Absolute.

134. In the sentences illustrating the usage of the participles (§ 122) the substantives with which the participles are in agreement are either in the nominative as subjects, or in the accusative or dative as objects (direct or indirect) of the main finite verb. Thus in the sentence—

Sullae sacra facientī anguis appāruit

facientī agrees with **Sullae** (dative), indirect object of **appāruit.**

With the above compare the following sentence :—

Sullā sacra faciente, Pompēius intrāvit	*while Sulla was performing the sacred rites, Pompeius came in*

Here **Sullā,** with which **faciente** agrees, is in the ablative case, and is neither subject nor object of the verb **intrāvit.** This usage is called the **ablative absolute** construction, and is so called because it is apparently independent (**absolūtus** = *freed*) of the main verb.

135. This construction corresponds with that known in English as the **nominative absolute** and, like the English usage, is an adverbial modification of the principal verb.

hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar legiōnēs revocārī iubet	*these things having been discovered, Caesar orders the legions to be recalled*

Obs. This ablative is really instrumental (§ 27, *b*), and, because it expresses an action which accompanies that denoted by the finite verb, is sometimes called the *ablative of attendant circumstances.*

136. The correspondence of the Latin and the English usage is shown in the following sentences.

(*a*) **hostibus signum exspectantibus subitō clāmāvimus**	*while the enemy were awaiting the signal, we suddenly shouted*
(*b*) **rēge locūtō rēgīna surrexit**	*the king having spoken, the queen rose ;* or *the queen rose when the king had finished speaking*
(*c*) **mīlitibus urbem expugnāre iussīs, hostēs mūrōs renovāre cōnātī sunt**	*the soldiers having been ordered to storm the city, the enemy attempted to repair the walls ;* or *though* (or *after*) *the soldiers had been ordered to storm the city, the enemy attempted to repair their walls*

137. In the above sentences, while the literal translation of the Latin ablative absolute by an English nominative absolute is sometimes possible, it is more usual to use an English subordinate adverbial clause, as in the alternative renderings. Often it is more idiomatic to turn the participial phrase into a sentence coordinate with the main verb (cp. § 122); *e.g.* sentences (*b*) and (*c*) above may be translated—

(*b*) *the king finished speaking and the queen rose up,*
(*c*) *the soldiers were ordered to storm the city, and so the enemy attempted to repair the walls.*

138. As this absolute construction is much more common in Latin than the corresponding nominative absolute in English, it may often be conveniently used to render an English adverbial clause. Any doubt as to the Latin equivalent may be resolved by turning the adverbial clause into a nominative absolute, the participle becoming either present active or perfect passive; care must be taken that the substantive or pronoun with which this participle

agrees is neither the subject nor object of the main verb. Thus:—

Sentence with perfect active participle.	Sentence as rendered with ablative absolute.
having made (or *after making*) *this speech, he dismissed the meeting*	*this speech having been made, he dismissed the meeting*
hāc ōrātiōne habitā, concilium dīmīsit	
having left his wife, he went away from the city	*his wife having been left, he went away from the city*
relictā uxōre, ab urbe excessit	

Obs. The idiomatic English for this last sentence, as already noted (§ 107, *Obs.*), would be *leaving his wife he went away* . . . . When the present participle thus stands for a perfect, it must be treated as a perfect in translating it into Latin. So:—

oppidānī, clāmōribus audītīs, obsidēs interfēcērunt	*the townsfolk, hearing the shouts, slew the hostages*

139. Occasionally the ablative absolute is used without a verb, in cases where we might expect a present participle of the verb **sum**, if it existed in Latin. The predicative word in such cases is usually a substantive.

Saturnīnus Mariō dictātōre interfectus est	*Saturninus was killed while Marius was dictator*

READING LESSON 9.

Fight between a Roman and a Gaul.

Titus Quinctius dictator adversus Gallos nuper in Italiam transgressos missus est. Galli iuxta urbem trans Anienem fluvium consederant. Ibi Titus Manlius, nobilissimus de senatoribus iuvenis, provocantem ad singulare certamen Gallum occidit, et erepto torque aureo colloque suo imposito in perpetuum Torquati et sibi et posteris cognomen accepit. Galli fugati sunt; mox a Gaio Sulpicio dictatore etiam victi.—*From Eutropius*, ii.

EXERCISE 9.

[*Use participles where possible.*]

1. When I was made [use *creo*] consul, Catilina trembled. 2. Hannibal fell severely wounded in-the-right side by a javelin. 3. Do you think that if the Gauls return they will be conquered by the Romans? 4. I was greatly affected [say, "moved in-my-mind"] when I heard the news, and for-a-long-time did not speak. 5. Ariovistus led-back his forces to the camp after many wounds had been given and received. 6. He confessed that the army of Caesar had fought very bravely. 7. The enemy's line was defeated on [*a*, with *abl.*] the left wing, and Caesar determined to advance across the river. 8. I will spare you [*plur.*] rather according-to (*e*) my-own custom [*abl.*] than by [any] merit of-yours [*tuus*]. 9. I will accept no terms of surrender except when you have given-up your arms. 10. Having asked me my opinion the consul sat down.

11. I said that I alone out-of the senators had found a remedy for [say, "of"] the evils that were afflicting the state. 12. Having begun the task which I determined-on, I will not lay-it-down. 13. Though you [*plur.*] have complained about my ignorance, yet you will be ashamed to complain that I have been negligent. 14. The soldiers were carried away by their enthusiasm, and recklessly pursued the flying enemy. 15. I once climbed the highest mountain in Thessalia, and my father accompanied me. 16. You say that you will give me the money soon. 17. Do you not know that while the grass is growing the horse is dying of-hunger [*abl.*]? 18. The bridges have been broken by the force of the rushing water. 19. Roscius sings more clearly than you, but I confess that your songs give me [say, "affect me with"] greater pleasure. 20. Not with the slain bodies of bulls will you appease the gods: but only by virtue.

LESSON 10.

Irregular comparison of adjectives and adverbs; present and imperfect subjunctive of verbs; jussive and deliberative subjunctive; agreement of adjectives with two substantives.

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

The present and imperfect subjunctive of **sum** (§ 472) and the present and imperfect subjunctive, both active and passive, of the regular verbs, including those of the deponents (§§ 473-85); principal parts of verbs in thick type of the third and fourth conjugations, from **veniō** to **ordior** (§§ 490-5).

Irregular Comparison of Adjectives.

140. I. The following six adjectives form their superlative by adding **-limus** to the base:—

Positive.	Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
facilis, *easy*	facil-	**facilior**	**facillimus**
difficilis, *difficult*	difficil-	**difficilior**	**difficillimus**
similis, *like*	simil-	**similior**	**simillimus**
dissimilis, *unlike*	dissimil-	**dissimilior**	**dissimillimus**
gracilis, *thin*	gracil-	**gracilior**	**gracillimus**
humilis, *low*	humil-	**humilior**	**humillimus**

Obs. All other adjectives in **-ilis** form the superlative in the ordinary way; *e.g.* **fragilis**, *brittle*, **fragilissimus**.

141. II. Two indeclinable adjectives are thus compared:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
frūgī, *of worth*	**frūgālior**	**frūgālissimus**
nēquam, *worthless*	**nēquior**	**nēquissimus**

142. III. The following adjectives have a comparative and superlative not formed from the positive:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative
bonus, *good*	**melior**	**optimus**
malus, *bad*	**pēior**	**pessimus**
magnus, *great*	**māior**	**maximus**
parvus, *small*	**minor**	**minimus**
multus, *much*	**plūrēs** (*pl.*)	**plūrimus**
dīves, *rich*	**dītior** *or* **dīvitior**	**dītissimus** *or* **dīvitissimus**

NOTE.—**Plūrēs** is thus declined: N. V. Acc. (masc. and fem.) **plūrēs**, (neut.) **plūra**, Gen. (all genders) **plūrium**, Dat. Abl. (all genders) **plūribus**. The singular **plūs**, Gen. **plūris**, *more*, is a neuter substantive; the Dat. and Abl. are not in use.

143. IV. The following adjectives have no positives:—

(Cp. **iuvenis**, *young man*)	**iūnior**, *younger*	(**nātū minimus**)
	ōcior, *swifter*	**ōcissimus**
(Cp. **senex**, *old man*)	**senior**, *older*	(**nātū maximus**)

Obs. **Nātū** is ablative, and is a substantive used only in that case and denoting *birth*. Hence **nātū minimus** and **nātū maximus** mean respectively *least* and *greatest by birth*.

144. V. The following adjectives, derived from prepositions, are irregularly compared:—

Preposition.	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
citrā, *on this side*	—	**citerior**, *nearer*	**citimus**
dē, *down from*	—	**dēterior**, *worse*	**dēterrimus**
extrā, *outside*	(**exterus**)	**exterior**, *outer*	**extrēmus**, **extimus**
infrā, *below*	**inferus**, *lower*	**inferior**	**īnfimus** *or* **īmus**
intrā, *within*	—	**interior**, *inner*	**intimus**
post, *after*	(**posterus**)	**posterior**, *later*	**postrēmus**, *last*; **postumus**, *last*
prae, *before*	—	**prior**, *former*	**prīmus** [*born*
prope, *near*	—	**propior**, *nearer*	**proximus**
suprā, *above*	**superus**, *upper*	**superior**	**suprēmus**, *highest, last*; **summus**, *highest*
ultrā, *beyond*	—	**ulterior**, *farther*	**ultimus**, *farthest, last*

NOTE.—**Exterus** and **posterus** are regularly declined throughout, all forms except the nom. and voc. sing. masc. being in use.

Comparison of Adverbs.

145. The rule for forming the comparative and superlative of adverbs (§ 131) applies whether the comparison of the adjectives is regular or irregular. Thus—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adjective, **bonus**, *good*	**melior**	**optimus**
Adverb, **bene**, *well*	**melius**	**optimē**
Adjective, **malus**, *bad*	**pēior**	**pessimus**
Adverb, **male**, *ill*	**pēius**	**pessimē**

The following are the only exceptions to the above rule:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
magnopere, *greatly*	**magis**	**maximē**
multum, *much*	**plūs**	**plūrimum**

The Subjunctive.

146. The present and imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of the regular verbs are formed from the present base.

147. The subjunctive has two main uses in Latin—in principal, and in dependent, clauses. The meaning of the subjunctive varies according to the context of the principal sentence or the nature of the dependent clause.

Jussive Subjunctive.

148. Two sets of usages in principal sentences may be grouped under the term **jussive**:—

(*a*) Subjunctive expressing a command or exhortation (**jussive use proper**—from **iussus**, past participle passive of **iubeō**, *I command*);

(*b*) Subjunctive questioning what should be done (**deliberative subjunctive**).

149. (*a*) The present subjunctive expresses a **command** or **exhortation** in the first person plural, in the third person singular or plural, and (if no definite individual is addressed) in the second person singular. The negative used is **nē**, not **nōn**.

pugnēmus, ait	*let us fight, he says*
nē pugnēmus	*let us not fight*
paupertātem patī discat puer	*let a boy learn to endure poverty*
nē mīlitēs hostibus cēdant	*let not the soldiers yield to the enemy*
iniūriās fortūnae fugiendō relinquās	*one should escape by flight the harsh treatment of Fortune*

150. (*b*) The interrogative form of the jussive subjunctive is called the **deliberative or dubitative subjunctive**; the **present** is used in questions as to the course of action which is to be pursued, the **imperfect** in questions as to the course which should have been pursued. The negative used is **nōn**.

quot mēcum veniant?	*how many are to come with me?*
quid agerem? contenderem (*or* **num contenderem**) **contrā tribūnum plēbis?**	*what was I to do* (or *should I have done*)*? was I to fight against a tribune of the people?* (one of the Roman magistrates)

Obs. **Quid** is the neuter of the interrogative pronoun **quis**? *who?* The interrogative pronouns will be treated in a later lesson (Lesson 13).

Agreement of Adjectives Qualifying more than one Substantive.

151. An **adjective used as an attribute of several substantives** usually **agrees with the nearest** in number and gender.

perpetuus sopor et quiēs	*perpetual sleep and quiet*

152. An **adjective or participle serving as part of the predicate of a composite subject** (*i.e.* one consisting of several substantives) **is put in the plural**; and if the

members of the subject are of different genders, the adjective is masculine if it refers to persons, neuter if it refers to things.

generōsī sunt pater et māter	*his father and mother are of noble birth*
dīvitiae decus glōria (*or* **dīvitiae et decus et glōria**) **in oculīs posita sunt**	*riches, honour, and glory are placed before our eyes*

NOTE.—*And . . . not* is often translated by **nec** (*nor*) :—

vēnit, nec posteā abscessit	*he came, and did not afterwards depart*

READING LESSON **10.**

NEGOTIATIONS BETWEEN CAESAR AND POMPEIUS.

Acceptis mandatis Roscius a Caesare ad urbem Capuam pervenit ibique consules Pompeiumque invenit: postulata Caesaris renuntiat. Consules re deliberata respondent scriptaque ad Caesarem mandata remittunt. Scripserunt Caesarem oportere in Galliam reverti, Arimino excedere, exercitus dimittere; exercitu enim dimisso, Pompeium dixerunt in Hispanias egressurum esse, nec postea Caesari molestum fore. "Det nobis fidem Caesar," dixerunt, "se promissa facturum esse; aliter nos et Pompeius delectus non intermittemus." Iniquum erat talia postulare, respondit que Caesar, "Non promisi me primum exercitus dimissurum; primus tu exercitus dimitte, Pompei; ego sequar." Difficile videbatur, Caesare Pompeioque sic dissentientibus, bellum vitare.—*From Caesar, de Bello Civili*, I. 10.

EXERCISE 10.

1. Let us start to-day for Further Gaul. 2. Octavius was born when Cicero and Antonius were consuls. 3. Vercingetorix was driven out of the city of Gergovia. 4. Either we rise from lower

to higher [things], or we fall from higher [things] to lower. 5. Caesar started before dawn and reached the city towards evening. 6. Most men are more fond of peace than war. 7. Our men quickly raise a shout, and send their javelins against the enemy. 8. What was I to do? I had neither money [say, "money was wanting to me"] nor a horse. 9. There was no chariot prepared for me, even if-I-had money. 10. They fought [*impersonal*] for a long time and everywhere with-cruelty [*adv.*].

11. Around the consul the battle was keener. 12. He attacked the transports which had been abandoned by Antonius and burnt them all. 13. Spies, who had been posted along the roads, reported that the legions were following and were not now far distant. 14. I have seen a youth lamenting that his past years had been so useless. 15. Caesar ordered his men to make the attack after the signal for [say, "of"] fighting had been given. 16. The eager soldiers advanced without waiting for the signal [*use the passive*]. 17. While Cicero was walking in his garden, a soothsayer approached him, and said, "Let not Antonius find you here." 18. Cicero feared Antonius less than the gods, who-were-ordering [him] to remain. 19. While the senators were approaching, we cried out as loudly as possible that we would burn the town immediately. 20. He sent on the baggage and had it placed on a hill, already decided on; then he said, "You have, soldiers, the opportunity you have looked for so long" [*translate in one sentence if possible*].

LESSON 11.

Pronominal adjectives and demonstrative pronouns and adverbs; the subjunctive (continued); optative subjunctive; prohibitions; double questions.

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

The declension of **nullus** (§ 453), **hīc, iste, ille, is, īdem, ipse** (§§ 460-5); the demonstrative pronouns in the first column of § 470 and the demonstrative adverbs in the first column of § 520; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of **sum**, and the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, both active and passive, of the regular verbs, including those of the deponents.

Pronominal Adjectives.

153. The following four pronominal adjectives (of the first class) have genitive singular of all genders ending in **-īus** (sometimes **-ius**), and dative singular of all genders ending in **-ī**. Compare the declension of **nullus**, *no, none* (§ 453).

uter, utra, utrum, *which (of the two)?*
neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither*
alter, altera, alterum, *the one (of two), the other (of two)*
alius, alia, aliud, *one (of several), another (of several)*

The following adjectives of the first class are similarly declined:—

sōlus, sōla, sōlum, *alone*
tōtus, tōta, tōtum, *whole*
ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one*

Obs. **Alius** has nom. and acc. sing. neut. **aliud**, and gen. sing. **alīus**; the latter is rarely found, **alterius** being generally used instead. The dative singular is **aliī**.

154. **Uter** (§ 470), as an interrogative word, introduces a question, in the same way as do **cūr**, **quot**, etc. (§§ 36, 37).

utrum rundum emet?	*which farm (of the two) will he buy?*

155. **Alius**, when repeated in two different sentences or parts of the same sentence, means *one . . . another*, or *some . . . others*. Further, it is frequently repeated in a different case to translate *one (some) . . . one, another . . . another*.

aliī Cicerōnem errāvisse dīcunt, aliī negant	*some say that Cicero was wrong, others deny it*
alius in aliā est rē ūtilior	*one is more useful in one occupation, another in another,* or *different people are more useful in different occupations*

NOTE.—**Alius** followed by **atque** or **ac** is used in the sense of *other than*, **atque** being used before a vowel, **ac** before a consonant; *e.g.*

aliō modō atque ego scrībit	*he writes in a different manner from me*
Alter . . . alter means *the one . . .*	*the other of two.*
alterius factiōnis principēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī	*the Aedui were the leaders of the one party, the Sequani of the other*
Note also—	
alterō pede claudus fuit	*he was lame in one foot*

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

156. The Latin demonstrative pronouns are used both substantivally and adjectivally, just as in English we may say either "this (*substantival*) is true," or "this (*adjectival*) statement is true."

The demonstrative pronouns are five in number, as follows:—

(1) **hīc** (or **hic**), **haec**, **hōc**, *this;* used of that which belongs to, or is near, the speaker;

(2) **iste, ista, istud**, *that (of yours)*; used of that which belongs to, or is near, the person spoken to;

(3) **ille, illa, illud**, *that (yonder)*; used of that which belongs to, or is near, neither the speaker nor the person spoken to;

(4) **is, ea, id**, *that;* used of what has just been mentioned;

(5) **ipse, ipsa, ipsum**, *self*, or *myself, yourself, himself*, etc. (when in agreement with a personal pronoun or the expressed or implied subject or object of a verb).

Obs. **Īdem, eadem, idem**, *the same*, is formed from **is, ea, id**, and the particle **-dem**. See its declension, § 464.

157. The personal pronoun of the third person, *he, him*, etc., is translated by **is, ea, id**, or sometimes by **ille, illa, illud**, when it is emphatic or where its omission would cause ambiguity (cp. § 41).

Contrast the following:—

eum dē locō mōvī	*I moved him from the place*
sē dē locō mōvit	*he moved* (i.e. *he moved himself*) *from the place*

158. Similarly *his, her, its*, is translated by **ēius** (= *of him*, etc.) where the thing possessed does not belong to the subject of the sentence—in which case it is translated by **suus** (§ 87). **It is only, however, inserted at all where it is emphatic or where its omission would cause ambiguity.**

Contrast the following:—

patrem ēius occīdit	*he kills his (somebody else's) father*
patrem suum occīdit	*he kills his (own) father*

159. When used with a reflexive pronoun, **ipse** agrees with the subject of the sentence, unless the object is the emphatic word.

Compare:—

ipse fēcī (fēcit)	*I myself have (he himself has) done it*
sē ipse consōlātur	*[it is] he [who] consoles himself*
sē ipsum consōlātur	*he consoles himself [and not others]*

160. **Ille . . . hīc** are often used to mean *the former . . . the latter.*

Subjunctive of Wish.

161. The subjunctive expressing a wish (or the optative subjunctive) is a third variety of the jussive subjunctive (cp. § 148). It is commonly introduced by **utinam** (equivalent to *would that . . .!*). The negative is usually **nē**, but occasionally **nōn**.

The (1) **present subjunctive** is used to express a wish that may yet be realised, the (2) **imperfect** and (3) **pluperfect** subjunctive to express a wish that something (2) were otherwise than it is, (3) had been otherwise than it was.

(1) **utinam Colossēum aspiciam!**	*O that I might see the Colosseum!*
(2) **utinam Alexander adhūc regnāret!**	*would that Alexander were yet on the throne!*
(3) **utinam Caesar Pompēium nē superāvisset!**	*I wish that Caesar had not conquered Pompeius*

Prohibitions.

162. A **prohibition** (*i.e.* a negative command) is generally expressed in prose by (1) **nōlī** (plur. **nōlīte**) with the present infinitive; (2) **cavē** (plur. **cavēte**) with the present subjunctive.

nōlī venīre *or* **cavē veniās**	*do not come*

Obs **Nōlī** is the imperative of **nōlō**, *I will not* (§ 501).

163. A prohibition addressed to a definite person is sometimes expressed by **nē** and the second person of the present or perfect subjunctive. This form of prohibition may be regarded as unceremonious and colloquial; it is accordingly very rare in dignified prose.

nē timeās	*don't be alarmed*
hōc nē fēceris	*you must not do this*

Double Questions.

164. The first member of a **double question** is most often introduced by **utrum**, the second by **an**; less frequently the first member is introduced by **-ne**, or stands without an interrogative particle.

utrum Rōmānīs (*or* **Rōmānīsne**) **an Pergamēnīs pecūnia dabitur?**	*will the money be given to the Romans or the Pergamenes?*

165. The latter alternative, when the contradictory of the former, is usually expressed by **annōn**.

utrum Caesar (*or* **Caesarne**) **Nerviōs superāvit annōn?**	*did Caesar conquer the Nervii or not?*

166. An is sometimes used to introduce an **indignant question.**

an rēgis servī erimus?	*shall we be the slaves of a king?*

READING LESSON 11.

A. The Power of Covetousness.

Lucra petens habili tauros adiungit aratro
Et durum terrae rusticus urget opus,
Lucra petituras, freta per parentia ventis,
Ducunt instabiles sidera certa rates:
Muneribus meus est captus puer. At deus illa
In cinerem et liquidas munera vertat aquas.
Iam mihi persolvet poenas, pulvisque decorem
Detrahet et ventis horrida facta coma.

Tibullus, I. ix. 7-14.

B. The Unambitious Man.

Ipse suas sectatur oves, at filius agnos,
Et calidam fesso comparat uxor aquam.
Sic ego sim, liceatque caput canescere canis,
Temporis et prisci facta referre senem.
Sic placeam vobis*; alius sit fortis in armis,
Sternat et adversos Marte favente duces.

Tibullus, I. x. 41-44, 29, 30.

* *i.e.* Laribus, "household gods."

EXERCISE 11.

1. Thinking that Caesar's army had been destroyed, he ordered his own forces to withdraw [say, "to take themselves back"]. 2. I wish I had had time for reading [as] a young man. 3. It is not easy for an old man to devote himself to literature. 4. Not only he but his parents and relations are afflicted with the utmost mental anxiety [say, "care of mind"]. 5. They are waiting here for messengers, but no messengers arrive. 6. I say one thing, he another; which of the two speaks the truth? 7. Nothing is worse than wisdom which is turned to (*ad*) base purposes. 8. You must obey me alone. 9. Laelius, when the senators asked him for his opinion, refused to give it. 10. The messengers find Camillus tilling his fields and tell him that he has been created consul by the Senate.

11. Do not destroy our state when I am dead. 12. Let all the allies go away; here we will remain. 13. Will you endure these things with a calm mind? 14. Horses have wider teeth than boars; but the teeth of boars are sharper, and bite with greater force. 15. It is not by my fault that I often send such letters to you, senators, but the violence of Jugurtha compels me. 16. Let Varro call all the gods to witness that he did not write that letter; I do not believe him when he swears it. 17. The townspeople were thrown-into-confusion by fear; the walls were captured, and the gate of the city began to be broken down [*link the first sentence with the rest by participles*]. 18. The Athenians had heard that the farm of Pericles would not be ravaged by Archidamus when he entered their boundaries. 19. Often men, suffering [say, "sick"] from a serious illness, seem to be relieved by drinking water. 20. That Varius says that Aemilius Scaurus was bribed by a tyrant's gold and betrayed the empire of the Roman people.

LESSON 12.

Compounds of **sum**; *relative pronouns and adverbs; relative clauses.*

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

The conjugation of **possum** (§ 499); the compounds of **sum** (§ 500); the declension of **quī** (§ 466), the relative pronouns and adjectives in the second column of § 470, and the relative adverbs in the second column of § 520.

Possum and the Compounds of Sum.

167. **Possum** (*I can, I am able*) is used with the present infinitive as in English, and the present infinitive is retained in past time with the past tenses of the indicative of **possum**. This present infinitive is often, in the latter case, rendered by an English perfect infinitive.

exercitus dēlērī potest	*the army can* (or *may*) *be destroyed*
exercitus dēlērī potuit	*the army could* (or *might*) *have been destroyed*

Obs. **Possum** answers to both *I can* and *I may*, as being the general verb expressing *possibility*, which is the wider notion embracing both these auxiliaries in English.

168. Not only the verbs expressing *possibility* but also those expressing *duty* (**dēbeō, oportet,** § 94) come under the same rule.

exercitus ducem sequī dēbet	*the army ought to* (or *should*) *follow its leader*
adesse tē oportuit	*you ought to have been there*

169. All the compounds of **sum** except **possum** are intransitive and take the dative of the indirect object.

exercituī praesum	*I am in command of an army*
nihil mihi deest	*nothing is wanting to me*

170. The following are irregularities in the conjugation of compounds of **sum**:—

Prōsum retains **d** before **e**; *e.g.* the present indicative is

prō-sum	**prō-sumus**
prōd-es	**prōd-estis**
prōd-est	**prō-sunt**

Absum generally has **ā-** instead of **ab-** before **f**; *e.g.* **āfuī, āfore.**

Absum has a present participle **absens** (gen. **absentis**), *absent*, and **praesum** has a present participle **praesens** (gen. **praesentis**), *present*.

Relative Pronouns and Adverbs.

(Second column in §§ 470, 520.)

171. In the declension of **quīcumque, quāliscumque**, etc., the ending **-cumque** is invariable, and the first part of the word is declined like the simple relative **quī, quālis**, etc.

Obs. The suffix **-cumque** (or **-cunque**) has the force of English *-ever, -soever*.

Of **quisquis** the only forms in common use are—

Nom. sing. masc. **quisquis**, neut. **quidquid** or **quicquid**.
Abl. sing. masc. and neut. **quōquō**.

quīcumque mare nāvigat tē adōrat	*whosoever sails the sea worships thee*
in horreō condit quidquid dē Libycīs āreīs verritur	*he stores in his barn whatever is swept from Libyan threshing floors*

172. The relative pronouns and adverbs in the second column of §§ 470, 520, are to be learned in connection with the corresponding demonstrative pronouns and adverbs in the first column, and the same applies to the succeeding columns in the following lessons.

173. The word denoting that to which a relative relates or refers is called the **antecedent**. The relative is regu-

larly of the same gender, number, and person as its antecedent, but its case is determined by its own clause.

When the relative clause is merely a description or definition, the verb is in the indicative.

urbs quae tam diū oppugnābātur capta est	*the city which was for so long being besieged has been captured*
urbs quam Rōmānī oppugnāverant capta est	*the city which the Romans had besieged was captured*
mīles cui Caesar pepercerat ēvāsit	*the soldier whom Caesar had spared* (or *to whom Caesar had been merciful*) *escaped*
rīdiculē rogitās, quīcum ūnā cibum capere soleō	*you ask an absurd question, you with whom I usually eat*

Obs. 1. The preposition **cum** (= *together with*) is often, though not invariably, attached to the relative word that it may happen to govern (cp. § 88); thus, **quōcum** or **quīcum, quācum, quibuscum.**

Obs. 2. An adjective, which in Latin qualifies the relative, is in English often transferred to the antecedent; *e.g.* **in tumulō, quem proximum capere potuit, cōpiās instruxit,** *he drew up his forces on the nearest eminence which he could seize.*

174. In Latin the relative is often used adjectivally with a substantive which would be the antecedent in English. In such a case a demonstrative pronoun generally stands as the formal antecedent in Latin.

quae cīvitās calamitāte populum Rōmānum affēcerat, ea poenās exsolvere coacta est	*the state which had brought disaster on the Roman people was forced to pay the penalty*

175. Often, however, the antecedent is not separately expressed, but is contained in the relative:—

Caesar parcit cuicumque [parcere] potest	*Caesar spares whomsoever he can*

176. *What* when it means *that which, i.e.* when it has reference to something definite about which a fact is being related, is translated by **id quod.**

id quod dixistī valdē mē dēlectāvit	*I was very pleased with what you said*

177. **Quī** frequently stands at the beginning of a Latin sentence, where English idiom requires a personal or demonstrative pronoun with or without *and*.

quā rē cognitā, Caesar profi-ciscī contendit	*(and) on learning this, Caesar hastened his departure*

178. It has already been said (§ 125) that Latin often translates a relative clause by a participle, and it is often a matter of indifference which is used. Thus in the first example of § 173 **oppugnāta** could have been substituted for **quae . . . oppugnābātur**. But a relative clause is used rather than a participial phrase when a description rather than an action is in question (cp. the example in § 174), and can be often used where a participial construction would not be admissible.

179. Just as **quī, quae, quod** is the relative corresponding to the demonstrative **is, ea, id**, so **quālis, quantus, quot** correspond to **tālis, tantus, tot**, and are usually translated *as*. The antecedent demonstrative may be omitted, in which case these relatives are translated by *such as, as great as, as many as*.

tantam (tālem) urbem quanta (quālis) Rōma [est] numquam vīdī	*I have never seen so great (such) a city as Rome*
hominem quālis tū [es] saepe videō	*I often see a man such as (or like) you*

Obs. The verb **esse**, like *to be* in English, may be omitted in such sentences.

180. The **relative adverbs** in the second column of § 520 may also be classed as **conjunctions** in so far as they introduce a dependent clause. They all, with the partial exception of **cum** (*when*), which will be treated later (Lesson 24), take the indicative, like the ordinary descriptive relative pronoun.

quōcumque ambulās, ego sequor	*wherever you walk, I follow*
Patavium, unde mīles ille venit, multum distat	*Padua, whence* (or *from which*) *that soldier is coming, is a long way off*

181. Order in complex sentences (*i.e.* those containing a dependent clause). The dependent clause or clauses may stand outside the principal sentence or may be inserted in the principal sentence, but not in such a way as to leave a number of verbs together at the end. Thus the relative clause often precedes its antecedent (§ 174).

This section applies not only to sentences containing relatives, but to all the complex sentences treated in the following Lessons.

READING LESSON 12.

King Tarquin and the Old Woman.

Anus incognita ad Tarquinium Superbum Romanorum regem quondam adiit, novem libros ferens, quos esse dicebat divina oracula; se cupidam esse eos vendendi. Pretium autem nimium atque immensum poposcit. Rex anum, senectute desipere ratus, derisit. Tum illa, face coram eo apposita, tres libros ex novem incendit, et regem talia interrogavit: "Eodemne pretio, rex maxime, reliquos emere cupis?" Sed Tarquinius anum magis deridens dixit iam sine dubio insanire. Haec statim, tribus aliis libris combustis, idem pretium eum placide rogavit. Tandem Tarquinius attentior animo factus est; eam constantiam confidentiamque non neglegi oportere intellexit; et libros tres reliquos mercatus est nihilo minore pretio, quam quod erat petitum pro omnibus. Sed eam mulierem tunc a Tarquinio digressam postea nullo loco visam esse constabat.—*From Aulus Gellius.*

EXERCISE 12.

1. Surely what Cicero says about Pompeius is not true? 2. I wish Gaius were-here; he alone can help me in-my-trouble (*participle*). 3. These citizens who had received many benefits from me

have shown themselves very ungrateful. 4. Not only have they betrayed me to Caesar, but they have also themselves tried to kill me. 5. You will hear the songs of the birds that have built their nests in the tree overhanging my garden. 6. You will be free from those sounds that drive-away sleep, and will find the rest that has been so long denied you. 7. Which cause therefore [of the two] ought to seem [that] of the people? [That] in which all ages and all orders of the state agree together, or that in which the Furies are roused and fly as-it-were [*tamquam*] to the funeral of the state? 8. All men reap what they have sown. 9. The boy ought to have done what he had been ordered to do. 10. We cannot pardon those who have not obeyed us.

11. All the beautiful trees which I have reared with such-great care, have been destroyed by the cold. 12. Was Pompeius killed as he was standing in a ship or not? 13. The man to whom you gave that money is a thief. 14. To him who walks at-night all cows seem black. 15. Whoever is ashamed to fight ought not to speak boldly. 16. The body of the man I killed is no-longer here. 17. There is no one happier than I [and] no one richer. 18. As he said this in that moment his palace was shaken by a dreadful earthquake. 19. The soldiers ran back to the same camp, from which [say, "whence"] they had a little before withdrawn. 20. Do you read or fish or hunt?

LESSON 13.

Irregular verbs continued; interrogative pronouns and adverbs; dependent question.

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

The conjugation of **volō, nōlō, mālō** (§ 501); the declension of **quis** (§ 467); the interrogative pronouns in the third column of § 470, and the interrogative adverbs in the third column of § 520.

VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ.

182. These verbs, like **possum**, are constructed with an infinitive, and the same rule applies to their use in past tenses as to **possum** (§ 167). **Volō** and **nōlō** translate the English *will* and *will not* in the sense of *wish; e.g.* **nōlō venīre**, *I will not come, I refuse to come.*

183. Mālō (= **magis volō**) may be followed by **quam** (*than*) like any other comparative word.

mālō bonus esse quam sapiens	*I would rather be good than wise*

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

184. The interrogative pronoun **quis** (*who? which? what?*) is used substantivally and adjectivally, except that the forms **quī** and **quod** cannot stand by themselves but are generally used as the interrogative adjective in the nom. masculine and nom. and acc. neuter singular. *When* (interrogative) is expressed by **quandō**, not by **cum**.

quis venit?	*who comes?* (substantival)
quī homō venit?	*what man comes?* (adjectival)
quid vidēs?	*what do you see?*
quod templum vidēs?	*what temple do you see?*

Obs. **Quī** and **quod** are never substantival, though **quis** is occasionally adjectival (especially with nouns denoting persons).

Dependent Questions.

185. A **dependent question** is not a question that is then and there asked, but one that is reported or mentioned. The question-clause is in dependence on a principal sentence which may be a statement, a question, or a command.

The term *dependent* or *indirect* question applies only to the dependent clause, not to the whole complex sentence of which the clause forms part.

186. The left-hand column below gives examples of sentences containing dependent questions; the right-hand column gives the same questions in a direct or independent form:—

I know *what he is doing*	what is he doing?
tell me *when they will arrive*	when will they arrive?
he asked me *if I was well*	are you well?
it is impossible to say *whether he is there or no*	is he there or no?

187. It is often impossible to tell by the **form of the dependent clause** whether it is a dependent question or no, as a relative or conditional clause may be of exactly the same form as a dependent question; the point is decided only by the character of the principal sentence; compare the following with the sentences given in § 186:—

I don't approve of *what he is doing*
go to meet them *when they arrive*
I used always to walk, *if I was well*
have you made up your mind to call, *whether he is there or no?*

188. In Latin a dependent question is introduced either (*a*) by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or (*b*) by **-ne**, **num** (*if* or *whether*), or **nonne** (*if* or *whether . . . not*). For examples see § 195.

Obs. Of the first two **num** is the commoner; it does not, however, in a dependent question necessarily expect a negative answer, but is used as an equivalent of **-ne**.

189. In dependent questions in Latin the verb stands in the **subjunctive** mood.

190. In both languages a **past tense in the principal sentence requires a past tense in the dependent clause.** Beyond this, the sense alone determines what tense is to be used in English in each case, but in Latin the choice of a tense of the subjunctive for the dependent clause is narrowed by the following rule as to the sequence of tenses.

191. For the purposes of the rule given below these tenses are divided into two classes: **primary** and **historic** tenses.

PRIMARY.

Indicative and Imperative.	Subjunctive.
Present	Present.
Future.	Perfect.
Perfect (with Present-Perfect meaning).	
Future-Perfect.	

HISTORIC.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Imperfect.	Imperfect.
Perfect (with past meaning).	Pluperfect
Pluperfect.	

Obs. For the distinction between the "present-perfect" and "past" meaning of the perfect see § 45.

RULE.—A primary tense in the principal sentence requires a primary tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause, and a historic tense in the principal sentence requires a historic tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause.

The choice whether the present or perfect subjunctive is used after primary tenses and the imperfect or pluper-

fect subjunctive after historic tenses is determined by the sense, as will be seen from the following examples :—

(A) **Quid Marcus agit?** *What is Marcus doing?* or *What does Marcus do?*

quaerō, *I ask* **quaeram**, *I shall ask* **quaesīvī**, *I have asked*	**quid Marcus agat**, *what Marcus is doing* or *does*
quaerēbam, *I was asking* **quaesīvī**, *I asked* **quaesīveram**, *I had asked*	**quid Marcus ageret**, *what Marcus was doing* or *did*

(B) **Quid Marcus agēbat?** *What was Marcus doing?*
Quid Marcus ēgit? *What did Marcus do?* or *What has Marcus done?*

quaerō, *I ask* **quaeram**, *I shall ask* **quaesīvī**, *I have asked*	**quid Marcus ēgerit**, *what Marcus was doing* or *did* or *has done*
quaerēbam, *I was asking* **quaesīvī**, *I asked* **quaesīveram**, *I had asked*	**quid Marcus ēgisset**, *what Marcus had been doing* or *had done*

The tenses of **sum** used with the future participle conform to the same rule as to sequence :—

(C) **Quid Marcus aget?** *What will Marcus do?*

quaerō, *I ask* **quaeram**, *I shall ask* **quaesīvī**, *I have asked*	**quid Marcus actūrus sit**, *what Marcus will do*
quaerēbam, *I was asking* **quaesīvī**, *I asked* **quaesīveram**, *I had asked*	**quid Marcus actūrus esset**, *what Marcus would do*

192. Utrum (or **ne**) . . . **an** are used in dependent as in direct double questions (cp. § 164).

rogāvit utrum illa (*or* **illane**) **vostra an nostra culpa esset**	*he asked whether that was your fault or ours*

193. Where the latter alternative is the contradictory of the former, **necne** is more usual than **annōn** in dependent questions (cp. § 165).

rogāvit utrum Caesar Nerviōs superāvisset necne	*he asked whether Caesar had conquered the Nervii or not*

194. The interrogative particle **an** is, strictly speaking, used only in the second or subsequent member of a compound question direct or dependent; but **an** is found introducing **apparently** *single* dependent questions after expressions of doubt, such as **haud sciō, nesciō,** *I do not know;* **dubitō,** *I doubt.*

haud sciō an nēmō quam tū sapientior sit	*I am inclined to think that no one is wiser than you*

Obs. It is important to note that in sentences such as the above the **improbable** alternative is **omitted** in Latin, and the **probable** one alone **expressed**; whereas in English, after the phrase *I do not know whether*, it is the improbable alternative that is expressed; hence **haud sciō an hōc vērum sit** must be rendered *I am inclined to think this is true*, or *I don't know whether this is not true.*

195. The four sentences in the left-hand column of § 186 would be translated as follows:—

sciō quid agat
dīc (§ 200) **mihī quandō adventūrī sint**
rogāvit mē num valērem
incertum est utrum illīc sit necne

The first sentence in § 187 would be translated as follows:—
nōn id probō quod agit

Obs. The other three sentences in § 187 would be translated by Latin temporal and conditional clauses (Lessons 21-25).

196. The deliberative subjunctive (§ 150) is sometimes used in a dependent question. The sense will show whether the subjunctive in a dependent question represents an indicative or a deliberative subjunctive in the direct form.

nescīvī quid agerem	*I did not know what I was to do*

READING LESSON 13.

KING TARQUIN AND THE POPPIES.

Sextus Tarquinius, regis filius, urbem Gabios oppugnabat; qui vero apud milites obeundo pericula et labores, pariter praedam munifice largiendo, tanta caritate fuit, quanta non ipse pater Tarquinius. Itaque, confisus copiis ad omnes conatus collectis, e suis uno ad patrem misso rogavit quidnam se facere vellet; deos enim dixit sibi iam Gabios dedisse. Huic nuntio nihil voce responsum est. Rex tamquam deliberans in hortum tacitus ambulavit sequente nuntio filii: ibi summa papaverum capita dicitur baculo decussisse. Interrogando exspectandoque responsum nuntius fessus, re infecta ad urbem oppugnatam reversus est; quae dixisset ipse quaeque vidisset renuntiavit: seu ira, seu odio, seu superbia insita ingenio, nullam eum vocem emisisse. Sexto tamen, quid vellet parens quidque praeciperet tacitis ambagibus, patuit; primores civitatis, criminando alios apud populum, alios sua ipsos invidia opportunos, interemit. Multi palam; ii in quibus minus speciosa criminatio erat futura, clam interfecti.—*Adapted from Livy*, I. 54.

EXERCISE 13.

1. Never let me see you here again. 2. I will force you to learn what you ought to say, and when you ought to be silent. 3. I am inclined to think that his left side was wounded by a sword. 4. Do not ask me whether Pompeius was Caesar's son-in-law or not. 5. Dido asks in-what-kind-of (*qualis*) armour the son of Aurora came, and how big Achilles was. 6. The consul asked whether the Gauls had been overcome by force or by guile. 7. The messenger answered that he did not wish to say. 8. He asked who would guard the

captives while he himself was absent. 9. I know which stag has been pierced by Marcus' arrow. 10. I ordered the slaves to stand near the animal's body, but they did not remain.

11. Whoever has tried to move a ship, knows how difficult it is to begin the course. 12. The riches that I have are-enough for me. 13. It is one thing to live happily, another to live prosperously. 14. All men wish to live with their equals-in-age; for what pleases a young man cannot please an old one. 15. Numa succeeded Romulus [*dat.*]; the former excelled in peace, the latter in war. 16. I did not know whether I should find you here, but I came hoping that I should be able to converse with you. 17. I asked him whether he would believe me if I swore it. He said that I did not understand what an oath was. 18. He says that the ship is already far from the shore, but that he sees clearly the water that is thrown-back from the keel. 19. I pardon you, whoever you are; when I asked you what you were doing you made no reply [say, "you answered nothing"]. 20. What am I to say, Catilina? That you are rejecting your former manner of life and thinking about exile? Would that the immortal gods would give you such a mind!

LESSON 14.

Irregular verbs (continued); verbs compounded with prepositions; indefinite adverbs; consecutive clauses.

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

The conjugation of **ferō** with its compounds (§§ 502-3) and **fīō** (§§ 508-9); the indefinite adverbs in the fourth column of § 520.

Verbs Compounded with Prepositions, etc.

197. From the list of the compounds of **ferō** (§ 503) and from the table of principal parts of verbs it will have been seen that when compounded with verbs some prepositions undergo certain changes for the sake of euphony

198. (i) The final consonant of **ad, ob, sub** is frequently assimilated to the first letter (if a consonant) of the verb; *e.g.* **afferō** (= **ad** + **ferō**), **oppōnō** (= **ob** + **pōnō**), **summoveō** (= **sub** + **moveō**). **Sus-**, *e.g.* in **sus-citō**, represents **subs-**, a form of **sub.**

(ii) **Con-** (the usual form of **cum** in composition) and **in** are assimilated to **l** or **r** when the simple verb begins with either of those letters; *e.g.* **corrumpō** (= **con-** + **rumpō**), **irrumpō** (= **in** + **rumpō**). They are respectively written **com-** and **im-** before **m, b,** or **p**, *e.g.* **impellō**; **con-** stands before most other letters, *e.g.* **conferō, contulī.**

(iii) **Ā, ab** assumes several forms: **ā-, ab-, au-, abs-, as-**; *e.g.* **āmittō, abdō, auferō, abstrahō, asportō.**

(iv) **Ē** is used in composition before consonants only, **ex** is used before consonants and vowels; *e.g.* **ēdō, expellō.** Before **f** the old form **ec-** becomes **ef-**, as in **effundō.**

(v) **Ad, con-**, and **trans** sometimes lose the consonants at the end, as in **aspīrō, coeō, trāiciō.**

199. The reduplicated perfects (cp. § 488) of verbs in the third conjugation generally lose the first syllable in composition. Compare **pellō, pepulī**, with **compellō, compulī.**

200. Compound verbs have the same irregularities as the simple verbs from which they are formed, *e.g.* the second sing. present imperative active of **condūcō** is **condūc** (cp. § 31, note). But compounds of **faciō** that change the **a** to **i** (*e.g.* **afficiō**) are regular in the imperative (*e.g.* **affice**); cp. § 509.

Indefinite Adverbs.

201. After **num** in both direct and indirect questions the indefinite adverbs used for *to some* (*any*) *place*, *some* (*any*) *way* (or *somewhere*), *at some* (*any*) *time*, are not **aliquō**, **aliquā**, **aliquandō**, but **quō**, **quā**, **quandō**.

num quandō elephantum vīdistī?	*have you ever seen an elephant?*

Consecutive Clauses.

202. A **consecutive clause** expresses the **consequence** or result of the action of the principal sentence, and is usually introduced in Latin by **ut** followed (if necessary) by **nōn** or some other negative word. The principal sentence often contains a demonstrative adverb meaning *so*, *e.g.* **adeō**, **ita**, **sīc**, **tam**, or an adjective such as **tot** (indeclinable), *so many*, **tantus**, *so great*, **tālis**, *such*.

The mood of the verb in the consecutive clause in Latin is always the **subjunctive**, and the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 191) is usually observed.

accidit ut nōn illum vidērem	*it so happened that I did not see him*
fierī potest ut nihil dictūrus sit (cp. § 242, ii.)	*it is possible* (lit. *it can be*) *that he will say nothing*
tanta erat operis firmitūdō ut perpaucī intrāre potuissent	*such was the strength of the work that very few had been able to enter*
tantum abest ut hōc agat ut fierī posse neget	*he is so far from doing this that he says it cannot be done*

203. Another common type of consecutive clause is introduced by the relative **quī** (**quem**, etc.): the previous clause usually contains (*a*) a demonstrative adverb, *e.g.* **tam**, etc.; (*b*) a negative word; or, most frequently, (*c*) the demonstrative pronoun **is** (**eum**, etc.), with the meaning of

tālis, *such*. In these cases the relative may often be rendered by *as* or *so that he* (*him*, etc.).

This subjunctive is frequently translated by an English infinitive or by the auxiliaries *can, might, should*, etc.

(*a*) **quis tam praeceps est quī** [= ut is] **hōc neget?**	*who is so rash as to deny this?*
(*b*) **dux nullum captīvum invēnit cui** [= **tālem ut eī**] **parceret**	*the general found no prisoner to whom he could* (or *might*) *be merciful* (or *found no prisoner to spare*)
(*c*) **nōn is sum quī meā potius quam amīcōrum causā hōc faciam**	*I am not the man to do this for my own rather than for my friends' sake*

204. The antecedent is frequently indefinite or unexpressed, the relative **quī** (etc.) then denoting *anyone who* (i.e. *any such as*).

sunt quī dīcant Caesarem mortuum esse	*there are some who say* (or *some say*) *that Caesar is dead*
virgīs caesī sunt quī ad nōmina nōn respondissent	*all such as had not answered to their names were beaten with rods*
dulce est habēre quōcum quidlibet loquāris	*it is pleasant to have someone with whom you can speak on every matter*
quae [*or* **ea quae**] **senēs moneant, iuvenēs nōn libenter audiunt**	*young men do not listen with pleasure to what* [i.e. *the things such as*] *old men advise*
quod sciam	*as far as I know* (lit. *such a thing as I may know*)

Obs. The definite relative pronouns and adverbs **quīcumque, quisquis, ubicumque, quōcumque**, etc., take the *indicative* in classical Latin prose.

quaecumque senēs monent iuvenēs īrātī audiunt	*young men hear angrily whatever old men advise*

205. **Quī** with the consecutive subjunctive is used after **dignus** (*worthy*), **indignus** (*unworthy*), **aptus, idōneus** (*fit*), to translate the English infinitive.

dignus (aptus) est quī imperet	*he is worthy* (*fit*) *to command*

READING LESSON 14.

A Brave Soldier at the Battle of Pharsalus.

Erat Gaius Crastinus veteranus miles in exercitu Caesaris, qui superiore anno apud eum inter primos centuriones fuerat, vir singulari virtute praeditus. Hic signo dato, "Sequimini me," inquit, "milites mei qui fuistis, et vestro imperatori quam consuevistis operam date. Unum hoc proelium superest; quo confecto et ille suam dignitatem et nos nostram libertatem reciperabimus." Simul respiciens Caesarem, "Hodie, imperator," inquit, "aut vivo mihi aut mortuo gratias ages." Quibus dictis, primus ex dextro cornu procucurrit, atque eum electi milites eiusdem centuriae sunt prosecuti. Interfectus est fortissime pugnans, gladio in os adversum coniecto. Neque id fuit falsum quod ille in pugnam proficiscens dixerat. Sic enim Caesar existimabat, eo proelio excellentissimam virtutem Crastini fuisse, optimeque eum de se meritum iudicabat. —*From Caesar, de Bello Civili*, III. 91.

EXERCISE 14.

1. That warfare seems likely-to-bring with it many toils and many dangers. 2. I know what happened yesterday; I do not know what will happen to-morrow. 3. Will Caesar lead his army across the river that flows between his province and Italy, or not? 4. Ask the slave if his master will meet me here to-morrow. 5. Who was it who said that a poet is born, not made? I do not think it is true. 6. Crispinus was frightened by the death of his colleague, started in-the-silence of the following night, and pitched his camp on the nearest mountains he reached [*put into one sentence, with a single main verb, by means of participles*]. 7. As far as I know, he was a young man who thought only of the camp and the rewards of victory. 8. Did you ever hear of the master whom his

slaves obeyed willingly? 9. As far as I know, I have never seen a blue lion. 10. The number of ships was so great that the merchant could not sail out of the harbour into the open [say, "the deep"] sea.

11. The crowd collected there was such as I had never seen before. 12. Whoever (*pl.*) I heard complaining of you, I appeased in whatever way I could. 13. The Romans who had escaped from so great a slaughter fled by various ways into Samnium to the consul Marcellus. 14. He was so foolish as to try to soften Caesar's anger. 15. Some people are always being deceived. 16. An Athenian youth who had listened to Zeno [gen. *Zenonis*] the philosopher was asked by his father what he had learned, and modestly replied that he would show him that by his conduct. 17. The father was grievously offended [say, "bore this grievously"] and beat his son. 18. But he, not at all disturbed, said, "I have learned to suffer a father's anger with patience." 19. We have suffered all things that captured cities suffer, and still do. 20. All the evil-deeds [say, "crimes"] which the most cruel tyrants commit against oppressed citizens, that man has committed against us, our wives and children.

LESSON 15.

Irregular verbs continued; indefinite pronouns and revision of pronouns; syntax of the composite subject.

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

The conjugation of **eō** and its compounds (§§ 504-6); the verbs in § 507; the declension of **quis** (§ 468), **quīdam** (§ 469); the indefinite pronouns in the fourth and fifth columns of § 470.

Eō and its Compounds.

206. **Vēneō**, *I am on sale*, serves as the passive of **vendō**, *I sell*.

Indefinite Pronouns.

207. The indefinite pronoun **quis**, *any* (§ 468), is only used in compounds, except after certain conjunctions, **num**, the interrogative particle, being one.

num quis eum vīdit?	*has anyone seen him?*
nesciō num quis eum vīderit	*I do not know if anyone has seen him*

Note.—**Quis** following **nesciō**, *I know not*, forms a phrase (**nesciō quis**) equivalent to *someone*.

nesciō quis dixit	*someone said*
,, ,, **dixerit**	*I do not know who said it*
nesciō cui hōc dixī	*I said this to someone*
,, ,, ,, **dixerim**	*I do not know to whom I said this*

208. The compound indefinite pronouns (§ 470) may be classified according as they imply (1) *all* (*i.e.* all the individuals of a class taken one by one), (2) *some* (opposed to *none*), (3) *any* (with a negative = *none*), (4) *any* (i.e. *is there any that . . .?*).

(1) Three indefinite pronouns refer to *all* the individuals belonging to a class, taken one by one:—

quisque, quaeque, quidque *or* **quicque** (subst.), **quodque** (adj.), *each*

quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (subst.), **quodlibet** (adj.), *any you please*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs (subst.), **quodvīs** (adj.), *any you will*

Obs. **Libet** is the impersonal verb denoting *it pleases* (§ 94); **vīs** (*thou wilt*) is the 2nd person singular of **volō** (§ 501).

NOTE.—When two persons or things only are in question, **uterque** (utraque, utrumque), **uterlibet, utervīs** (utra-, utrum-**libet**, etc.) are used instead of **quisque, quīlibet, quīvīs.**

quīlibet (or **quīvīs**) **illud facere potest**	*anyone* (i.e. *everyone*) *can do that*
sua uterque facta narrābat	*each of the two was relating his own exploits*

(2) The following indefinite pronouns and adjectives imply *some*:—

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (subst.), **quoddam** (adj.), *a certain one, a certain*

aliquis (no feminine), **aliquid** (subst.), *someone, something* (opposed to *no one, nothing*)

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod (adj.), *some*

quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam *or* **quippiam** (subst.), **quodpiam** (adj.), *someone, something, some*

Galatēam quīdam amābat	*a certain man was in love with Galatea*
mox aderit aliquis	*someone will soon be here*
quaepiam cohors iam ex orbe excesserat	*a cohort had already moved out of the square*

(3) With a negative, and in expressions implying a negative, *any* is rendered by the indefinite adjective **ullus** (declined like **nullus**, § 453), or (especially where a substantival word is required) by the indefinite pronoun

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam *or* **quicquam**, *any, anyone, anything.*

negō quemquam (or **ullum hominem**) **illud facere posse**	*I deny that any man* (or *I say that no man*) *can do that*

(4) To introduce a question beginning *Is there any that . . .? Are there any who . . .?* **num quis** (§ 207) may be used, or the interrogative-indefinite pronoun

ecquis (no feminine), **ecquid** (subst.), *is there anyone that . . .?*

ecquī, ecquae *or* **ecqua, ecquod** (adj.), *is there any . . . that?*

209. The endings **-que, -libet, -vīs, -dam, -piam, -quam** are invariable. The first part of **alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum** (*the one or the other*) is generally invariable, —thus the genitive is **alterutrīus.**

210. It follows from (1) and (3) in § 208 that *any* in a **negative** sentence is generally to be translated by **quisquam** (pron.) or **ullus** (adj.)—i.e. *anyone at all*; in an **affirmative** sentence by **quīlibet** or **quīvīs**—i.e. *anyone you like.* The usage of the interrogative sentence follows that of the negative, and so for **numquis** or **ecquis** may be substituted **quisquamne** (or **ullusne**, etc.) when *any* is emphatic and a negative answer to the question is not definitely expected.

quīlibet (*or* **quīvīs**) **illud facere potest**	*anyone can do that*
nōn putō quemquam (*or* **ullum hominem**) **illud facere posse**	*I do not think anyone* (i.e. *I think no one*) *can do that*
num quis (*or* **ecquis** *or* **quisquamne**) **illud facere potest?**	*can anyone do that?*

Obs. When, however, *any* means *any you like*, it is translated by **quīlibet** or **quīvīs** even in a negative sentence.

nōn putō quemvīs illud facere posse	*I do not think that anyone* (emphatic—in the sense of *everyone*) *can do that*

211. The Latin for *no one* is **nēmō**, acc. **nēminem**, dat. **nēminī.** The genitive is supplied by **nullīus** and the ablative by **nullō** (**nullā**). Thus the second example in § 210 could also stand as **putō nēminem illud facere posse.**

NOTE.—Just as **nec** is used to connect sentences rather than **et nōn** (§ 152), so **neque umquam, ullus**, etc., is used rather than **et numquam, nullus**, etc.

hōc dixī, nec quisquam negāvit	*I said this, and no one denied it*

212. The main uses of **quisque** are (1) with the **reflexive pronoun** or **adjective**, which **quisque** (like **ipse**, § 159) generally follows, and (2) with a **superlative** or **ordinal**, when it is generally translated *all, every*.

sua quisque facta narrābat	*each man was telling his own deeds*
celerrimum quemque equum ēlēgit	*he chose all the swiftest horses* (lit. *each swiftest horse*)
decimus quisque mīles vulnerātus est	*every tenth soldier* (i.e. *one soldier in ten*) *was wounded*

213. **Quīdam** is often used to translate the English indefinite article *a* (when it means *a certain . . .*).

puella quaedam haec mihi narrāvit	*a* (*certain*) *girl told me this*

214. *Some*, when it implies *there are some who . . .*, is (as above, § 204) translated by **sunt quī . . .** (with the subjunctive); when followed by *other*, it is translated by **alius . . . alius** (§ 155); otherwise it is generally translated by **aliquis** or **quispiam**.

mīlitēs aliquōs ē silvā currentēs vīdī	*I have seen some soldiers running out of the wood*
mīlitēs aliquam praedam comparābant	*the soldiers were getting some booty*

SYNTAX OF THE COMPOSITE SUBJECT.

215. Two or more substantives (not in apposition) having the same predicate form what is called a **composite subject**. When the members of a composite subject are of different persons, the verb agrees with the "prior" person, the first person being reckoned prior to the second, and the second to the third. The members of the subject also are generally arranged according to their priority. In such a case the verb is in the plural number.

ego et Marcus valēmus	*Marcus and I are well*
spērō tē et Tulliam valēre	*I hope you and Tullia are well*

READING LESSON 15.

The Fight of the three Roman with the three Alban Brothers.

Forte in duobus tum exercitibus Romano Albanoque erant tres fratres, nec aetate nec viribus dispares; illos Horatios hos Curiatios fuisse satis constat, quos pugnare inter se conventum est. Foedere icto fratres arma capiunt; consederant utrimque pro castris duo exercitus, periculi magis praesentis, quam curae, expertes. Datur signum; infestisque armis iuvenes, magnorum exercituum animos gerentes, concurrunt: nec his nec illis periculum suum; publicum imperium servitiumque obversatur animo, sciuntque futuram esse eam patriae fortunam, quam ipsi fecerint. Pugna deinde inita, duo Romani, super alium alius, vulneratis tribus Albanis, exspirantes corruerunt. Romanus qui supererat forte integer fuit, universis solus nequaquam par, adversus tamen singulos satis ferox. Ergo fugam capessit, ratus eos secuturos. Iam aliquantum spatii ex eo loco ubi pugnatum est aufugerat; et respiciens videt magnis intervallis sequentes: unum haud procul a se abesse. In eum magno impetu rediit, et caeso hoste victor secundam pugnam petebat. Nec longum illud proelium fuit. Romanus, interfecto altero, tertium allocutus est: "Te morti dabo ut Romani semper Albanis imperent." Quibus dictis, hostem, male sustinentem arma, gladio figit; et iacentem spoliat.—*From Livy*, I. 25.

EXERCISE 15.

1. He was a man (*is*) who did nothing to [say, "by which he . . ."] benefit himself rather than the citizens. 2. I rather think he is mad. Tell me what you think about him. 3. Yesterday someone

tried to throw himself down from the roof of the Capitol [use *summus*, § 338]. 4. You ask me what I myself feel about death. I do not see why I should not dare to tell you. 5. I think that your ancestors are still living, and that their life alone can be called happy. 6. It is necessary that those who wish to be feared should fear those same men by whom they will be feared. 7. Our guides having been left behind, we did not know which road was the shorter. 8. We must pass our lives in some definite manner, not in any manner we like. 9. Justice is beneficial to all and never hurts anybody.

10. Nobody is ever hurt by just men. 11. The general never kept-back any soldier's money; but he forced each to buy his own food. 12. Have you ever seen, when horses are yoked-to a chariot, one trying to run one way, and the other another way? 13. Have you ever been accustomed to obey anyone at all? 14. You do not seem to understand at-all, my slaves, what the power of a master is. 15. It happened that my father and I were present when Caesar arrived. 16. Which of the two laws must we obey? 17. Do not ever ask when the laws were made; for it matters nothing. 18. The best way of life [*gerund*] has been found by him who can from himself provide all that tends to happy living. 19. Nothing is so-much the sign of a narrow mind as to love riches. 20. When Caesar was informed that the Helvetians had already led three parts of their forces across that river, he started from his camp with some legions and reached that part of the army which had not-yet crossed the river.

LESSON 16.

Irregular verbs continued; defective verbs; numerals; expressions of space and time.

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

The conjugation of **edō** and **dō** (§§ 510-512); defective verbs (§§ 515-9); numerals in heavy type (§ 456); the declension of **duo** and **trēs** (§ 457).

Defective Verbs.

216. The passive form **coeptus sum**, from **coepī**, *I began* (§ 518), is used with an infinitive passive.

Caesar Alēsiam fossā circumdare coepit	*Caesar began to surround Alesia with a moat*
Alēsia fossā circumdarī coepta est	*Alesia began to be surrounded with a moat*

Numerals.

217. (1) There are three series of numeral **adjectives**:—

(*a*) **Cardinal**, corresponding to the English series *one, two, three*, etc.;

(*b*) **Ordinal**, corresponding to the English series *first, second, third*, etc.;

(*c*) **Distributive**, denoting *one apiece, two apiece, three apiece*, etc.; and also used instead of cardinals in expressions of multiplication, as **bis bīna** (neut. pl.), *twice two*, and (except **singulī**) with substantives plural in form and singular in meaning, as **bīna castra**, *two camps*, **bīnae aedēs**, *two houses* (but **duae aedēs**, *two temples*).

Obs. 1. The plural of **ūnus** is used with such substantives to express *one*; *e.g.* **ūna castra**, *one camp*, **ūnae litterae**, *one letter*.

Obs. 2. *Three camps* is **trīna castra**, not **terna castra**.

(2) There is a series of numeral **adverbs** denoting *once, twice, three times*, etc.

218. In the table of numerals a hyphen divides the base from the variable ending of such of the numerals as are declinable.

219. Of the cardinals **ūnus** is declined like **nullus** (§ 453). For the declension of **duo** and **trēs** see § 457.

The cardinals denoting hundreds from 200 to 900, as well as the **distributives**, are declined like the plural of **bonus**, except that they usually have genitive plural in **-um**, not in **-ōrum** or **-ārum**; *e.g.* **ducentum, dēnum.**

The other cardinal numerals, *viz.* 4 to 20, the tens up to 100, and **mille**, 1000, are indeclinable.

The substantive **mīlia** (n.) is declined in the plural only:—

N.V.A.	**mīlia**
Gen.	**mīlium**
Dat.	**mīlibus**
Abl.	**mīlibus**

Obs. A declinable numeral qualifying **mīlia** must, of course, be in agreement with it, and the substantive dependent on **mīlia** is put in the genitive; *e.g.* **duo mīlia hominum**, 2000 *men.*

220. The **ordinals** are declined like **bonus**, with the exception of **alter**, *second* (*of two*), for which see § 153.

On Compounding Numerals.

221. 21 to 99.—As may be inferred from the table, the smaller number follows the larger without **et** or precedes it with **et**; *e.g.* **vīgintī quinque** or **quinque et vīgintī**, just as in English we say *twenty-five* or *five-and-twenty.*

The two numbers preceding each ten are commonly expressed by **duodē-, undē-** respectively prefixed to it; see 28 and 29 in the table. (**Dē** is a preposition denoting *from.*) Such expressions as **vīgintī octo** and **octo et vīgintī** occur, but are less usual.

101 and upwards.—The larger number, as a rule, precedes the smaller, and **et** *may* be inserted (except in distributives);

e.g. **duo mīlia (et) quingentī (et) quadrāgintā equitēs** or **equitum duo mīlia (et) quingentī (et) quadrāgintā**, 2540 *horsemen*. (Note that the substantive is not put in the genitive if separated from **mīlia** by numerals that do not qualify mīlia.)

Obs. Where **ūnus** is used with other numerals it agrees with the substantive in case and gender, but remains singular in number; *e.g.* **fēminīs vīgintī ūnī** or **ūnī et vīgintī fēminīs**, 21 *women* (dative); **ūnīus et ducentum equitum** or **equitum ducentum ūnīus**, 201 *horsemen* (genitive).

Expressions of Space and Time.

222. **Extent of space** is expressed by the **accusative**.

Caesar mīlia passuum tria ab Helvētiōrum castrīs castra pōnit	*Caesar pitches his camp three miles* (lit. *three thousand paces*) *from that of the Helvetii*
haec mensa trēs pedēs lāta est	*this table is three feet wide*

223. The **time throughout which** an action or state extends is expressed by the accusative.

Tiberius trēs et vīgintī annōs princeps erat	*Tiberius was Emperor for 23 years*
rex annōs octo et sexāgintā nātus est	*the king is 68 years old* (lit. *has been born for 68 years*)

224. The **time when** an action is performed is expressed by the (local) ablative without a preposition.

vēre novō grāmina virescunt	*in early spring the grass becomes green*
hōrā diēī septimā cēnāre soleō	*I am accustomed to dine at the seventh hour of the day* (about one o'clock)
diē insequentī omnēs aderant	*on the following day all were present*

225. The **time within which** an action is performed is also expressed by the (local) ablative.

Brasidās quattuor annīs multās urbēs cēpit	*Brasidas took many cities in four years*

READING LESSON 16.

Horatius and His Sister.

(*Continued from Reading Lesson* 15.)

Quibus factis uterque exercitus inde abductus. Primus Romanorum Horatius ibat, trigemina spolia prae se gerens. Cui soror virgo, quae desponsa uni ex Curiatiis fuerat, obvia ante portam Capenam fuit; cognitoque super humeros fratris paludamento sponsi, quod ipsa confecerat, solvit crines, et flebiliter nomine sponsum mortuum appellat. Movet feroci iuveni animum comploratio sororis in victoria sua tantoque gaudio publico. Stricto itaque gladio, simul verbis increpans, transfigit puellam. "Abi hinc," inquit, "cum immaturo amore ad sponsum. Sic eat, quaecumque Romana lugebit hostem." Atrox visum id facinus patribus* plebique; sed recens meritum facto obstabat; tamen raptus in ius ad regem Tullium. Sed pater Horatii clamabat se filiam iure caesam iudicare, et "Ne, precor," ait, "orbum me ambobus liberis faciatis." Non tulit populus nec patris lacrimas, nec ipsius parem in omni periculo animum; absolveruntque admiratione magis virtutis, quam iure causae.—*From Livy*, I. 26.

EXERCISE 16.

1. Ask that man who he is and where he is going. He says that he walked to-day for eight hours. 2. If (*si*) twice six is twelve, how many is six times two? 3. I showed him what I had brought, but he said that he was not satisfied. 4. Marcus began to read Greek literature when he was eleven years old. 5. Hence (*ita*) it happens that he can speak Greek (*adv.*, § 389) better than you or I.

* Patricians.

6. After the King's death, his wife's sister became queen and reigned twelve years. 7. Do not say that you did not see him; perhaps he will be able to help us. 8. The birds perish when the winter comes, but we, who deserve nothing better than they, have now lived (*present indicative*) for thirty winters in this unpleasant city. 9. On the eighth day there came a great wind, and the mountain was covered with a thick smoke. 10. At last a cloud of ashes rose above the mountain, and the ships that lay at anchor near Neapolis seemed to be thrown out of the water. 11. Three days afterwards the most beautiful town of Pompeii perished.

12. Pliny, who wrote 37 books on natural science (*natura rerum*), died at the age of 56. 13. His sister's son says that he left him 160 most carefully written notebooks. 14. When I tried to help you he forbade me. 15. You ought to have asked them why they had despaired of safety. 16. It was reported that there had been in the enemy's army 40,000 infantry and 6,000 cavalry, and that out of the spoils 82 asses of bronze and one tunic would be given to each of the soldiers. 17. Catilina was found far away from his own men among the corpses of the enemy, still breathing, and keeping the fierceness of mind which he had always possessed when alive. 18. Do not ask why the King does not favour your cause, O citizens; in some way you have displeased him, and he does not pardon easily such as displease him. 19. It seems that the Romans, after besieging the town for three months, are now going to withdraw. What will their general say to them when they return? 20. I am inclined to think that he will order the captain—who is the cause of what has been done—to be killed.

LESSON 17.

Principal parts of verbs; gerund (continued); gerundive; revision of regular verbs.

The following are to be learned with this lesson:—

Principal parts of verbs, §§ 486-7, B; the gerundives of the regular verbs. Revise the regular and deponent verbs, with capiō.

The Nominative of the Gerund.

226. The **nominative gerund** of intransitive verbs is used with the third person singular of some tense of **sum**; the idea thus conveyed is that of *necessity* or *duty*. The gerund may have an indirect object in the same case as that governed by the finite verb from which the gerund is formed; the agent is expressed by a dative or (where the dative would cause ambiguity) by **ā** or **ab** with the ablative.

moriendum est omnibus	*all must die*
pārendum est rēgī	*the king must be obeyed*
pārendum est rēgī ā nōbīs	*the king must be obeyed by us* (or *we must obey the king*)

Obs. The **accusative gerund** of intransitive verbs is similarly used with **esse** in the accusative and infinitive construction; *e.g.* **manifestum est rēgī pārendum esse**, *it is obvious that the king must be obeyed.*

The Gerundive.

227. The **gerundive** is an adjective (declined like **bonus**) formed from **transitive** verbs, including deponents, and denotes that the person or thing is *fit* to be, or must be, the object of the verbal action; *e.g.* **amandus**, *lovable*, **partiendus**, *fit to be divided*, **arandus**, *arable*. The person by whom the action *is to be* performed is expressed by the dative.

rex est honōrandus	*the king must be honoured*
vōta vix numeranda facit	*he makes vows that are hardly to be numbered*
Caesarī omnia erant gerenda	*Caesar had to do everything*

228. It has already been stated (Lesson 6, § 91) that the genitive, dative, and ablative of the gerund complete the declension of the verbal noun and that the gerund may in this capacity have an indirect object of its own. But a direct object is not common after the gerund, *i.e.* the gerund of transitive verbs is seldom used, but in these circumstances its place is taken by a noun qualified by the *gerundive* (or verbal adjective).

Thus instead of the rarer usages

(i) *Gen.*, **Caesar pugnam committendī signum dedit**	*Caesar gave the signal for beginning the battle*
hūc vēnī fīliam exspectandī causā (*or* **grātiā**)	*I came here for the sake of awaiting* (or *to await*) *my daughter*
(ii) *Abl.*, **diem in fābulās narrandō consumpsī**	*I have spent the day in telling stories*

the usual constructions are (with the same meaning)

(i) *Gen.*, **Caesar pugnae committendae signum dedit**
hūc vēnī fīliae exspectandae causā (*or* **grātiā**)

(ii) *Abl.*, **diem in fābulīs narrandīs consumpsī**

Obs. Literally these might be translated, *Caesar gave the sign for the battle* (*which was*) *to be begun; I came here for the sake of my daughter* (*who was*) *to be expected; I spent the day in fables* (*which were*) *to be narrated.*

229. This **gerundive construction** is thus usually substituted for the ablative gerund, and often for a genitive gerund (except in the plural) with a direct object. And it **is the only possible construction** when the English verbal requires to be translated by (i) the accusative after a preposition (**ad**, **in**) or (ii) the dative.

(i) **equitēs ad urbem oppugnandam parātī sunt**	*the cavalry were ready for assaulting the city*
Caesar ē castrīs ad auxilia comparanda excessit	*Caesar left the camp to collect reinforcements*
(ii) **studeō Graecīs litterīs docendīs**	*I devote myself to teaching Greek literature*

Obs. From the above examples it will be seen that the gerundive construction may be used to express **purpose** either (*a*) in the genitive with **causā** or **grātiā**, or (*b*) in the accusative preceded by the preposition **ad**.

READING LESSON 17.

The Difficulties of a Military Commander.

Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum, quod monstrabat quando ad arma concurri oporteret; signum tuba dandum; ab opere revocandi milites; qui longius aggeris petendi causa processerant, arcessendi; acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum: quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas et successus hostium impediebant. His difficultatibus duae res auxiliabantur, scientia atque usus militum; nam superioribus proeliis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret, non minus commode ipsi sibi praescribere, quam ab aliis doceri, poterant.

* Caesar, necessariis rebus imperatis ad cohortandos milites, quam in partem fors obtulit, decucurrit, et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longa oratione cohortatus, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causa profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Tempus fuit tam exiguum hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas scutisque tegimenta detrahenda tempus defuerit.

Instructus est exercitus, quomodo loci natura magis quam rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat; sed neque certa subsidia collocari, neque quid in quaque parte

* Analysis of this sentence (the dependent clause and participial phrases, etc., are put to the right of that on which they depend):—

Caesar,
  necessariis . . . imperatis
    ad cohortandos milites,
  decucurrit
    in quam partem fors obtulit,
  et ad . . . devenit.

opus esset provideri, neque ab uno imperia omnia administrari poterant. Itaque in tanta rerum iniquitate fortunae quoque eventus varii sequebantur.—*From Caesar, de Bello Gallico*, II. 19-22.

EXERCISE 17.

1. The soldiers said that they were ready to begin (*committere*) the battle. 2. He found a means of moving his soldiers' hearts. 3. I told you that I believed nothing that anybody said. 4. The messengers came for the sake of asking for the hostages. 5. I am desirous of seeing the queen. 6. Not unwillingly do we give up some pleasures for the sake of gaining greater ones. 7. We are all influenced by desire of praise, and the best of us is attracted by glory. 8. There was no one to explain what these words meant. Some said one thing, some another; but the true meaning could not be found. 9. The brave general [say, "the general, a very brave man"] received a mortal wound in this battle, and died four days afterwards. 10. He preferred to enjoy freedom as a poor man, than to possess much wealth and be the slave of a tyrant.

11. I am inclined to think that he did not err in thinking this. 12. Do not waste the short time you have for [say, "of"] escaping from the hands of the enemy in fruitless pity (*use verb and adverb*). 13. Gaius Cornelius, hearing these words, did what the Consul had advised him. 14. The tide filled the ships of war [say, "the long ships"] in which Caesar had had his army brought across and which he had drawn up on to the dry-land (*neut. of adj.*). 15. No opportunity of managing the ships or of aiding them was given to our soldiers. 16. You know how slowly an eagle flies when its wings are spread. 17. Is it the act of a wise man to run two miles under the midday sun, and then suddenly to jump into a cold stream? 18. Would that Gaius were here; perhaps he would have shown us how to escape from these dangers. 19. When the signal was given a great shout immediately rose from all sides; the barbarians cried out that they were being surrounded by the enemy, and there was no way of escape. 20. The ambassadors came to him to ask for peace, but Paullus would not grant it.

LESSON 18.

Principal parts of verbs; final clauses; verbs of fearing. Revision of declensions.

Principal parts of verbs (§§ 486-7, B) are to be revised with this lesson, those in thin, as well as those in thick, type. Revise also the first, second, fourth, and fifth declensions.

Final Clauses.

230. A **final clause** is one that expresses the purpose or end (**fīnis**) of the action of the principal sentence; its verb is always in the subjunctive. The chief conjunctions that introduce final clauses are **ut** (*[in order] that*), **nē** (*lest, [in order] that . . . not*). The tense of the subjunctive is in accordance with the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 191).

equitēs mīsit, ut hostēs persequerentur	*he sent horsemen, [in order] that they might pursue the enemy*
abībō, nē Cicerōnem videam	*I shall go away, that I may not see Cicero*
cūrāvī nē tē invenīrem	*I took care that I should not find you*

231. **Ut** with a final subjunctive is very frequently rendered by the English infinitive with *to*; thus the first example may be translated *he sent horsemen to pursue the enemy*. **Nē** is similarly translated *not to* after a few verbs, generally where the subject of both clauses is the same; thus the last example may be translated *I took care not to find you*.

Obs. A final clause is thus often used parenthetically.

nunc, ut alia ōmittam, ad causam redeō	*now (to pass other matters by) I return to my main subject*

232. Negative final clauses are always introduced by **nē**: accordingly *that no one, that no, that never*, etc., correspond to **nē quis** (§ 468), **nē ullus, nē umquam**, etc., and not to **ut nēmō, ut nullus, ut numquam**, etc., which are regular in *consecutive* clauses. Contrast the following:—

sērō vēnī nē quem ibi invenīrem	*I came late in order to find nobody there*
tam sērō vēnī ut nēminem invenīrem	*I came so late that I found nobody*

233. When **nē** introduces a clause dependent on a verb of *fearing*, it is usually rendered in English by *that* more naturally than by *lest*, **ut** in a similar position being rendered by *that . . . not*.

timēbam nē hostēs agrōs nostrōs vastārent	*I feared that the enemy would devastate our lands*
vereor ut (*or* **nē nōn**) **incolumis redeās**	*I fear that you will not return in safety*

Obs. 1. The **present** subjunctive, etc., in Latin is used to translate the English future, etc., since the verb of fearing itself points quite sufficiently to the idea of futurity.

Obs. 2. **Nē nōn** is sometimes used instead of **ut**, as in the last example.

234. The imperative **vidē** (**vidēte**) followed by a final clause with **nē** is an occasional method of expressing deferentially a prohibition in the second person (cp. § 162).

vidē nē abeās	*please do not go away*

235. **Neu** or **nēve** is used for **et nē**, just as **nec** is used for **et nōn** (§ 152).

hūc advēnit ut ipse vidēret, nēve rursus deciperētur	*he came here in order to see for himself and not be again deceived*

READING LESSON 18.

The Roman soldiers who survived the defeat at Cannae ask Marcellus to let them take the field in Sicily.

Neque ignominiae finem nec virtutis praemium petimus: modo experiri animum et virtutem exercere liceat. Laborem et periculum petimus, ut virorum, ut militum officio fungamur. Bellum in Sicilia iam ingenti dimicatione geritur; urbes alias Poenus, alias Romanus expugnat; clamorem pugnantium sonumque armorum segnes audimus. Servorum legionibus consul totiens iam cum hoste signis collatis pugnavit; operae pretium habent, libertatem civitatemque; pro servis ad hoc bellum emptis vobis simus; congredi cum hoste liceat et pugnando quaerere libertatem. Asperrima quaeque poscimus, ut, quod Cannis (§ 366) faciendum fuit, nunc quoque fiat; quidquid enim postea viximus, id omne destinatum ignominiae est.—*From Livy*, XXV. 6.

EXERCISE 18.

1. On the next day he led out his forces to besiege the citadel. 2. I recognised Caesar as he entered the Senate-house. 3. "I am afraid," he said weeping, "that the Romans have fled, and that there is no opportunity of wiping out the disgrace." 4. It is a general's business to teach his lieutenants the art of war. 5. Do not violate the truce, citizens, lest a worse war follow. 6. Let not him who has given money to the poor despise them. 7. Cicero feared that the tribunes might become more powerful, and desired the concord of all the orders that the state might be preserved. 8. The king made for Pella in order to find safety; but he was killed on the road. 9. What does it matter (*Quid rĕfert*) whether your food

pleases you or not? We do not live to eat. 10 The Veneti have built their city on a multitude of [say, "many"] islands which are connected together [say, "among themselves"] by bridges.

11. The Romans adopted the plan of renewing war, and sent an army by night into the territory of the Samnites. 12. The priests used to sprinkle the door-posts of the temples with pure water drawn from a sacred spring, to show that the temple itself was sacred. 13. Some ships are wholly (*adj.*) made of [say, "out of"] oak, in order that they may bear any violence of winds or waves. 14. There were some who thought that Tarquinius had been sent by Cicero into the Senate, in order that Crassus might not be allowed to destroy the republic by defending Catilina. 15. He soon put the enemy to flight, so that none of them remained on the plain [any] longer. 16. They say that a golden bull was set up in that spot, to be a monument of the wonderful event. 17. I am not a man like Cicero; I cannot speak for two hours without my note-books. 18. Sappho is said to have jumped down from a high rock into the sea for-the-sake-of Phaon who had scorned her. 19. I wish that you had never made an alliance with Pompeius. 20. I do not believe that the boy can tell me how many people have passed by; they have all been invited to dinner by Crassus, in order that he may boast of his wealth.

LESSON 19.

Principal parts of verbs; final clauses (continued)—dependent command; pronouns in complex sentences; revision of declensions (continued).

Principal parts of verbs (§ 487, C-F) are to be revised with this lesson. Revise also the third declension.

Dependent Command.

236. A command mentioned or reported forms a dependent final clause, introduced by **ut** or **nē**, having its verb in the subjunctive mood. Such commands are those dependent on all Latin verbs of **commanding, advising,** etc., except **iubeō** (*I command*) and **vetō** (*I forbid*), which take the infinitive (§ 95).

Hannibal equitibus imperāvit ut Rōmānum agmen adorīrentur (*or* **equitēs . . . adorīrī iussit**)	*Hannibal ordered his cavalry to attack the Roman line*
moneō vōs nē tantum scelus impūnītum omittātis	*I warn you not to let so great a crime go unpunished*
statuit ut Marcus ēloquī sinerētur	*he decided that Marcus should be allowed to speak*

Obs. 1. A dependent command is often introduced by an infinitive (*to . . . , not to . . .*) in English.

Obs. 2. The construction in the last example must be distinguished from that of the infinitive with **statuō, dēcernō** (*decree,* etc.), which refers to the action of the subject and does not imply a dependent command; *e.g.* **Marcus statuit ēloquī**, *Marcus decided to speak.* Compare also **persuādeō vōbīs ut hōc faciātis** (*I persuade you to do this*) with **persuādeō vōbīs hōc ita esse** (*I persuade you that this is so*).

237. Sometimes there is no connecting conjunction between the main verb and the subjunctive, which is in

such a case purely jussive (§ 149). Such a construction is not so common as the subjunctive with ut or nē.

Caesar rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat	*Caesar asks him to make an end of speaking*
cavē abeās	*beware of going away* (i.e. *do not go away*)

Obs. This last example is a further way of expressing a prohibition deferentially (cp. § 162).

Pronouns in Simple Dependent Clauses.

238. The question arises as to whether in the dependent clause **sē, suus** are to be used in reference to the subject of the principal sentence or to that of the dependent clause.

(1) **Sē** or **suus** in a dependent question or final clause (whether dependent command or not) usually refers to the subject of the principal sentence.

rogāvit Caesarem cūr sibi parcere nollet	*he asked Caesar why he would not spare him*
ōrāvit Caesarem ut sibi parceret	*he asked Caesar to spare him*

(2) **Sē** or **suus**, in relative and consecutive clauses and in other complex sentences treated in Lessons 20-29, generally refers to the subject of the clause, is (ēius) being used in reference to the subject of the principal sentence. The exceptions to this will be mentioned later.

mīlitēs omnēs quī eōs nōn vītāre possent occīdērunt	*the soldiers killed all who could not avoid them*
adeō puerum terruit ut sē occīderet	*he so frightened the boy that the latter killed himself*

READING LESSON 19.

Capture of Jugurtha by Sulla.

* Postea tempore ac loco constituto, ut in colloquium de pace veniretur, Bocchus nunc Sullam, nunc Iugurthae legatum appellabat, idem ambobus ita pollicebatur, ut illi pariter laeti ac spei bonae pleni essent. Sed nocte ea quae proxima fuit ante diem colloquio decretum, Bocchus dicitur secum ipse multa agitavisse; tamen postremo ut Sulla accersatur imperat, et illo probante Iugurthae insidias tendit. Deinde certior factus Iugurtham haud procul abesse, cum paucis amicis quasi obvius in tumulum quendam procedit qua insidiatores collocabantur. Eo Iugurtha cum multis necessariis suis inermis accedit, ac statim signo dato undique simul ex insidiis invaditur. Ceteri occisi; Iugurtha Sullae vinctus traditur, et ab eo ad Marium deductus est.—*From Sallust, Jugurtha,* CXIII.

EXERCISE 19.

1. The boy ought to have done what he was ordered. 2. Who built the temple which you said had been burnt? 3. It is possible that no one has been able to finish the work. 4. It is easy to hire as many soldiers as you wish. 5. The woods were so deserted that the birds were neither singing nor building their nests. 6. The Senate decreed that Capua should not be destroyed. 7. I do not fear that he will not do his duty; but I am afraid that he may fall ill. 8. Marcellus was persuaded not to hurt the Syracusans.

* Analysis:—

Postea tempore . . . constituto,
ut in colloquium . . . veniretur,
Bocchus nunc Sullam . . . appellabat,
idem . . . pollicebatur,
ut illi . . . essent.

9. What was the reason why you were all forced to abandon the baggage? 10. This man, who has committed these great crimes, now prays you to acquit him.

11. He persuaded me that you would not be in any danger while you were returning to the town. 12. Do you not know that any sailor can guide a ship in a calm sea? 13. He asked me to stand on a table two feet wide. 14. They drew up their lines in such a way that the Carthaginians extended their right wing and the Romans their left on the same hill. 15. He wasted time in trying to fly by means of wooden wings. 16. When he heard this, he urged the ambassadors to remain in the same opinion, and sent them back to the city (*use participles*). 17. Their leaders ordered the centurions to proclaim throughout the whole army that no one should leave his position. 18. When the plunder had been given to the soldiers, Caesar commanded the bridge which he had taken to be fortified. 19. When he had started from Sicily, he wrote to Cotta and asked him to send him some books; Cotta said he did not know which books pleased him. 20. Seats were set apart (*sēmoveō*) for senators, where each might see the games for himself.

LESSON **20.**

Principal parts of verbs; final relative clauses—**quō** *and* **quōminus**; *the uses of* **quīn**; *revision of adjectives.*

Revise principal parts of verbs (§ 488, A-B); also the declension of adjectives.

Final Relative Clauses.

239. The relative pronoun **quī** is often used with the subjunctive in a final clause (cp. the similar use in consecutive clauses, § 203), **quī** here being equivalent in sense to **ut is**, *in order that he*; in this use the relative pronoun is generally the subject of its own clause and its antecedent the object of the principal clause.

Caesar equitātum quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit	*Caesar sent the cavalry to resist the enemy's attack*

240. **Quō**, the instrumental ablative neuter (§ 27) of **quī**, is often used in a final clause in conjunction with a comparative adjective or adverb; it is equivalent to **ut eō**, *in order that by this means.*

adiuvā mē quō id facilius fiat	*help me, that this may the more easily come to pass*

241. After verbs of *hindering* or *preventing* the final clause is introduced by **quōminus** (= **ut eō minus**) or, if the principal sentence is negative or interrogative, by **quīn** (= **quī** + **ne**, *i.e.* **quī nōn**, **quī** being an old instrumental ablative form).

obstitit mihi quōminus abīrem	*he prevented me from going away* (lit. *he stood in the way against me in order that I might thereby the less go away*)
retinēre mē nōn potuit quin abīrem	*he could not prevent me from going away*

Further Uses of Quīn.

242. **Quīn** is also used in consecutive clauses, after a negative or interrogative principal clause, to express an exception.

(i) **Quīn** is rendered by *who . . . not, which . . . not,* being equivalent to **quī** or occasionally **quae** or **quod** (nominative) + **nōn**.

nēmō est quīn ubīvīs quam ībi, ubi est, esse mālit	*there is no one who would not rather be anywhere than where he is*
nihil est quīn intereat	*there is nothing which does not perish*

(ii) **Quīn** is rendered by *but, but that, that . . . not, without* (or *from,* etc.), with a verbal noun in *-ing,* and by *that* after negative or interrogative verbs of **doubting**; it is here equivalent to **quī** (old ablative) + **nōn**.

facere nōn possum quīn ad tē mittam	*I cannot* [*do anything*] *but send to you* (i.e. *I cannot help sending to you*)
fierī nōn potest quīn hōc ita sit (cp. § 202)	*this must needs be so*
nullum tempus praetermīsī quīn tē vīserem	*I let no time pass without visiting you*
quis dubitat quīn Crassus pecūniā corruptus sit?	*who doubts that Crassus has been bribed?*

243. **Quīn** is also used interrogatively with the indicative to express an exhortation; **quīn** = **quī** (*why?*) + **-ne**.

quīn continētis vōcem?	*why do you not hold your tongue?* (i.e. *be silent!*)

READING LESSON 20.

Lars Porsinna's Invasion of Rome.

Iam Tarquinii ad Lartem Porsinnam, Clusinum regem, perfugerant. Ibi, miscendo consilium precesque, nunc orabant ne se ortos ex Etruscis exsules esse pateretur, nunc monebant etiam ne orientem modum pellendi reges in ultum sineret. Nihil dixerunt excelsum, nihil quod supra cetera emineret, in civitatibus fore; praeterea adesse finem regnis, rei inter deos hominesque pulcherrimae. Nihil obstitit quin Porsinna usque ad moenia Romae infesto exercitu veniret. Numquam antea tantus terror senatum invaserat; *neque hostes modo timebant, sed suos ipsi cives, ne Romana plebs, metu perculsa, receptis in urbem regibus, etiam cum servitute pacem acciperet. Multa igitur blandimenta plebi per id tempus ab senatu data, quo melius concordem civitatem teneret. Qua senatorum indulgentia accidit ut regium nomen non summi magis quam infimi horrerent; ac Porsinna primo conatu a moenibus repulsus est.—*From Livy*, II. 9.

EXERCISE 20.

1. Why is he not prevented by shame from speaking? 2. I am inclined to think that Caligula was mad. 3. I wish that anyone rather than Marcus had given it to me. 4. Take heed that this do not seem to have been the last day of our freedom. 5. I cannot doubt

---

*Analysis :—

Neque hostes . . . timebant,
sed . . . cives [timebant],
ne Romana plebs,
metu perculsa,
receptis . . . regibus
etiam . . . acciperet.

that all the sheep have been killed by wolves. 6. We were prevented by a storm from starting before the sixth hour. 7. Is there anyone so foolish as to prefer Rome to Aquinum in the summer? 8. There is hardly any day that Flaccus does not ask me for money. 9. I believe that the Romans never drink wine without mixing it with water. 10. The Senate decreed that no one should be allowed to remain present in the circus without giving up his weapons to the aedile.

11. All men ought to obey the magistrates' commands without asking their reason. 12. He sent forward twenty soldiers that they might choose a more suitable place for a camp. 13. Wherever you walk, you cannot help seeing both very rich and very poor people. 14. Leave this pretence of virtue, and tell me why you have arrived late. 15. It has thundered from a clear sky; it must be that the gods are angry. 16 There is no doubt that the town could have been taken when the citizens were asleep. 17. Caesar did not know the cause of the delay, but sent Balbus to inquire. 18. Why do you not lift up your head and confess that you have lost all the books I have ever given you? 19. The consul has prevented me from remaining in this city, and has forbidden me to sail to Africa. 20. The banks of the river were full of women who had been left by their husbands; they begged that they might be taken into the ships.

LESSON **21.**

Principal parts of verbs; conditional sentences; revision of adjectives and adverbs.

Revise principal parts of verbs (§ 488, c), adverbs, comparison of adjectives and adverbs (Lessons 8, 9).

Conditional Sentences (Present and Past Conditions).

244. A normal **conditional sentence** consists of the **conditional** (or "if") **clause** in subordination to a **principal clause**, the former being known as the **protasis** and the latter as the **apodosis**. The protasis is usually introduced by one of the conjunctions **sī** (*if*), **nisi** (*if . . . not, unless*).

Obs. If (= *whether*) after verbs of *asking* generally introduces a dependent question (§ 185), not a conditional clause.

245. Conditional sentences referring to the **present** or the **past** fall into two divisions, according as the condition that is expressed by the protasis is represented as one (A) that may or may not {be / have been} fulfilled in the {present / past}, (B) that {is / was} not fulfilled in the {present / past}.

246. (A) When the condition is represented as one that **may or may not be fulfilled in the present**, or one that **may or may not have been fulfilled in the past**, the **indicative** is used both in protasis and apodosis, the tense in each being present, imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect according to the sense.

sī rēs ita sē habet, gaudeō	*if this is so, I am glad*
sī rēs ita sē tum habuit, gaudeō	*if this was so then, I am glad*

NOTE.—The **imperative** or **jussive subjunctive** may also be used in the apodosis; *e.g.* **sī vēnērunt, gaudēte (gaudeāmus)**, *if they have come, rejoice (let us rejoice)*.

247. After **sī** or **nisi** as after **num** (§ 207), *someone (anyone), something (anything), some (any), to some (any) place, some (any) way, at some (any) time* are translated by **quis, quid, quī (quod), quō, quā, quandō**; while *if somewhere (anywhere)* and *if from some (any) place* correspond to **sīcubi, sīcunde**.

sī quandō nostrī ā mūrīs discesserant, hostēs succurrēbant	*if at any time our men left the walls, the enemy rushed up*

248. When the action of the verb in the dependent clause is represented as occurring at the **same time** as that of the main verb, the verbs of both clauses are in the **same tense**. But when the time of the dependent clause is **previous** to that of the principal clause, **this priority of time** must be expressed in Latin, though it need not be in English; thus the perfect is antecedent to the present, the pluperfect to the perfect or imperfect, and the future-perfect to the future. This principle of the **antecedence of tenses** is seen in the example in § 247, which in **present time** would become **sī quandō . . . discessērunt, hostēs succurrunt**, *if ever our men leave . . ., the enemy rush up*, in **future time, si quandō . . . discesserint . . ., succurrent**, *if ever our men leave . . ., the enemy will rush up*.

249. (B) When the condition is represented as one that is **not fulfilled** in the **present**, the **imperfect subjunctive** is used in both protasis and apodosis; when it is represented as one that was not fulfilled in the **past**, the imperfect subjunctive or (more commonly) the **pluperfect subjunctive** is used in both protasis and apodosis.

sī Catilīnam timērem, nōn hodiē adessem	*if I feared Catiline (as I do not), I should not be here today*
Brūtus, si mortem timuisset, Caesarem nōn interfēcisset	*if Brutus had feared* (or *had Brutus feared*) *death, he would not have killed Caesar*

READING LESSON 21.

CAMILLUS SPEAKS AGAINST ABANDONING ROME AFTER THE REPULSE OF THE GAULS IN 387 B.C.

Nunc quiescerem et tacerem libenter, nisi haec quoque pro patria dimicatio esset; cui deesse aliis turpe, Camillo etiam nefas est. Quid enim repetiimus? cur obsessam urbem ex hostium manibus eripuimus, si reciperatam ipsi deserimus? Victoribus Gallis, capta tota urbe, arcem tamen dei et homines Romani tenuerunt; victoribus Romanis, reciperata urbe, arx quoque deseretur? Etiam si nobis cum urbe simul positae traditaeque per manus religiones nullae essent, tamen manifestum deorum numen hac tempestate reipublicae adesse arbitrarer. Intuemini enim horum deinceps annorum et secundas res et adversas; invenietis omnia nobis prospere evenisse sequentibus deos, adversa spernentibus. Haec tandem urbis nostrae clades nova, num exorta esset, nisi vocem de caelo emissam de adventu Gallorum sprevissemus? Victi igitur captique tantas deis hominibusque poenas dedimus, ut orbi terrarum documentum nequitiae nostrae praeberemus. Ita nos res adversae monuerunt, ne religionis sacra neglegamus.—*From Livy*, V. 51.

EXERCISE 21.

1. If you had told me what you were going to do, I would have come sooner. 2. If he had been allowed, he would have rushed against the foe. 3. If you knew how much Caesar has helped me, you would not say this. 4. The messengers would have been spared if they had spoken the truth. 5. If he sins, he always repents. 6. I would write more, if I thought that you could read it with pleasure [say, "willingly"]. 7. If he had been only wounded, he would have returned. 8. The wise man must be

happy, if anyone can be happy. 9. I ask you if you think this man should be punished. 10. If ever I preside over a court, somebody asks me not to favour the prisoner. 11. If I have done wrong, there is no reason why you should be so angry with me (*dat.*).

12. If you ask me to write oftener, you ought to write also. 13. Even private men used to be sent to visit the provinces and report what they thought [say, "seemed to them"] about every matter. 14. They would have stormed the town, had it not been surrendered at once. 15. You ought to have asked them why they despaired so soon. 16. When he had read the letter, he informed the soldiers who had been called together that the enemy had crossed the river Euphrates. 17. If I were your leader, you would win the victory; for under my leadership you have already conquered many armies. 18. He prevented them from going with him. 19. If the Romans fight, they cover the bodies of those [they have] killed with a mound. 20. If the enemy had entered the city, they would have been cut down, without any distinction being made whether they were Carthaginians or Spaniards.

LESSON 22.

Conditional sentences continued; revision of principal parts of verbs, adjectives, etc.

Revise principal parts of verbs (§ 488, D-F), irregular comparison of adjectives and adverbs (Lesson 10).

Conditional Sentences (Future Conditions).

250. Conditional sentences **referring to the future** fall into **two divisions** according as the idea of futurity (A) is, (B) is not, prominent.

251. (A) In the first case the **future** or **future-perfect indicative** is used in the **protasis** and the **future indicative** (rarely the future-perfect) in the **apodosis.** Whether the future or future-perfect is used in the protasis depends on the rule for the **antecedence of tenses** (§ 248); as the action of the verb in the *if*-clause generally precedes in time that of the verb in the principal clause, the future-perfect is more common than the future in the protasis; it is translated by the English present or present-perfect.

sī crās pluet, nōn abībō	*if it rains to-morrow, I shall not go away*
sī librōs ad mē mīseris, valdē gaudēbō	*if you send me the books, I shall be very glad*
pergrātum mihi fēceris, sī dē senectūte disputāveris	*you will do me a great pleasure, if you discuss old age*

Note.—The imperative may also be used in the apodosis: **sī volētis, ad Colossēum īte,** *go to the Colosseum if you wish.*

252. (B) **If the idea of futurity is not prominent, the present subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis.**

sī crās pluat, nōn abeam	*if it were to rain to-morrow, I should not go away*

sī librōs ad mē mittās, valdē gaudeam	*if you were to send me the books, I should be very glad*

Obs. Care must be taken to distinguish this use of the present subjunctive from that of the imperfect subjunctive in unfulfilled conditions (§ 249). The meaning of the English, which is often ambiguous, must be considered. Thus if *if it rained, I should stay* implies that it might or might not rain (in the future), it is translated by **sī pluat, maneam**; if it implies that it does not rain (in the present), by **sī plueret, manērem.**

253. Alternative conditional clauses of whatever form are introduced by **sīve . . . sīve** or **seu . . . seu**: these conjunctions can also link such alternatives when expressed by single words or phrases.

seu pauperēs sunt sīve divitēs, omnēs pecūniam solvunt	*they all pay, whether they are poor or rich*

Obs. This use must be distinguished from **utrum . . . an** in a double dependent question, *e.g.* **rogat utrum pauperēs sint an divitēs,** *he asks whether they are poor or rich.*

READING LESSON 22.

ALEXANDER THE GREAT, ON THE BORDERS OF INDIA, TRIES TO ENCOURAGE HIS SOLDIERS TO PROCEED FURTHER.

"Non ignoro, milites, multa quae terrere vos possent ab incolis Indiae per hos dies esse iactata. Sed nos fabulae non deterrere poterunt quin progrediamur, si animos mihi plenos alacritatis ac fiduciae adhibebitis. Non in limine operum laborumque nostrorum, sed in exitu stamus. Pervenimus ad solis ortum et Oceanum; inde victores perdomito fine terrarum revertemur in patriam. Divites Indi atque idem inermes; si igitur praemia ita sunt maiora quam pericula, non tam ad gloriam vos duco quam ad praedam. Oro, milites, ne humanarum rerum terminos adeuntem comitem vestrum, ne dicam regem, deseratis. Si hoc precibus meis dederitis, tandem obstinatum silentium

rumpite." Quibus auditis illi tamen in terram demissis capitibus tacere perseveraverunt. "In solitudine," exclamat rex, "mihi videor esse desertus; destitutus sum, hostibus deditus. Sed solus quoque ire perseverabo. Redite ad Macedoniam; redite deserto rege gaudentes." Stabant tamen adhuc milites oribus in terram defixis lacrimantes: rex tandem, victus a militibus, redire constituit.—*From Curtius*, IX. 2.

EXERCISE 22.

1. The boy will be beaten, if the master sees him in the garden. 2. If you hold the fox in your hands, it will bite you. 3. If I had met him sooner, I should have told him whether his plan was possible. 4. I will tell you what will happen, if you spare that most worthless Greek, who has threatened your life [death to you]. 5. This is really the question, which of the two prepared an ambush for the other [say, "which"]. 6. If you wage war against the Romans, your city will be destroyed. 7. Whether Catilina is killed or escapes, the republic will have been freed from danger. 8. If the doors of Janus' temple are opened, I fear that they will not be shut again while we live. 9. The Romans used to sprinkle the ground with wine, in order that their banquets might be more acceptable to the gods.

10. If you join battle in the morning, our men will be ready to fight; if at night, the enemy will be weary. 11. Caesar would refuse to fight, if he knew how many the enemy were. 12. Take care to keep in health at the beginning of spring. 13. If I ever saw him, he threatened that he would prevent them from going away. 14. There is no one who does not know that he must obey the commands of a magistrate. 15. Ask the slave if his master will meet me to-morrow. 16. If he does not finish the work to-day, I shall say that I owe him nothing. 17. If any snakes were lying-hid in the grass, I should not be walking with you here. 18. She begged me to reveal to her who had struck her son. 19. If you were to see anyone fall down while he was drinking wine, would you think that some enemy had given him poison? 20. If anyone were to tell me that Jugurtha was killed justly, I should reply that he did not understand what a great power Sulla had.

LESSON 23.

Conditional sentences continued; revision of principal parts of verbs and of irregular verbs.

Revise principal parts of verbs (§§ 489, 490), and §§ 499-501.

Conditional Sentences (*continued*).

254. Beside the normal forms of conditional sentences treated in Lessons 21 and 22, **mixed conditional sentences** are sometimes found, in which the protasis is taken from one form and the apodosis from another, according to the sense required. **This is especially common** (*a*) **in unfulfilled conditions**, the protasis having the pluperfect, and the apodosis the imperfect, subjunctive, (*b*) **in future conditions**, when a 2nd sing. pres. subj. is found in the protasis with a *general* meaning (often corresponding to the indefinite *one*), and a pres. indic. in the apodosis.

sī moderātius vixissem, fēlīcior essem	*if I had lived more temperately, I should be happier (now)*
vīrēs dēficiunt, nisi exerceās	*your strength leaves you, unless you exercise it*

255. The verb **sum** with a gerund or verbal adjective and any verb implying *duty, possibility,* etc. (e.g. **dēbeō, possum, decet**), are regularly used in a past tense of the **indicative** in the apodosis of unfulfilled conditions.

nisi Galēnus affuisset, nōn sānārī potuī	*I could not have been cured, if Galen had not been there*
quod sī fēcisset, interficiendus erat (*or* interficī oportuit)	*if he had done it, he ought to have been put to death*

256. A conditional sentence is often found **without any expressed protasis**; the mood of the verb in such sentences is subjunctive (**potential subjunctive**). The present and perfect are used of something that may be realised, the imperfect of something that may not.

velim adveniat	*I should like him to come here*
vellem adesset	*I could wish he were here*
quaerat quispiam cūr gaudeās	*a man might ask why you are pleased*

Obs. 1. In certain phrases such as **longa est fābula**, *it would be a long story*, **satius** (*or* **melius**) **est**, *it might be better*, the English verb with a potential auxiliary corresponds to the Latin indicative.

Obs. 2. In the first two examples above, the verbs **adveniat, adesset** are subjunctives of wish (§ 161) in "semi-dependence" on **velim, vellem.**

257. Clauses apparently conditional are found in dependence on a principal sentence which is not the apodosis, when the conjunction **sī** may be rendered *to see if*, or *in case*, the present subjunctive being used in primary and the imperfect in historic sequence.

flūmen cōpiās trāiēcit, sī forte inopīnātō hostēs adorīrī posset	*he threw his forces across the river to see if perchance he could attack the enemy un-*

258. **Nisi** in dependence on negative words and clauses has the meaning of *except, only.*

amīcitia nisi in bonīs nōn esse potest	*friendship cannot exist except among the good*

READING LESSON 23.

MURDER OF TARQUINIUS PRISCUS: ACCESSION OF SERVIUS TULLIUS.

* Ex pastoribus duo ferocissimi delecti ad facinus, cum agrestibus telis, quibus consueti essent uterque, in vestibulum regiae specie rixae irruunt: inde, clamore eorum in regiam perveniente, vocati ad regem pergunt. Primo magna voce simul loqui coeperunt; sed coerciti ab lictore tandem desistunt; unus rem orditur. In quem avertenti se regi alter elatam securim in caput deiecit: relictoque in vulnere telo, ambo e regia se eiciunt.

Clamor inde concursusque populi, mirantium quid accidisset. Tanaquil regina inter tumultum claudi regiam iussit; eas res quibus vulnus curaretur comparavit; simul, si destituat spes, alia praesidia molitur. Servio propere accito, "Tuum est," inquit, "Servi, si vir es, regnum. Erige te, deosque duces sequere; qui sis, non unde natus sis, reputa." Natus enim erat Servius in servili loco. Persuasit populo Tanaquil, regem mox sanatum iri, regnum interea Servio permitti iussisse. Itaque, mortuo iam rege, morte tamen primo celata deinde palam facta, Servius, praesidio firmo munitus, voluntate Patrum regnavit.—*From Livy*, I. 40.

---

*Analysis:—

Ex pastoribus duo ferocissimi,
delecti ad facinus,
cum . . . telis,
quibus consueti essent uterque,
in vestibulum . . . irruunt.

EXERCISE 23.

1. Had you been in Sicily, you could have saved your friend. 2. If he has actually been killed in-front-of Pompeius' statue, I shall depart to-morrow. 3. Whether these things are true or false, nothing will prevent my seeking Clodius to-night. 4. An orator cannot be eloquent, except when a multitude is listening to him. 5. I had no doubt that Labienus betrayed Caesar. 6. You would have thought Pyrrhus had been conquered. 7. If it rained yesterday, it will snow to-morrow. 8. What is piety but goodwill towards one's parents? 9. A man who utters such words as Clodius [did] could commit any crime. 10. I shall go away, to see if I can live anywhere quietly. 11. If I had not with my own eyes seen Roscius raising his sword, I should have had to pay the penalty.

12. Caligula is said to have wished that the Roman people had only one neck, that he might cut it. 13. If you take away friendship, how will any house or city be able to stand? 14. A man such as you ought never to have been sent to govern a state. 15. We should have repaired all the ships, if you had let me bring them into harbour. 16. If you believe that I have cheated you, it would be better for me to give you back the money. 17. I could wish that the Gauls had not been driven out of Italy. 18. Whether he has done this of his own accord or at the instigation of others [abl. abs.], he will be condemned. 19. There was no one in the house but an old-woman. 20. Do not think I write longer letters to Atticus than to you, unless he sends to me a long letter before.

LESSON **24.**

Temporal clauses; revision of principal parts of irregular verbs (continued).

Revise principal parts of verbs (§§ 491-7), **ferō** and compounds (§§ 502, 503).

Temporal Clauses with Cum.

259. In **temporal clauses which merely define the time of the action** described in the principal clause the verb is **indicative**. After **cum** (*when*) this most frequently occurs (*a*) when the main verb is **future**, in which case **cum** (like **sī**, § 251) takes the future or future-perfect indicative; (*b*) when the temporal clause expresses **frequency** or **repetition**, *i.e.* when **cum** means *whenever*. In either case the tense of the temporal clause is fixed by the rule for the antecedence of tenses (§ 248).

(*a*) **cum vēneris, dē hīs rēbus loquar**	*when you come, I will talk about this*
cum mēcum ambulābis, dē hīs rēbus loquar	*when you are walking with me, I will talk about this*
(*b*) **cum īrasceris, abīre dēbēs**	*whenever you are growing angry, you ought to go away*
cum dē nāve exiī, grātiās deīs agō	*whenever I have left* (or *leave*) *a ship, I thank the gods*

260. **Cum** is used with a past tense of the indicative when the temporal clause merely dates the action of the principal clause without implying any connection between the two events.

cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principēs Aeduī erant	*at the time when Caesar came to Gaul, the Aedui were the leading tribe*

261. But generally **cum** takes the **subjunctive** in temporal clauses referring to past time, as there was felt to be

a more intimate relation between the clauses than the merely temporal one, the events forming part of a connected series.

The tenses follow the rule for the antecedence of tenses, *i.e.* if the two events are spoken of as having occurred at the same time, **cum** is followed by the **imperfect subjunctive**; if the event of the temporal clause is represented as finished before the event of the principal clause began, **cum** with the **pluperfect subjunctive** is used. In English the simple past is often found in both cases.

cum mīlitēs scūta tollerent, ab arce clāmātum est	*when the soldiers raised their shields, there was a shout from the citadel*
Caesar, cum in Galliam vēnisset, Aeduōs esse principēs certior factus est	*when Caesar came* (or *had come*) *to Gaul, he was informed that the Aedui were the leading tribe*
quī cum locūtus esset, omnēs tacuērunt	*when he had spoken, all were silent*

Obs. 1. When the subject of the two clauses is the same, the substantive denoting it is usually placed in the principal clause in Latin, as in the second example, and not, as in English, in the subordinate clause.

Obs. 2. It has been mentioned (§§ 126, 137) that a temporal clause in English may correspond to an ablative absolute or other participial construction in Latin; thus for **cum . . . tollerent** in the first sentence we might have had **mīlitibus scūta tollentibus.** Conversely a temporal clause in Latin may sometimes correspond to a participle in English; thus the second sentence might be translated *Caesar, having come to Gaul, was informed . . .*

Obs. 3. The connective **quī** (§ 177) is very frequent before **cum.**

262. Sometimes, as in English, an inversion of the logical order takes place, what would logically be the principal sentence being made dependent on **cum.** In such a case the verb of the temporal clause is always **indicative.**

abībat ē cūriā, cum subitō ā tergō percussus est	*he was going out of the Senate-house, when he was suddenly struck from behind*

READING LESSON 24.

A GAULISH ATTACK ON THE ROMAN CITADEL IS REPELLED.

*Galli, per aliquot dies in tecta modo urbis nequicquam bello gesto, cum, inter incendia ac ruinas captae urbis, nihil superesse praeter armatos hostes viderent, experiri ultima et impetum facere in arcem statuunt. Prima luce, signo dato, multitudo omnis in foro instruitur: inde clamore sublato subeunt. Adversus quos Romani cum nihil temere nec trepide facerent, ad omnes aditus stationibus firmatis, ubi signa ferri videbant, ibi robore virorum opposito scandere hostem sinunt. Deinde ex loco superiore impetu facto, strage ac ruina fudere Gallos. Omissa itaque spe per vim atque arma subeundi, obsidionem parant: cuius Romani ad id tempus immemores, frumentum, quod in urbe fuerat, incendiis urbis absumpserant.—*From Livy*, V. 43.

EXERCISE 24.

1. When Caesar had started for [say, "to"] his province, someone said that the Romans could now live without fear. 2. When I asked for bread, you gave me a stone. 3. When you have entered the gardens, you will admire the statue of Lucullus that is set up there. 4. When you were poor, you could do nothing for (*pro*, with *abl.*) your country; now that you are rich, you will do nothing.

---

* Analysis:—

Galli,
per . . . gesto,
cum . . . viderent,
experiri . . . statuunt.

5. Whenever Cato made an oration in the Senate, he used to cry out that Carthage must be destroyed. 6. When they heard this, the people by shouting prevented Varius from accusing Marcus Scaurus. 7. When Socrates was asked if he did not think Archelaus happy, he replied, "I do not know, for I never spoke with him." 8. When an old man tries to imitate a youth, I always laugh. 9. The position was abandoned when the Parthians had shot all their arrows. 10. Even if he promises to help you, you will have to lay the plans yourself.

11. When I was still on the road, the citizens were preparing to receive me. 12. Whenever he breaks something, he thinks the gods are angry. 13. When I see the king, ought I to salute him? 14. He was preparing to surround the city with a wall, when the Romans unexpectedly treated for peace. 15. When will you finish the work which you have undertaken? 16. When the Romans entered the camp, they burned everything they found there. 17. When Marius approached the city, all the Senators went out to meet him. 18. Sulla, when still dictator, laid down his power. 19. Marcus asked me when I would visit him again. 20. Whenever I visit Marcus, I always beat his slaves.

LESSON 25.

Temporal clauses (continued); revision of principal parts and irregular verbs (continued).

Revise principal parts (§ 498, **abnuō** to **canō**), **eō**, **fīō**, **edō** (§§ 504-511), and defective verbs (§§ 515-9).

Temporal Clauses (*continued*).

263. After the temporal conjunctions **ut**, **ubi** (*when*), **quandōque**, **quandōcumque** (*whenever*), **quotiens** (*as often as*), **simul āc** (*as soon as ever*), **postquam** (*after*), the **indicative** is used, the clauses introduced by these conjunctions being purely temporal. **Ut** and **ubi** are often used with **prīmum** to mean *as soon as*, and are, as is **postquam**, subject to the same rules as the purely temporal **cum** (§§ 259, 260), except that the **perfect** is used rather than the pluperfect after these conjunctions, even when the action of their verb refers to a time prior to that of the main verb. This perfect is often translated by the English past-perfect.

Quandōque, **quandōcumque**, and **quotiens** follow the usage of **cum** in the sense of *whenever* (§ 259).

ut (*or* **ubi**) **prīmum eum vīdī, intellexī eum mihi parsūrum esse**	*as soon as I saw* (or *had seen*) *him, I knew that he would spare me*
quandōcumque fulgurat, simul rēvērā tonat	*whenever it lightens, it really thunders at the same time*
quotiens cecidit, resurgit	*as often as he falls* (§ 248), *he gets up again*
postquam vēnit, manēre nōn potuī	*after he came* (or *had come*), *I could not remain*

Note.—The pluperfect may be used after **postquam** if the time *after which* something happens is specified.

Hannibal, undecimō annō postquam in Ītaliam vēnerat, expulsus est	*Hannibal was driven out in the eleventh year after he had come into Italy*

264. **Dum** meaning *while* in the sense of *during the time that, i.e.* when the action of its verb occupies a longer time than that of the principal verb, takes the **present indicative** (§ 416) in Latin, whatever the tense of the principal verb.

dum in hortō ambulat, quindecim pōma carpsit	*while he was walking in the garden, he plucked fifteen apples*

265. **Dum, dōnec,** meaning *while* in the sense of *as long as, i.e.* when the action of the verb in the temporal clause occupies the same time as that of the principal verb, take the **indicative**, the tense being determined by the sense required.

dum (*or* dōnec) loquēbar, omnēs tacēbant	*while I spoke, all were silent*

READING LESSON 25.

OVID DESCRIBES A STORM WHICH OVERTOOK HIM ON HIS WAY TO CORINTH.

Me miserum,* quanti montes volvuntur aquarum!
Iam iam tacturos sidera summa putes.
Quantae diducto subsidunt aequore valles!
Iam iam tacturas Tartara nigra putes.
Quocumque † aspicio, nihil est nisi pontus et aer,
Fluctibus hic tumidus, nubibus ille minax.
Inter utrumque fremunt immani turbine venti,
Nescit, cui domino pareat, unda maris.
Rector in incerto est, nec quid fugiatve petatve ‡
Invenit. Ambiguis ars stupet ipsa malis.

* § 315. † § 283. ‡ -ve, *or.*

Scilicet occidimus, nec spes est ulla salutis,
Dumque loquor, vultus obruit unda meos.
Opprimet hanc animam fluctus, frustraque precanti
Ore necaturas accipiemus aquas.

Ovid, Tristia, I. 2. 19-26, 31-36.

EXERCISE 25.

1. Oh that I may see the day when I may thank you for your kindness. 2. After they had received their arms, they rushed in confusion (use participle) into the battle. 3. When the consuls came to the lake, they saw the enemy opposite. 4. Whenever something had to be done bravely, Caesar always chose out Crastinus. 5. We shall not be able to follow the consul, while the moon is still shining. 6. As often as Fabius was informed that Hannibal's army was at hand, he ordered his soldiers to retreat. 7. While it was raining, I remained in the temple; but when I saw the sun, I went out into the street. 8. After Scipio heard that the enemy had moved from their camp, he knew that he was surrounded. 9. As soon as the opportunity presented itself, the quaestor abandoned the consul. 10. No one will be so foolish as not to see [say, "that he does not see"] that a conspiracy has been formed.

11. While these things were being done in Asia, it happened that the ambassadors were dining with Flamininus. 12. Whichever way Appius went, he cleared a path with his sword until he reached the door of Verginius' house. 13. When they had answered so wisely, the king presented them all with gifts and sent them away. 14. What will Marcus do, when these things are reported to him? 15. There are some people whom one does not like to meet often. 16. He wanted to be a soldier, but whenever he heard the trumpet he was afraid. 17. I will burn the town, if you (*pl.*) will not accept my terms. 18. He was able to paint while the rest were talking. 19. Leave the city while there is still an opportunity for [say, "of"] going away. 20. As soon as the Latins saw that the pestilence was increasing, they departed, each to his own city.

LESSON **26.**

Temporal clauses (continued); revision of principal parts and numerals.

Revise principal parts (§ 498, **capessō** to **exuō**); numerals.

Temporal Clauses (*continued*).

266. The **indicative** is used after **dum, dōnec,** and **quoad** when they mean *until*, if the relation between the principal sentence and the clause is merely temporal. The tense is determined by the sense required.

pugnāvērunt dum (*or* **dōnec**) **Antōnius interfectus est**	*they fought until Antonius was* (*had been*) *killed*

267. If the action expressed by the temporal clause with *until* is **purposely awaited**, the verb of the clause is **subjunctive**; **dum** (very rarely **dōnec** in this use) may then often be rendered *in order that meanwhile*. The tense is determined by the rule for the sequence of tenses.

exspectāvērunt dum Antōnius interficerētur	*they waited until Antonius should be killed*
cum mīlitibus collocūtus est, dum rex aufugeret	*he spoke with the soldiers, in order that the king might meanwhile escape*

268. The **subjunctive** is used with **dum, dummodo,** and **modo**, in the sense of *provided that, if only*, the negative being in this case **nē**.

veniat nōbīscum, dum cibum sibi conferat (nē conferat)	*let him come with us, provided that he brings* (*does not bring*) *his own food*

269. The verb in a clause introduced by **antequam** or **priusquam** (*before*) is **indicative** when mere sequence of events is denoted. Like **postquam** (§ 263) these con-

junctions do not take the pluperfect, and the frequent English past-perfect thus corresponds to the Latin perfect.

quartō ante diē quam hūc vēnī, mortuus est	*he died three days before I came here*
cui priusquam dē cēterīs rēbus respondeō, dē amīcitiā pauca dīcam	*before answering him on the other points, I will say something about friendship*

270. The verb in a clause introduced by **antequam** or **priusquam** is **subjunctive** if the action expressed by the clause is **purposely anticipated** or (when the principal sentence is negative) **purposely awaited.** The tense of the verb is determined by the rule for the sequence of tenses.

Marcius prius irrūpit quam portae clauderentur	*Marcius rushed in before the gates could be shut*
Germānī antequam cēnāverint nōlunt pugnāre	*the Germans refuse to fight before they have dined*

Obs. The component parts of **priusquam** and **antequam** may be separated.

READING LESSON 26.

A Treacherous Surprise.

Hostes tempus atque occasionem fraudis ac doli quaerebant. * Interiectisque aliquot diebus, nostris languentibus atque animo remissis, cum alius discessisset, alius ex diutino labore in ipsis operibus quieti se dedisset, a portis erumpunt; exspectant dum ventus secundus sit, ignemque operibus inferunt. Hunc sic distulit ventus, ut uno tempore agger et turris flammam conciperent; quae omnia prius sunt consumpta, quam quomodo accidisset animadverti potuit. Nostri, repentina fortuna permoti, arma quae

* Analysis :—

Interiectisque . . . diebus,
nostris languentibus . . . remissis,
cum alius . . . dedisset,
a portis erumpunt.

possent arripuerunt. Clamorem tollunt, dum alii ex castris se incitant. Fit in hostes impetus; sed illi e muro perfugerunt priusquam sagittis ac telis attingere possemus; nam ab imperatore prohibiti eramus quominus procul a castris excederemus.—*From Caesar, de Bello Civili*, II. 14.

EXERCISE 26.

1. While Marius was in the prison, a slave was sent to kill him. 2. He would not go away before I promised to give him three thousand denarii. 3. If you wait until I come, I will explain the matter to you. 4. The soldiers advanced four miles into the wood before the night came on. 5. I determined to remain in my villa until Clodius should depart from Italy. 6. Let them lie hid, until the state is free from this danger. 7. It is difficult to live nobly, while one has not enough to eat. 8. We are ready to surrender, provided that our wives and children are not harmed. 9. Caesar returned from Spain when the elections for the consulship (§ 354) were about to take place. 10. If you see Brutus, tell him not to wait for me to-morrow. 11. I will pay the money to Lucius as soon as I receive it. 12. I do not know whether the town can be taken or not.

13. I will endeavour to return before war breaks out. 14. Sertorius was rising from the table, when Perpenna struck him with his sword. 15. If you have seen Marcus anywhere, I wish you would send him to me. 16. I wanted Antonius to go away before I struck Caesar. 17. I can pardon everything, if only you do not deceive me. 18. "Come to the light," he said, "that I may see what you have brought." 19. I wish I had perished before I had seen the city burned by the enemy and the temples plundered! 20. He only gave me back my book after I had demanded it four times.

LESSON 27.

Concessive clauses; revision of principal parts and personal pronouns.

Revise principal parts (§ 498, **facessō** to **indulgeō**), the declension of **ego, nōs, tū, vōs, sē.**

Concessive Clauses.

271. Concessive clauses are those introduced by *although, even if,* etc. The verb of a clause introduced by the following conjunctions, meaning *although,* is in the **subjunctive: quamvīs, licet, cum, ut.** The principal clause is often introduced by **tamen** (*yet*).

quamvīs (licet, cum, ut) eum domō exīre vetuissem, (tamen) mihi obviam vēnit	*although I had forbidden him to leave the house, he came to meet me*
ut dēsint vīrēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās	*though strength be lacking, (yet) willingness is praiseworthy*

Note 1.—After **ut,** meaning *although,* **tamen** almost invariably introduces the principal clause, to avoid confusion with the final and consecutive uses of **ut.**

Note 2.—**Quamvīs** is occasionally used, as is *although* in English, without a verb; *e.g.* **haec, quamvīs gravia, ferenda sunt,** *these things, though hard, must be endured.*

272. Quamvīs really means *however, as* (*great,* etc., *as*) *you please.* Hence it can be used (i) as an adverb of degree with adjectives and adverbs, (ii) to translate *however,* etc., introducing a concessive clause.

(i) **mīlitēs quamvīs multōs in meam domum excipere possum**	*I can receive as many soldiers as you please into my house*
(ii) **quamvīs audax sīs, superāberis**	*however bold you may be, you will be conquered* (or *be as bold as you like, yet . . .*)

273. The verb of a clause introduced by the following conjunctions is in the **indicative**:—**quamquam** (*although*), **tametsī** (*although, notwithstanding that*).

nōn appropinquābat, quamquam blandā vōce vocābam	*he did not approach, although I called in a wheedling voice*
tametsī fūr es, molestus nōn erō	*notwithstanding that you are a thief, I will not be hard on you*

NOTE.—**Quamquam** is often used as an adverb of transition (*and yet*) at the beginning of a principal sentence; *e.g.* **quamquam nōn dē hāc rē loquī dēbeō**, *and yet I ought not to speak about this.*

274. **Etsī** and **etiamsī** (*although, even if*) are used (1) with the indicative when what is conceded is regarded as a **fact**, (2) with the subjunctive when something is conceded merely **for the sake of argument.**

etsī tibi succenseō, nulla est causa cūr mentiāris	*even if I am angry with you, there is no reason why you should tell a lie*
Pompeius, etsī nōn occīsus esset, potestātem nōn reciperāvisset	*even if Pompey had not been killed, he would not have regained his power*

275. **Quī** (**quae, quod**, etc.) is sometimes used with the **subjunctive** in a clause implying concession, *i.e.* when **quī** is equivalent to **quamvīs is**, etc.

Caesar, quī nihil prōvīdisset, tamen nōn despērāvit	*although Caesar had made no preparations, he did not despair*

READING LESSON 27.

CARACTACUS, KING OF A BRITISH TRIBE, IS BROUGHT A PRISONER TO ROME.

Clara ea victoria fuit, capta uxore et filia Caractaci; fratres quoque in deditionem accepti. Ipse cum fidem reginae Cartismanduae petivisset, vinctus ac victoribus traditus est, nono post anno quam bellum in Britannia

coeptum. Romanis non ignotum Caractaci nomen erat; et Claudius Caesar, dum suum decus extollit, addidit gloriam victo. Vocatus est populus qui insigne spectaculum videret. Steterunt in armis Romani milites; incedebant regis clientes, mox fratres et coniunx et filia, postremo ipse ostentatus. Ubi tribunali astitit, hoc modo locutus est: "Si, quanta nobilitas et fortuna mihi fuit, tanta rebus secundis moderatio fuisset, amicus potius in hanc urbem quam captus venissem; at praesens sors mea tam mihi informis quam tibi magnifica est. Habui equos viros arma opes: quid mirum, si haec invitus amisi? Nonne, si vos omnibus imperare vultis, sequitur ut omnes servitutem accipiant? At si incolumem me servaveris, aeternum exemplum clementiae ero." Quibus auditis Caesar veniam ipsique et coniugi et fratribus tribuit.—*From Tacitus, Annals*, XII. 35-37.

EXERCISE 27.

1. I would rather live in a free city than serve a king, even if he ruled well. 2. Even if I had met you sooner, I could not have helped you. 3. Everyone knows that good health, however poor a man be, is better than great riches. 4. Though the leader of the Britons had not yet ascertained the plans of the Romans, he was prepared to fight bravely. 5. You ought to have read through the poem, however long it was. 6. However suddenly the enemy attack, we must drive them off. 7. Although it was already (*luceo*) light, Titus was still asleep. 8. War, although hateful to you, is yet pleasing to Lepidus. 9. Do not put off what you can do immediately. 10. However ignorant he may be of the arts, he is an honest man.

11. Whenever there was a great tumult in the city, a dictator was elected. 12. Sometimes it is necessary to act with great cruelty. 13. We must take (*adhibere*) pains, however difficult the work which we are doing. 14. No one can say that a man is happy, until he is dead. 15. Unless you pour over them a great deal of water, your flowers will never grow. 16. Although he was told that his son was dead, the consul did not leave off dedicating the

temple 17. If you understood how many men were necessary to build this column, you would not ask for another. 18. Although he saw that the power of the Athenians was crippled by the Sicilian defeat, he determined to strike a decisive blow [say, "commit the whole matter to a battle"]. 19. Although Caesar believed that he had reduced Gaul to peace, yet war broke out as soon as he retired to his winter quarters. 20. The Scythians used to kill their old men by throwing them into a lake; though otherwise that nation was not considered a very cruel one.

LESSON 28.

Causal clauses; revision of principal parts and demonstrative pronouns and adverbs.

Revise principal parts (§ 498, **induō to opperior**); demonstrative pronouns and adverbs (§§ 470, 520, first column).

Causal Clauses.

276. The verb of a **causal clause** introduced by **cum**, meaning *because*, *since*, etc., is always **subjunctive**.

Hannibal, cum oppidum expugnāre nōn posset, abiit	*as (since) Hannibal could not storm the town, he went away*
quae cum ita sint, statim proficiscar	*under the circumstances* (lit. *since these things are so*), *I will set out at once*

277. After the causal conjunctions **quod, quia, quoniam, quandoquidem**, the **indicative** is used if the cause is stated as a **fact**. **Idcircō, ideō, propterea** (*for this reason*) are often used as antecedents to **quod** and **quia**.

Hannibal, quia (*or* **quoniam**) **oppidum expugnāre nōn potuit, abiit**	*because Hannibal could not storm the town, he went away*
indignābātur Clōdius propterea quod ex Ītaliā excēdēbam	*Clodius was angry just because I was leaving Italy*

278. The **subjunctive** is, however, used after the above conjunctions **if the cause is reported**, *i.e.* if it is stated as conceived or alleged at the time of the action described in the principal sentence; the conjunction may then be rendered *on the ground that* or *because* (*he*) *said* (or *thought*) *that*.

indignābātūr Clōdius quia ex Ītaliā excēderem	*Clodius was angry because, as he said,* (or *on the ground that*) *I was leaving Italy*

grātulābātur mihi quod dīves essem; sed nōn eram dīves	*he congratulated me that I was rich; but I was not rich*

Obs. It will be seen from the last two sections that the indicative implies that the cause is true, the subjunctive that it may be true or false (in the last example it is false).

279. The **subjunctive** is used after **nōn quod, nōn quō** (*not because, not that*), because the reason they introduce is **mentioned only to be rejected**, *i.e.* is false.

aberō, nōn quō timeam, sed quia alia habeō quae agam	*I shall be away, not because I am afraid, but because I have other things to do*

280. In a **causal clause** with the verb in the indicative **sē** or **suus** refers to the **subject of its own clause** (and that of the principal clause must be indicated by **is, ille**, etc.); in a **reported cause sē** or **suus** generally refers to the subject of the **principal** clause (cp. § 238).

hunc, quod eī tālia dixit, Sulla interficī iussit	*Sulla had him killed because he (actually) said such words to him*
hunc, quod sibi tālia dixisset, Sulla interficī iussit	*Sulla had him killed on the ground that he had said such words to him*
quod sibi non parcit, Caesar eī honōrem addet	*because he does not spare himself, Caesar will honour him*

281. **Quī** (**quae, quod**, etc.) is used with the subjunctive in a causal clause, *i.e.* when **quī** is equivalent to **quia is**, etc. **Quī** is often strengthened by **quippe**.

Fabius, (quippe) quī omnia prōvīdisset, nōn perturbātus est	*as Fabius had made all preparations, he was not taken aback*

282. It may be noted that an **English causal clause** can often be rendered by a **Latin participle**; and conversely a causal clause in Latin may occasionally be required to render a participle (present or perfect) in English.

permultī iūdicium veritī profūgērunt	*many fled because they were afraid of legal proceedings*
hīc, quia pecūniam nōn habuit, nihil persolvere potuit	*having no money, he could not pay anything*

READING LESSON 28.

The Gauls invade Rome: Slaughter of the Senators.

In urbe interim, satis iam omnibus ad tuendam arcem compositis, turba seniorum, in templo sedens, adventum hostium obstinato ad mortem animo exspectabat. Sunt qui devovisse eos se pro patria * Quiritibusque Romanis tradant. † Galli, et quia interposita nocte a contentione pugnae remiserant animos, et quod neque impetu nec vi capiebant urbem, sine ira, sine ardore animorum ingressi postero die urbem, in forum perveniunt, circumferentes oculos ad templa arcemque, solam belli speciem tenentem. Inde, modico relicto praesidio, dilapsi ad praedam, in proximas quasque domos agmine ruunt. Inde rursus ipsa solitudine absterriti, ne qua fraus hostium vagos eos exciperet, in forum conglobati redibant, et venerabundi intuebantur sedentes viros, maiestate vultus ac gravitate oris simillimos deis. ‡ E quibus unus, Marcus Papirius,

* **Quirites**, lit. inhabitants of Cures, a Sabine town. When the Romans and Sabines united, *Quirites* meant citizens, as opposed to *Romani*, soldiers.

† Analysis :—

Galli,
sine ira . . . ingressi . . . urbem,
et (*both*) quia . . . remiserant animos,
et quod . . . capiebant urbem,
in forum perveniunt,
circumferentes . . . arcemque,
solam . . . tenentem.

‡ E quibus unus . . . dicitur Gallo,
scipione . . . incusso,
quia . . . permulceret,
iram movisse.

dicitur Gallo, quia barbam suam permulceret, scipione in caput incusso iram movisse; atque ab eo initium caedis ortum, ceteri in sedibus suis trucidati.—*From Livy*, V. 41.

EXERCISE 28.

1. I am not accustomed to visit foreign peoples, as I am always afraid when I am sailing on the sea. 2. You must not divide the spoil before you have gained it. 3. He left Crassus to guard the walls. 4. The barbarians thought that beasts were divine because they were useful. 5. He forbade them to pursue the fugitives, because he did not know the nature of the ground. 6. He proved that it would be very easy to carry out the attempt, as he himself was about to assume the government of his state. 7. I did not despise this as I am not in the habit of despising anything. 8. Seeing that the greater part of those present were of the same opinion [say, "felt the same"], war was decided upon. 9. He thought he was not forced to obey the Senate, because the decree was made in his absence. 10. There is no reason why you should wait for my son to come.

11. You have no reason to think that I shall ever ask your pardon. 12. I remained in the city for this reason, that I did not wish to meet Gaius. 13. As all the roads were blocked, the messengers that had been sent were intercepted. 14. Aristides was exiled for being too just. 15. Though the rest of the physicians despaired, a certain Greek said that he could save the king. 16. If we did not possess a soul, we should be nothing but dust and ashes. 17. Thinking all was lost, Marius escaped while there was yet time. 18. I took this money away because I did not wish you to lose it. 19. Spain cannot maintain a great multitude of towns, not because the soil is too dry, but because the people are lazy. 20. Whenever you speak of bravery, I always think of Aulus Manlius, who fled from the camp because he was afraid to fight.

LESSON **29.**

Local and comparative clauses; revision of principal parts of verbs, relative and interrogative pronouns and adverbs.

Revise principal parts (§ 498, **ordior** to **rōdō**); relative and interrogative pronouns and adverbs (§§ 470, 520, 2nd and 3rd columns).

Local Clauses.

283. The clauses introduced by the **relative adverbs of place** in the second column of § 520 (first four sections) may be conveniently grouped as **local clauses**. They follow the same rules as the clauses after the relative pronoun **quī**, *i.e.* they are in the **indicative** when they state a **fact** and in the **subjunctive** where they imply **result** (§ 203), **purpose** (§ 239), **concession** (§ 275), or **cause** (§ 281), *e.g.* where **ubi** is equivalent to **ut ibi** (consecutive and final), **quamvīs ibi, quia ibi**, respectively.

campus ubi castra posuērunt prope flūmen situs est	*the plain where they encamped was near a river*
eum ad insulam quandam mīsit ubi morerētur	*he sent him to a certain island, that he might die there*
ārida erat insula, et scopulōsa, et unde nēmō redīre posset	*the island was barren and rocky, and one from which there could be no return*

Obs. This relative use of these adverbs of place must be distinguished from their interrogative use (§ 520, col. 3) in an indirect question; *e.g.* **rogāvit unde vēnissem**, *he asked where I had come from.*

Note.—In the final and causal use of these adverbs with the subjunctive, **sē** or **suus** (as already implied, §§ 238, 280) refers back to the subject of the principal sentence; in all other cases, to that of its own clause: *e.g.* **ad collem praemīsit unde sē certiōrem faceret quid agerētur**, *he sent him forward to a hill that he might inform him from there what was going on.*

Comparative Clauses.

284. A **comparative clause** is introduced by (*a*) some **relative adverb** of manner (§ 520, second column, last section), such as **ut** (*as*), **quam** (*than*); (*b*) **āc** in the combinations **perinde āc** (*just as*), **nōn secus āc** (*not otherwise than*); (*c*) a **relative adverb** of manner or **āc followed by sī** (*just as if . . .*), *e.g.* **quam sī** (*or* **quasi**), **tamquam sī** (or **tamquam** alone), **ut sī, velut sī, sīcut.** The mood of the comparative clause in (*a*) and (*b*) is **indicative,** as it expresses a **fact.**

celerius ego scrībō quam tū loqueris	*I write more rapidly than you talk*
Marcus, ut solet, obdormit	*Marcus, as usual, is falling asleep*
perinde āc dixistī, obsidētur Arīcia	*just as you said, Aricia is being besieged*

Obs. 1. Just as in a *temporal* sense is of course not to be translated by **perinde āc,** *e.g.* **simul atque** (*or* **tempore quō**) **hōc dixistī, exiit,** *just as you said this, he went out.* Similarly *as* in a temporal clause must be distinguished from *as* in a comparative clause.

Obs. 2. Adverbs of manner are often used without a dependent clause, as in English; *e.g.* **senātuī nōn secus āc tibi pārēbō,** *I will obey the Senate no less than yourself.*

Obs. 3. **Āc** is used before a consonant, **atque** before a vowel.

285. The verb of the clause introduced by (*c*) **quam sī, quasi, tamquam** [**sī**], etc., is in the **subjunctive** (as expressing an imaginary case), its tense being determined in accordance with the rule for the sequence of tenses. The clause is of course really a conditional one, the true apodosis having to be supplied after the relative adverb.

istum, tamquam sī esset consul, salūtābant	*they saluted him just as* [*they would salute him*] *if he were a consul*
rēgī, velut sī deus sit, pārēbimus	*we shall obey the king, just as if he were a god*

286. In sentences such as *there were more soldiers than you could count,* the clause *you could count* really implies a

pronoun understood (i.e. *than those which* or *than such as you might count*), and must be so translated in Latin.

mīlitēs plūrēs erant quam quōs (*or* **ut eōs**) **numerārēs**	*there were more soldiers than you could count*
tignum gravius erat quam quod (*or* **ut id**) **attollere potuī** (*or* **possem**)	*the log was heavier than I could lift*

Obs. Such sentences may be frequently translated by *too . . .* ollowed by the infinitive, *e.g. there were too many soldiers to count, the log was too heavy for me to lift.*

287. *As fast as possible* may be represented by **quam celerrimē potuī** as well as by **quam celerrimē** (§ 133).

READING LESSON 29.

A Panic in Caesar's Camp.

Dum paucos dies in hoc oppido moratur, tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes perturbaret. Hic primum ortus, ut solet, ab eis qui, ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem secuti, non magnum in re militari usum habebant: quorum alius alia causa illata, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse dixit, petebat ut eius voluntate discedere liceret; nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem vitarent, remanebant. Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere poterant; in totis castris testamenta obsignabant, tamquam si statim morituri essent. Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii, qui magnum in castris usum habebant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed magnitudinem silvarum, quae intercederent inter ipsos et Ariovistum, timere dicebant.—*From Caesar, de Bello Gallico*, I. 39.

EXERCISE 29.

1. Your letter was brought too late for me to answer it. 2. What I said, I did not say otherwise than as I thought. 3. I will try to relate everything as it happened. 4. Do not blame me as if I had done this. 5. Labienus, as he had been commanded, would not join battle at once. 6. There has never been a poet or orator who thought another better than himself. 7. I will do as you advise me, though I do not think that you are advising me rightly. 8. The enemy began, with loud shouts, to climb the wall with ladders, as if the victory had been already gained. 9. He was pleased because [as he thought] I had come from the city to see him. 10. Gladiators who are well trained would rather receive a mortal blow than live if they have been conquered.

11. Although in many passages Epicurus treats of pleasure and pain, still he does not convince me. 12. Are we to say that money is wanting, as if that alone were wanting? 13. Soldiers, you are rather afraid than unable to advance into the plain. 14. Just as a ship is driven by oars, so the state is helped by all [of] us. 15. I ask you (*pl.*) to be just rather than merciful. 16. I do not fear that, moved by private hatred, I may seem to say this more willingly than truly. 17. The Romans went out of the besieged town, in order that they might rather fight in an open space than die while shut up within the walls. 18. Even if those things remain which are, as-it-were (*quasi*), the gifts of fortune, yet a life which is deserted by one's friends could not be pleasant. 19. The Senate feared that the city would be destroyed, just as if an enemy were outside the walls. 20. As Bion used to narrate, the king in his grief plucked out his hair, as if his sorrow were lightened by baldness (*calvitium*).

LESSON **30.**

Participles and clauses; revision of infinitive and participles, principal parts, indefinite pronouns.

Revise principal parts (§ 498, **rumpō** to **sum**), uses of infinitive, gerund, gerundive, and participles (Lessons 5-9, 17), independent subjunctive, relative clauses and dependent questions (Lessons 10-13), indefinite adverbs (§ 520, fourth column).

Participles and Clauses.

288. By a comparison of the examples in Lessons 7-9 with those given in Lessons 21-29 it will be seen that in many cases a **participial construction** or a **dependent clause** may be used in Latin **without difference of meaning**; the ablative absolute construction especially (active or passive) may be interchanged with a relative or temporal, and less often with a causal, conditional, or concessive clause.

fugientēs (*or* **eōs quī fugiēbant**) **equitātus concīdit**	*the cavalry cut down those who were escaping*
Caesar, hōc acceptō responsō (*or* **cum hōc responsum accēpisset**), **obsidēs līberāvit**	*when Caesar had received this reply, he* (or *on receiving . . . , Caesar*) *released the hostages*
auctus est mīlitum numerus, multīs sē ultrō offerentibus (*or* **quia multī . . . obtulērunt**)	*the number of the soldiers was increased, as many offered of their own accord to serve*
hīs superātīs (*or* **sī hī superātī erunt**), **nēmō nōs adorīrī audēbit**	*if these are conquered, no one will venture to attack us*

Obs. 1. In many cases a participle cannot be used in Latin, *e.g.* **cum advēnisset** (*or* **ēius adventū**), **Gallōs vīdit**, *when he had come*

(or *on his arrival*), *he saw the Gauls;* for verbs which are not deponent have no perfect participle with active meaning and intransitive verbs have no personal passive.

Obs. 2. Owing to the more limited use of participles in English, an English dependent clause more often corresponds to a Latin participle than a Latin dependent clause to an English participle.

READING LESSON 30.

Rout of the Romans by Arminius, 14 A.D.

Nox diversis causis haud tranquilla erat, cum barbari festis epulis, laeto cantu aut feroci clamore subiectas partes vallium complerent; apud Romanos invalidi ignes, interruptae voces, atque ipsi passim iacebant prope vallum, insomnes magis quam vigiles. Ducem terruit dira quies; * nam Quintilium Varum, qui illic quondam devictus erat, sanguine oblitum et paludibus emersum, cernere et audire visus est, velut vocantem et manum intendentem repulisse. Coepta luce, missae in latera legiones, et (dubium num metu an contumacia) locum deseruere. Arminius irrumpere Germanos iubet, clamitans, "En Varus, et eodem iterum fato victae legiones." Simul cum delectis scindit agmen, equisque praecipue vulnera ingerit: illi sanguine suo lapsantes, excussis rectoribus, disiciebant obvios, calcabant iacentes. Dux Romanus, dum sustentat aciem, suffosso equo delapsus, circumventus esset, nisi prima legio sese opposuisset.—*From Tacitus, Annals,* I. 65.

---

* Analysis :—

Visus est Quintilium Varum,
qui . . . erat,
sanguine oblitum . . . emersum,
cernere et audire,
[et] repulisse [eum]
velut vocantem . . . intendentem.

EXERCISE 30.

1. While Flaccus wasted time in selling the goods of the enemy, another army was being collected in Apulia. 2. The general was ill for five months after he had received his wound. 3. Tell me why the king distrusted you. 4. Do not think that a man like Clodius is speaking the truth. 5. As soon as he heard that I had come to the city, he at once dismissed his lictors and started to [meet] me. 6. The number of the sailors who are now starting with Balbus is filled up. 7. Publilius thought that the soldiers should be spoken to, and ordered them to be called to a meeting. 8. No one knows how much Caesar gave to his friends. 9. It is under your leadership that we desire to conquer. 10. Having risen [from his seat] the consul said that Catilina and his friends must be punished.

11. It is said by many that Darius was more powerful than all the kings who live to-day. 12. I killed the tyrant when I found him; and now you blame me because I delayed. 13. When the consuls heard what was being done in the town, they consulted together about leading an army into Campania. 14. When the men and animals pressed upon the ice, it broke. 15. Caesar sent forward fifty soldiers to cut down the bridge, in order that the Gauls might not cross the river and attack his camp. 16. It is natural for those who rule to despise the laws. 17. We have been led to learn geometry (*geometria*), as this art is very useful to one who wishes to measure or to reason. 18. Though the fortifications of the previous year remained untouched, Pompeius did not think that the army was safe. 19. He came down to the sea near Neapolis. 20. Since the affairs of men are uncertain, we must always look for some people whom we may love and by whom we may be loved.

LESSON **31.**

Miscellaneous remarks on complex sentences; revision of principal parts of verbs, indefinite pronouns, complex sentences; English abstract nouns and Latin verbs.

Revise principal parts (§ 498, **sūmō** to **voveō**), consecutive clauses (Lesson 14), final, conditional, temporal, concessive, causal, local, and comparative clauses (Lessons 18-29), table of subjunctive usages (§ 525, A to G).

English Compound and Latin Complex Sentences.

289. It has been already said (§ 126) that English sentences connected by *and* or *but* may frequently be translated by Latin sentences containing a participle; similarly they may often be translated by Latin complex sentences, the less important of the two predications being made to depend on the more important. Sentences connected by *and* and *but* will generally correspond to sentences containing temporal (or causal) and concessive clauses respectively.

ubi illuxit, hostēs sē recēpērunt	*the day dawned and the enemy retired*
Pompeius, cum exercitum comparāvisset, mare transiit	*Pompeius collected an army and crossed the sea*
Hannibal cum iam haud procul abesset (*or* quia . . . aberat), Marcellus Gaetūlōs praemittit	*Hannibal was now fairly near, and Marcellus sent forward the Gaetulians*
quamvīs obsidēs relīquissent Gallī, Caesar condiciōnēs accipere nōluit	*the Gauls left hostages, but Caesar would not accept their terms*

Reported Description and Condition.

290. When a relative clause expresses a **description** or **definition**, not as a fact inserted by the writer or speaker, but as having occurred to the mind of another and as being merely **reported** by the writer, its verb is in the subjunctive.

imperātor obsidēs quī ad eōs perfugerent poposcit	*the general demanded such hostages as should take refuge with them*
despondit mihi omnēs quōs eō diē habuisset (*or* **habēret**) **captīvōs**	*he promised me all the prisoners he should take that day*

Obs. The tense of the subjunctive in these clauses (called "virtually oblique") is decided in accordance with (*a*) the rule for the sequence of tenses, and (*b*) the tense of the indicative which would have been used in the relative clause in the direct form. Thus :—

Direct.	Reported.	
	Primary sequence.	Historic sequence.
Indic. Present ,, Future	Subj. Present	Subj. Imperfect
,, Imperfect ,, Perfect ,, Pluperfect ,, Future-Perfect	,, Perfect	,, Pluperfect

The "direct form" means the form of words which the speaker, whom the writer is reporting, would have used. Thus the reported speaker's actual words, in the above examples, would have been :—

obsidēs poscō quī ad vōs perfugient

despondeō (*or* **dabō**) **tibi omnēs quōs hodiē habuerō** (*or* **habēbō**) **captīvōs**

291. Similarly, in a **conditional** clause which **reports** a condition laid down at the time of the action described in the principal sentence, the verb is in the subjunctive, the tense being determined according to the above table.

imperātor obsidēs sī quī ad eōs perfugerent poposcit	*the general demanded such hostages, if any, as should take refuge with them*

despondit mihi servōs, sī quōs eō diē captīvōs habuisset (*or* **habēret**)	*he promised me some slaves, if he should take any prisoners that day*
despondet mihi servōs, sī quōs hodiē captīvōs habuerit (*or* **habeat**)	*he promises me some slaves, if* (*as he hopes*) *he takes any prisoners to-day*

292. In reported descriptions and conditions, as in reported causes (§ 280), **sē** or **suus** generally refers to the subject of the principal sentence.

barbarī deō cuidam dēvōvērunt mīlitēs quī (*or* **sī quī mīlitēs**) **ad sē perfugerent**	*the barbarians vowed to some god of theirs any soldiers that should take refuge with them*

Obs. 1. **Perfugerent** represents the barbarians' words **quī** or **sī quī perfugient.**

Obs. 2. This should be distinguished from the ordinary consecutive relative or conditional clause: **barbarī . . . dēvovēbant mīlitēs quī ad eōs perfugerent** (or **sī quī mīlitēs ad eōs perfugiēbant**), *the barbarians used to vow . . . any soldiers that took refuge with them.*

Miscellaneous Remarks on Complex Sentences.

293. A sentence with **vix, aegrē** (*scarcely, hardly*), etc., counts as a negative sentence for the purpose of § 241.

vix eī obstitī quīn sē interficeret	*I hardly prevented him from killing himself*

294. Though the place of an English dependent clause consisting of a statement is in Latin usually taken by the accusative and infinitive construction, yet occasionally **quod,** denoting (*the fact*) *that,* may introduce a clause standing as subject to the sentence, the verb of this clause being in the **indicative** mood. **Quod** is generally introduced by a demonstrative pronoun (**id** or **illud**).

illud stat causae (§ 355) **cūr plūrimī hominēs bonī sint, quod pūniuntur nisi lēgibus obtemperant**	*the reason why many men are good is that they are punished if they do not obey the laws*

295. *But if* (*not*) in alternatives is often translated by **sīn** (minus).

sī veniēs, bene est; sīn minus, sine tē proficiscar	*if you come, it is well; if not, I shall start without you*

296. Complex sentences may be grouped as follows:—

(A) **Substantival clauses** are those standing as subject or object to the verb of the principal sentence. They comprise dependent questions (§ 185), dependent commands (§ 236), dependent statements (§ 294).

(B) **Adjectival clauses** are those which qualify a noun or pronoun, and comprise all clauses introduced by relative pronouns.

(C) **Adverbial clauses** are those which may be regarded as standing in an adverbial relation to the principal verb; they comprise conditional, final, consecutive, temporal, concessive, causal, local, and comparative clauses. The last five are often grouped as **circumstantial** clauses, *i.e.* those expressing the circumstances under which the action of the principal verb takes place.

English Abstract Nouns and Latin Verbs.

297. Owing to the tendency in Latin to **use verbs whenever an action is expressed or implied**, a **Latin verb** will often correspond to an English **abstract noun**; this is most common in Latin dependent clauses (or participial phrases), which often correspond to an English noun (implying action) preceded by a preposition.

cum hanc urbem cēpisset (*or* **hāc urbe captā**), **cēterās oppugnāre constituit**	*after the capture of this city he determined to attack the rest* (or *the capture of this city was followed by a resolve on his part to attack the rest*)
cum iam trēs annōs regnāvisset, mortuus est	*he died after a reign of three years*
dixit sē timēre nē Rōmānī vincerentur	*he expressed a fear that the Romans would be conquered*
dictātor creātus Sabīnīs metum incussit	*the appointment of a dictator* (lit. *the dictator being appointed*) *struck terror into the Sabines*

READING LESSON 31.

An Apology for writing Biography.

* Equidem scio fore plerosque, qui hoc genus scripturae leve et non satis aptum ad summorum virorum personas iudicent, cum relatum legent, quis musicam docuerit Epaminondam, aut in eius virtutibus commemorari saltavisse eum commode scienterque tibiis cantavisse. † Sed hi erunt qui, expertes litterarum Graecarum, nihil rectum nisi quod ipsorum moribus conveniat putabunt. Ii, si didicerint non eadem omnibus esse honesta atque turpia, sed omnia maiorum institutis iudicari, non admirabuntur nos in Graecorum virtutibus exponendis mores eorum etiam secutos. Magnis in laudibus in tota Graecia fere fuit victorem Olympiae indicari: quae apud nos infamia et ab honestate remota ponuntur. Contra ea pleraque nostris moribus sunt decora, quae apud illos turpia putantur.—*From Nepos, Preface.*

EXERCISE 31.

1. Pompeius, in my opinion, was cautious rather than timid. 2. The Syracusans wish Verres to be punished because he robbed them. 3. Whenever I go out, I meet Balbus. 4. Have you ever

---

* Analysis :—

Equidem scio fore plerosque,
qui . . . iudicent,
cum legent
relatum, quis . . . docuerit Epaminondam,
aut . . . commemorari
saltavisse . . . cantavisse.

† Hi erunt
qui,
expertes . . . Graecarum,
nihil rectum nisi [id]
quod . . . conveniat
putabunt.

noticed how well Tiro writes? 5. While I was rich, all my friends said that I was loved by them. 6. He is too kind to be angry with me (dat.). 7. The art of the pilot is praised owing to its usefulness. 8. As far as I know (§ 204), Epicurus alone dared to assert that he was wise. 9. They let scarcely any opportunity pass without blaming Clodius for not having killed Milo. 10. Fortune is said to favour men, whenever they are successful in anything. 11. He was angry because [he thought] I had betrayed him. 12. He pitched his camp in an open place, where he might himself take up a position with his four legions. 13. Who doubts that avarice arises in the mind from the fact that money is too much esteemed?

14. If Antonius had done what I advised, he would now be consul. 15. You may now consider how beautiful those things are which we say were settled by divine providence. 16. I have written nothing at all to you yet, although scarcely a day used to pass without my writing. 17. Caesar thought that the wall ought to be built higher. 18. The general ordered the commander of the cavalry to prevent the enemy from attacking the army in the rear [say, "from the back"]. 19. No one, unless he were a man who hoped strongly for immortality, would wish to expose himself to death for the sake of his country. 20. I do not put these things forward because they are to be compared with what we are now discussing, but in order that you may understand that Roscius ought to be acquitted.

LESSON 32.

Prosody and Metre.

298. This Lesson deals with the two kinds of verse which are most common in Latin poetry, (1) **hexameters**, (2) **elegiacs**.

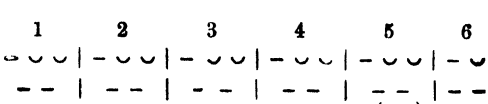
The following are English hexameter verses:—

When you have | finished your | work, I have | something im- | portant to | tell you.
Be not how- | ever in | haste; I can | wait; I shall | not be im- | patient.

—Longfellow: *Miles Standish.*

299. Between these and Latin hexameters there is one great difference: in English verse the feet are counted according to the **stress** or metrical accent which falls on certain syllables; in Classical Latin verse no account is taken of stress, but only of the **length** of the syllables (§ 3).

300. The Latin **hexameter** consists in theory of **six dactyls**, of which the last is one syllable short, the pause at the end of the line taking the place of the missing syllable. As a succession of such lines would be intolerably monotonous, a **spondee**, *i.e.* a foot consisting of two long syllables, may be substituted at pleasure for a dactyl, though such substitution in the 5th foot is exceedingly rare. As it is indifferent whether the last syllable of a verse is long or short, a spondee is often found in the sixth foot. Accordingly the scheme of the hexameter line is as follows—



301. There is usually a break in the verse after the first syllable of the third foot, *i.e.* a word ends there. This break is known as *caesura* (= "cutting") and, when it occurs in this position, the caesura is known as "strong." Occasionally it comes after the second syllable of the third foot, when this foot is a dactyl, and is then known as "weak"; *e.g.*

Ēxtēm- | plō Lĭbў- | āe ‖ māg- | nās īt | Fāmă pĕr | ūrbēs.

Tūquĕ prĭ- | ŏr, tū | pārcĕ, ‖ gĕ- | nūs quī | dūcĭs Ŏ- | lўmpō.

302. The elegiac couplet consists of the hexameter followed by a line called a **pentameter**, which consists of two equal parts, each corresponding to the portion of a hexameter preceding the strong caesura, but in the latter half of the line only dactyls (not spondees) are admitted. The first half of a pentameter always ends with a word. Thus—

– ∪ ∪ | – ∪ ∪ | – ‖ – ∪ ∪ | – ∪ ∪ | –
– – | – – | | ∪

Lītŏră | Thēssălĭ- | āe ‖ rĕdŭ- | cī tĕtĭ- | gīssĕ că- | rīnā

Dīcĕrĭs | aūrā- | tae ‖ vĕllĕră | dīvĕs ŏ- | vĭs.

303. In order to "scan" a Latin verse, *i.e.* to divide it into feet, it is necessary to have some knowledge of prosody, *i.e.* the rules for distinguishing a long syllable from a short one.

The following are the most important of these rules:—

A syllable is long

(1) if it contains a diphthong or a long vowel (hī, **hae, haec**);

(2) if the vowel is followed by two consonants or by one of the double consonants **x, z** (**sunt, dux**).

A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel followed by another vowel or by a single consonant (**suēs, sumus**).

Obs. These rules apply not only when the two consonants are in the same word, but also when one of them ends a word and the other begins the next word in the same line.

If a word ends in a short vowel, it is not, as a rule, followed by a word beginning with two consonants.

NOTE 1.—The letter **h** does not count in Latin prosody.

NOTE 2.—If of two consonants in the same syllable the first is **p, b, f, c, g, t,** or **d,** and the second **l** or **r,** the syllable by which they are preceded may be either long or short if its vowel is short (**refluus, tenebrae**).

304. With regard to the quantity of final syllables some general rules can be given :—

(*a*) Monosyllables are generally long, except those ending in **b, d, t.**

(*b*) Final syllables of words of more than one syllable ending in a single consonant other than **c** or **s** are short.

(*c*) Final syllables of words ending in **a, i, o, u, as, es, os,** and **c** are long. Final **a,** however, in nom., voc., and acc. is short. Final **es** is short in such nominatives singular as **mīles.**

Final **e** is short, except in the 5th declension, in 2nd sing. imper. act. of verbs of the 2nd conjugation, and in adverbs.

Final **is** is short, except in acc., dat., and abl. plural, and in 2nd sing. pres. ind. act. of verbs of the 4th conjugation.

Final **us** is short, except in the nom., voc., and acc. plural and gen. sing. of the 4th declension, and in fem. substantives like **palūs.**

305. When a word ending in a vowel is followed in the same line by a word beginning with a vowel, the former vowel is so slightly pronounced as not to count in scansion, and is said to be "elided." This rule holds good also of final syllables ending in **m** ; *e.g.*

Ō nā- | tĕ ingēn- | tĕm‖ lūc- | tūm nĕ | quaerĕ tŭ- | ōrŭm.

Ĕt dŭbĭ- | tāmŭs ăd- | hūc ‖ vīr- | tūtem ēx- | tēndĕrĕ | factīs?

READING LESSON 32.

Translate and scan the following:—

A.—CAMILLA, QUEEN OF THE VOLSCIANS, IS KILLED BY ARRUNS.

Ergo, ut missa manu sonitum dedit hasta per auras,
Convertere animos acres, oculosque tulerunt
Cuncti ad reginam Volsci . . . .
Concurrunt trepidae comites dominamque ruentem
Suscipiunt. Fugit ante omnes exterritus Arruns,
Laetitia mixtoque metu, nec iam amplius hastae
Credere nec telis occurrere virginis audet.
Ac velut *ille, prius quam tela inimica sequantur,
Continuo in montes sese avius abdidit altos
Occiso pastore lupus magnove iuvenco,
Conscius audacis facti, caudamque remulcens
Subiecit pavitantem utero silvasque petivit,
Haud secus ex oculis se turbidus abstulit Arruns
Contentusque fuga mediis se immiscuit armis.
Illa manu moriens telum trahit, ossa sed inter
Ferreus ad costas alto stat vulnere mucro.
Labitur exsanguis, labuntur frigida leto
Lumina, purpureus quondam color ora reliquit.

Vergil, Aeneid, XI. 799-801, 805-819.

B.—ARIADNE DESERTED BY THESEUS ON THE ISLAND OF NAXOS.

Luna fuit: specto, si quid nisi litora cernam:
Quod videant oculi nil nisi litus habent.
Nunc huc, nunc illuc, et utroque sine ordine curro:
Alta puellares tardat arena pedes.

* Agreeing with *lupus*.

Interea toto clamanti litore, "Theseu!"
Reddebant nomen concava saxa tuum;
Et quoties ego te, toties locus ipse vocabat:
Ipse locus miserae ferre volebat opem.
"Quo fugis?" exclamo; "scelerate revertere Theseu:
Flecte ratem! numerum non habet illa suum."
Haec ego †: quod voci deerat, plangore replebam;
Verbera cum verbis mixta fuere meis.
Iamque oculis ereptus eras. Tum denique flevi:
Torpuerant molles ante dolore genae.

From Ovid, Heroides, X. 17-24, 35-38, 43, 44.

Further practice in scansion should be obtained by scanning Reading Lessons 34, 36A, 38, 40, 45, 48.

---

*§ 451. † Supply *dixi.*

LESSON 33.

The Period.

306. **A long sentence consisting of several subordinate clauses or participial phrases dependent on a main verb** is a characteristic feature of Latin prose, narrative or other. A long sentence of this kind is known as a **period.**

In modern English prose the place of the period is taken by the **paragraph**: this usually consists of a series of sentences, simple, compound, and complex, dealing with one particular idea or event, or with a group of connected ideas or events.

As was pointed out in § 126, the tendency in English is to lead up to the main statement by means of coordinate sentences; in Latin, on the other hand, to treat as subordinate clauses all explanations as to time, cause, condition, etc., and conclude with the main verb.

Accordingly, in translating from Latin into English, it will frequently be found necessary to "break up the period," *i.e.* to make two or more principal sentences in English out of what, in Latin, was only one; and conversely, in translating from English into Latin, it is often well to combine two or more English sentences into a single main sentence with subordinate clauses and participial phrases dependent on it.

307. The following examples should be studied carefully:—

(*a*) **quibus audītīs, equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuērunt, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant**

when they heard this, our cavalry and the light-armed infantry who were with those whom I have already mentioned as driven back on the enemy's first onslaught withdrew to the camp; there they met with a force of the enemy in arms against them

(*b*) cālōnes, quī ab decumānā portā nostrōs victōrēs flūmen transisse conspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vidissent, praecipitēs fugae sē mandābant	*the army servants, who from the decuman* (i.e. *back*) *gate of the camp had seen that our men had been victorious and had crossed the river, came out with the object of plunder ; but when they looked back and saw that the enemy were going about our camp, they took to headlong flight*
(*c*) ibi, dum instructī armātīque cēterī transitum exspectantēs constant, ūnī ex iīs (Dīnomenēs fuit nōmen), quia custōs corporis erat, partēs datae sunt, ut, cum appropinquāret iānuae rex, per causam aliquam in angustiīs ā tergō agmen sustinēret	*the rest were drawn up there and armed. They stood, waiting for him to cross, and meanwhile one of them* (*named Dinomenes*), *as being the king's bodyguard, was given the following duty: when the king should approach the door, Dinomenes was on some pretext to stop the latter part of the procession where the passage was narrowest*

308. The English rendering should be compared with the Latin passages in § 307 and the following points noted :—

(i) The Latin main sentence with its subordinate clause or participial phrase answers either to a similar complex sentence in English or to two sentences connected by *and*, *but*, etc.

(ii) The main verb of the Latin period expresses the main action or the most important point in the narrative.

(iii) Within the Latin period itself there is often considerable variety ; *i.e.* it is not an accumulation of either finite verbs or participles, but a mixture of both ; the different subordinate clauses are usually linked together by et if they are of the same class (*i.e.* adverbial, substantival, or adjectival).

(iv) The period usually ends with the verb of the main sentence.

(v) It should not be too long or complex. The less Latin a learner knows the shorter should be the periods he attempts to construct. Not more than three verbs at a time should be subordinated by a beginner.

(vi) Though Latin employs compound sentences (linked by **et**, etc.) as well as complex and simple sentences, in such cases the subject is hardly ever changed, as it often is in English. Thus *Gaius captured the boar and Titus killed it* would be **aprum ā Gāiō captum Titus** occīdit (§ 124); and so for this reason also the structure of a Latin sentence tends to be periodic.

(vii) An adverb of time in the English sentence will often point to the temporal conjunction to be used in the corresponding Latin subordinate clause. Thus *previously*, *then* (= *at that time*), *then* (= *after that*), *meanwhile*, may point to **priusquam**, **cum**, **postquam**, **dum**; cp. (*c*) above.

309. The above periods may be thus analysed, the subordinate clauses being placed to the *right* of those on which they immediately depend :—

(*a*)
quibus audītīs,
equitēs . . . peditēs,
quī cum iīs ūnā fuērunt
quōs . . . dixeram,
cum sē . . . reciperent
adversīs hostibus occurrēbant

(*b*)
cālōnēs,
quī . . . conspexerant,
praedandī causā ēgressī
cum respexissent
et . . . versārī vīdissent
praecipitēs fugae sē mandābant

(*c*)
ibi,
dum . . . exspectantēs constant,
ūnī ex iīs
(Dīnomenēs fuit nōmen)
quia custōs corporis erat
partēs datae sunt,
ut,
cum appropinquāret . . . **rex,**
per causam . . . sustinēret

READING LESSON 33.

THE ATTEMPTED ASSASSINATION OF MILO BY CLODIUS.

Milo, cum in senatu fuisset donec senatus dimissus est, proficiscebatur eo tempore cum iam Clodius, si quidem eo die ad urbem venturus erat, redire potuisset. Clodium convenit ante fundum eius hora fere undecima. Statim plures cum telis in hunc faciunt de loco superiore impetum; adversi aurigam occidunt. Cum autem Milo de curru desiluisset, seque acri animo defenderet, illi qui erant cum Clodio gladiis eductis, partim recurrebant ut a tergo Milonem adorirentur, partim, quod hunc iam interfectum putarent, caedere inceperunt eius servos qui post erant; ex quibus qui animo fideli in dominum praediti erant partim occisi sunt, partim (cum prope currum pugnari viderent et domino quominus succurrerent prohiberentur, Milonemque occisum etiam ex ipso Clodio audirent, et ita esse putarent) fecerunt id servi Milonis, neque imperante neque sciente neque praesente domino, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facere voluisset.—*From Cicero, pro Milone,* §§ 28, 29.

EXERCISE 33.

1. This is his promise: he will never return to this city. 2. The citadel was besieged for six days, and then all the men surrendered. 3. They took the messenger to a tower, and told him to observe how high it was; they bade him report the result [say, "what he had seen"] to Alexander. 4. After making these preparations he embarked in haste; he sailed across the straits with three ships, for he intended to fall upon the enemy unawares. 5. The town was deserted; the inhabitants had fled into the citadel. This Alexander on his entry attempted to storm; he first sent a messenger with threats of harsh punishment, if they would not surrender.

6. The Gauls conceived the design of renewing the war, because they despised a legion, which was not complete [say, "full"] owing to two cohorts having been taken away from it. 7. As he could not prevent the enemy from entering his borders, Vologeses determined to retreat. He thought that, the country being laid waste, they would soon be compelled by famine to return to Syria.

8. Marius was silent for some time, but when the lictor asked if he wished any message to be sent back, he answered, "Say that you have seen Gaius Marius sitting amid [in] the ruins of Carthage." 9. A certain youth had been instructed by Socrates for many months. When he returned to his own city, his father asked him what he had learned. The son modestly answered that he would show him that by his conduct. 10. The next day Caesar called his centurions together. He informed them that the enemy were approaching with a large force, and asked them whether they wished to give battle. 11. The king and his allies marched to the camp of the natives and found they were determined to resist even till death. They sent a woman to the natives in the camp, to announce to them the king's terms of peace. 12. The general was well aware what causes had led his lieutenant to say this. He knew why he had abandoned the design he had adopted. But he did not wish, now that all was prepared for (*ad*) the war, to waste the summer in Italy.

LESSON 34.

Irregularities of the first declension; the accusative.

Irregularities of the First Declension.

310. **Genitive singular.**—**Familia**, *household*, has gen. sing. **familiās** when used in connection with **pater**, **māter**. Thus, **pater familiās** or **paterfamiliās**, *master of the house;* **māter familiās** or **māterfamiliās**, *mistress of the house.* (In the plural either **patrēs familiās** or **patrēs familiārum** may be used.)

311. **Genitive plural.**—The suffix **-um** (instead of **-ārum**) is found in substantives ending in **-cola** (denoting *dweller in*, cp. **colō**, *I cultivate, inhabit*) or **-gena** (denoting *born in*, cp. **genus**, *birth*), *e.g.* **caelicolae**, *dwellers in heaven*, gen. **caelicolum.**

312. **Dative and Ablative Plural.**—Some feminine substantives corresponding to masculines in **-us** of the second declension have dative and ablative plural in **-ābus.** Such are **dea** (*goddess*) and **fīlia** (*daughter*), of which the dat. and abl. pl. are **deābus, fīliābus,** whereas **deīs, fīliīs** are the dat. and abl. pl. of **deus** (*god*) and **fīlius** (*son*).

The Accusative Case.

313. A word in the **accusative** case generally defines the sphere of a verb's action as its **object**: (A) the object may be **external**, denoting that to which the verbal action is applied or extended; (B) or it may be **internal**, further defining the nature of the action expressed by the verb; (C) the accusative is also used after certain prepositions.

(A) Accusative of the External Object (including the "goal" when the verb expresses motion).

314. The following uses have already been mentioned :—

(i) Accusative as **object of a transitive verb** (§ 23).

[Note.—Certain compound verbs of motion (*e.g.* **adeō, ineō, transeō, praetereō,** etc.) and compounds of intransitive verbs with **circum**

(*e.g.* **circumstō**) count for this purpose as transitive verbs and so may be used in the passive: *e.g.* **consilium inītur**, *the plan is being formed.*]

(ii) **Predicative accusative** agreeing with the object of verbs of *making* and *calling* (§ 55).

315. (iii) The **accusative used in exclamations** is the object of some verb more or less distinctly understood.

mē miserum	*miserable me!* or *alas for me!*
tē nunc sīc vexārī	*to think that you should now be so vexed!*

Obs. In this last example **vexārī** is itself the exclamatory accusative, **tē** being the subject of the infinitive.

316. (iv) The accusative is used **without a preposition** to denote the **goal of motion** in the case of

(*a*) the name of a town or small island—*i.e.* one small enough to be regarded as a single town;

(*b*) the words **domus** (in the meaning *home*) and **rūs** (*country*).

In the case of words other than these, the goal of motion is in prose expressed by the accusative with a preposition (§ 24), though in poetry the preposition is occasionally omitted.

Rōmam (Athēnās, Carthāginem, rūs, domum) veniet	*he will come to Rome (to Athens, to Carthage, to the country, home)*
ad urbem (*or* **ad urbem Rōmam**, § 110) **profectus est**	*he has started for the city* (or *for the city of Rome*)
in Siciliam contendit	*he is hastening into Sicily*

317. (v) The accusative **supine** represents an *action* as the goal and is used with verbs implying motion, especially with the verb **īre**. Being a *verbal* noun, it can govern its proper case. Thus the supine is a way of expressing purpose after a verb of motion.

vēnī tē monitum	*I have come to warn you*

Obs. The future infinitive passive (§ 82) is really the accusative supine in dependence on **īrī** used impersonally.

READING LESSON 34.

Ovid speaks of his Boyhood.

Sulmo mihi patria est, gelidis uberrimus undis,
  Milia qui novies distat ab urbe decem . . .
Nec stirps prima fui: genito sum fratre creatus,
  Qui tribus ante quater mensibus ortus erat.
Protinus excolimur teneri, curaque parentis
  Imus ad insignes urbis ab arte viros.
Frater ad eloquium viridi tendebat ab aevo,
  Fortia verbosi natus ad arma fori.
At mihi iam puero caelestia sacra placebant,
  Inque suum furtim Musa trahebat opus.
Saepe pater dixit, "Studium quid inutile tentas?
  * Maeonides nullas ipse reliquit opes."
Motus eram dictis, totoque †Helicone relicto
  Scribere conabar verba soluta modis.
Sponte sua carmen numeros veniebat ad aptos,
  Et quod tentabam dicere, versus erat.

Ovid, Tristia, iv. 10. 11-26.

EXERCISE 34.

1. Milo set out for Lanuvium, where he had been appointed dictator. 2. So far [say, "much"] as the colour proves anything, this statue is very old. 3. Do not blame me for being-an-exile. 4. Atalanta would not have married Hippomenes, had she not determined to pick up the apples he threw on the ground. 5. Whenever we took-our-seats in the Senate, we were asked our opinions in succession. 6. I waited till the end of the games, and then I returned home with my three daughters. 7. The merchants used

* Maeonides (patronymic, § 363): *i.e.* the Greek poet *Homer*.
† Helicon: a hill in Boeotia sacred to the Muses.

to sail from Egypt to Corinth and Cyprus; but now they bring corn from Sicily to Athens. 8. After a long and unfortunate journey we entered the city of Corinth, but were immediately driven out. 9. The Tiber is a very celebrated river, but it is not deep enough to bear very large ships. 10. I shall tell my father that I am going away to the country to learn to till the fields.

11. When Caesar observed that the enemy was daily increasing, he thought that he should not hesitate to fight a pitched battle. 12. At the second hour of the night he returned to the camp. 13. Turning thence to the left they began to devastate the fields of the Volsci. 14. Are you thinking of going from here to the country? 15. Whilst I was going back to my villa, Hortensius had called upon (*deverto*) Terentia to pay his respects [say, "to salute"]. 16. For ten years they waited for him to die. 17. When you are angry, do you allow your anger to govern your mind? I should think that no one is more miserable than you are. 18. Caesar left the city to hold a levy, and came first to Capua, one of the most ancient cities of Italy. 19. As Augustus was returning to Rome after the battle in which he defeated Antonius, an old man met him. 20. When Pompeius came to Brundusium, he ordered part of the army to be transported to Greece; the remainder, he said, would follow with himself.

LESSON **35.**

Irregularities of the second and third declensions; the accusative (continued).

Learn the declension of **bōs**, **sūs**, **Iuppiter** (§ 444).

Irregularities of the Second Declension.

318. Vocative Singular. Proper names ending in **-ius** have voc. sing. in **-ī**; *e.g.* **Marcus Tullius**, voc. **Marce Tullī**; **Vergilius**, voc. **Vergilī**. So **fīlius**, *son*, has voc. sing. **fīlī**. These contracted vocatives are accented on the last syllable but one.

319. Genitive Singular. Substantives with nom. sing. ending in **-ius** often contract **-iī** to **-ī** in the gen. sing.; *e.g.* **fluvius**, *river*, gen. **fluvī** or **fluviī**; **ingenium**, *ability*, gen. **ingenī** or **ingeniī**. These contracted genitives are accented on the last syllable but one.

320. Genitive Plural. The suffix **-um** may be used (as an alternative for **-ōrum**) in the gen. pl. of—

(1) Substantives denoting coins and measures, *e.g.* **dēnārius** (a silver coin rather larger than a sixpence), gen. pl. **dēnārium**; **nummus**, *coin*, gen. pl. **nummum**; also **faber**, *artificer*, has gen. pl. **fabrum**;

(2) A few words in poetry, *e.g.* **dīvus** (*deity*), gen. pl. **dīvum**; **vir** (*man*), gen. pl. **virum**.

321. **Deus** (*god*), besides having an alternative gen. pl. **deum**, has nom. pl. **dī**, dat. and abl. pl. **diīs** or **dīs**, beside the regular forms. The vocative sing. of **deus** is the same as the nominative.

Irregularities of the Third Declension.

(*a*) Substantives.

322. (*a*) Substantives (m. and f.) have gen. pl. ending in **-ium** if the base ends in two consonants or if they are **parisyllabic** (§ 48);

(*b*) they have gen. pl. in **-um** if they are **imparisyllabic** (§ 64) and the base ends in one consonant only; (*c*) neuter I-substantives comprise only those ending in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**, the rest being consonant-substantives. To this rule there are a few exceptions.

(*a*) The following masculine and feminine imparisyllabic words are I-substantives: **līs** (f., *dispute*), **mūs** (m., *mouse*), **nix** (f., *snow*), **vīs** (f., *force*, pl. *strength*); the genitive plurals being **līt̄ium, mūrium, nivium, vīrium** respectively.

(*b*) The following masculine and feminine parisyllabic words are consonant-substantives: **ambāgēs** (f., *circumlocution*), **canis** (c., *dog*), **iuvenis** (m., *young man*), **senex** (m., *old man*), **vātēs** (c., *prophet*), **volucris** (f., *bird*); also **pater** (m., *father*), **māter** (f., *mother*), **frāter** (m., *brother*); the genitive plurals being **ambāgum, canum, iuvenum, senum, vātum, volucrum, patrum, mātrum, frātrum.**

(*c*) **Os** (n., *bone*) has gen. pl. **ossium**, though it otherwise belongs to the consonant-declension (*i.e.* the nom. acc. pl. is **ossa**).

323. A few I-substantives have an alternative abl. sing. ending in **-ī**, and an alternative acc. sing. ending in **-im**. Such are: **nāvis** (f., *ship*), **puppis** (f., *stern*), **clāvis** (f., *key*), **febris** (f., *fever*), **messis** (f., *harvest*), **turris** (f., *tower*). Two substantives, **sitis** (m., *thirst*), **tussis** (f., *cough*), have only the **-ī** and **-im** forms. **Imber** (m., *rain*), **ignis** (m., *fire*) have abl. sing. in **-e** or **-ī**, but acc. sing. in **-em**; **secūris** (f., *axe*), **sodālis** (c., *companion*) have abl. sing. in **-ī** and acc. sing. in **-em.**

324. The following substantives are irregular (see their declension, § 444): **bōs** (c., *ox* or *cow*), **sūs** (c., *boar* or *sow*), **Iuppiter** (m., *Jupiter*). **Iūs iūrandum** (n., *oath*) has both parts declined; *e.g.* its gen. sing. is **iūris iūrandī**, and it has no plural. **Āēr** (m., *air*) and **aethēr** (m., *upper air*) have Greek forms **āëra** and **aethera** in the acc. sing. Otherwise they are regular (gen. **āëris, aetheris**, etc.).

The following substantives have nom. sing. differing unusually from the base:—

carō (f.), *flesh*, gen. sing. **carnis.**
cucumis (m.), *cucumber*, gen. sing. **cucumeris.**
femur (n.), *thigh*, gen. sing. **femoris** or **feminis.**
iecur (n.), *liver*, gen. sing. **iecoris** or **iecinoris.**
iter (n.), *journey*, gen. sing. **itineris.**
senex (m.), *old man*, gen. sing. **senis.**
supellex (f.), *furniture*, gen. sing. **supellectilis.**

325. The declension of the following substantives is defective :—

(F.) *Aid* (in sing.), *resources* (in pl.).

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	—	opēs
Acc.	opem	opēs
Gen.	opis	opum
Dat.	—	opibus
Abl.	ope	opibus

(F.) *Prayer.*

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	—	precēs
Acc.	precem	precēs
Gen.	—	precum
Dat.	precī	precibus
Abl.	prece	precibus

(F.) *Alternation.*

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	—	vicēs
Acc.	vicem	vicēs *or* vicīs
Gen.	vicis	vicium
Dat.	—	vicibus
Abl.	vice	vicibus

(F.) *Force* (in sing.), *strength* (in pl.).

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	vīs	vīrēs
Acc.	vim	vīrēs *or* vīrīs
Gen.	—	vīrium
Dat.	—	vīribus
Abl.	vī	vīribus

Nēmō (c.), *no one*, has acc. **nēminem** and dat. **nēminī**. The gen. is supplied by **nullīus** and the abl. by **nullō** or **nullā**.

Nom. sing. **fors** (f.), *chance* ; abl. sing. **forte**.

Abl. sing. **sponte** (f.), *choice*.

(*b*) Adjectives.

326. A few adjectives of one termination for all genders in the nom. sing. with base ending in a short syllable are declined like I-substantives. Such are **pār** (*equal*), **anceps** (*wavering*), **praeceps** (*headlong*), **simplex** (*simple*), **duplex** (*double*), etc., the gen. sing. being **paris, ancipitis, praecipitis, simplicis, duplicis.**

The Accusative (*continued*).

(B) Accusative of the Internal Object.

327. The following uses have already been mentioned :—

(i) The **internal** accusative of the **thing**, as well as the **external** accusative of the **person**, with verbs denoting *asking, teaching* (§ 56). In the first example in § 56 **puerōs** is the external object, to which the teaching is applied ; **elementa** defines the nature of the teaching itself.

The internal accusative is retained when these verbs are used in the passive (§ 57).

(ii) The accusative expressing extent of space (§ 222).

(iii) The accusative expressing extent of time (§ 223).

328. (iv) Intransitive verbs may have as an accusative of the internal object a substantive expressing something allied to or contained in the notion of the verb. This is often called the cognate accusative, a name especially applicable when the root of the noun is the same as that of the verb.

vītam vixī	*I have lived my life*
amphora vīnum redolet	*the pitcher smells of wine*

329. (v) The extent of the action of any verb may be expressed by a neuter pronoun in the accusative.

Philippī regnum officere aliquid lībertātī vestrae vidētur	*Philip's power seems to infringe in some way upon your liberty*

NOTE.—**Nihil** (*in no respect*), **cētera** (*in other respects*) are similarly used.

330. (vi) The accusative of respect with an intransitive or passive verb (or adjective) is a special variety of the above. It is used in poetry to denote the part affected by the action which is expressed by the verb or implied in the adjective.

tremit artūs	*he trembles in his limbs*
stat saucia pectus	*she stands, wounded in the breast*

Obs. In prose a (local) ablative (§ 368) would be used.

331. (vii) The accusative neuter of an adjective is sometimes used in poetry instead of an adverb to modify an intransitive verb or adjective; this use is known as the adverbial accusative.

dulce rīdentem Lalagēn amābō, dulce loquentem	*I will love the sweetly-smiling, sweetly-speaking Lalage*

READING LESSON 35.

Suicide rather than Surrender.

Maior pars senatus, multis saepe bellis expertam populi Romani clementiam haud diffidentes sibi quoque placabilem fore, legatos ad dedendam Romanis Capuam decreverunt, miseruntque. Vibium Virrium septem et viginti ferme senatores domum secuti sunt, epulatique cum eo; et quantum facere potuerant, alienatis mentibus vino ab imminentis sensu mali, venenum omnes sumpserunt: inde dimisso convivio, dextris inter se datis, ultimoque complexu, lacrimantes suum patriaeque casum, alii, ut eodem rogo cremarentur, manserunt; alii domos digressi sunt. Impletae cibis vinoque venae minus efficacem in maturanda morte vim veneni fecerunt. Itaque noctem totam plerique eorum et diei insequentis partem cum animam egissent, omnes tamen, priusquam aperirentur hostibus portae, exspiraverunt.—*From Livy*, XXVI. 14.

EXERCISE 35.

1. If this happened, I should go away into the country at once. 2. Caesar waited for three days to see if he could draw the enemy out of their camp. 3. The Indians can stand for twenty-four hours in the same place. 4. If I reach the camp by night, the enemy will sleep their last sleep there. 5. I was kept-in-ignorance-of this till the opportunity had passed by. 6. Leading the vanguard up to the walls of the town he bade them fix their scaling-ladders. 7. Caesar moved his camp across the river far beyond Alesia. 8. While there is life there is hope, they say: so I did not cease to hope so long as Pompeius was in Italy. 9. When you come to the city of Faesulae, you will behold a great part of Etruria. 10. The Romans used to think that a horse's blood could make men mad.

11. The ambassadors said they would carry these terms back and after the tenth day would return to Rome. 12. About four thousand soldiers were killed in this battle. 13. After we cease to do things that ought to be praised, praise itself becomes distasteful to our ears. 14. He ordered Quintus to come to my house and bring the two letters written to me by Pomponius. 15. I shall not be able to go to Rome with you, as I have lost my money. 16. Who is there that has looked at this earth who does not believe that it was fashioned by divine reason? 17. When Hannibal had been conquered by the Roman consul, he sent one of his friends to Carthage to ask the Senate whether he ought to fight. 18. So died Darius at the age of fifty, after a reign of nearly six years. 19. A rumour has reached Puteoli that Ptolemaeus has returned to his kingdom. 20. Cassius betook himself to Syracuse to rest, as he used to say himself, not to do business.

LESSON **36.**

The Genitive.

332. The **genitive** has been already described (§ 25) as the case which generally indicates the relation of one substantive to another substantive (or occasionally to an adjective), this relation often corresponding to that indicated by the English preposition *of*. The usages of the genitive may be classified as—

(**A**) **Attributive genitive,** the substantive in the genitive standing in the relation of **attribute** to another substantive;

(**B**) **Objective genitive,** used with verbs, as well as with substantives and adjectives, the substantive in the genitive being the **object of** action expressed by an intransitive verb or implied in a substantive or adjective;

(**C**) **Predicative genitive,** already mentioned (§ 58).

(A) Attributive Genitive.

333. (i) The genitive of the **possessor** or **author** has already been mentioned (§ 25).

Note.—The substantive on which the genitive depends is sometimes omitted, if easily understood; cp. **ventum erat** (§ 79) **ad Vestae,** *we had come to the temple of Vesta.*

334. (ii) The **subjective genitive** denotes the subject of the verbal action implied in the substantive on which it is dependent. It is really a subdivision of the possessive genitive.

odiō deōrum mortuus est	*he died through the gods' hatred of him*
hostium fuga nostrīs gaudiō erat	*the enemy's flight delighted our men*

Obs. 1. The subordinate actions implied in the previous examples are **deī** (subject) **ōderant, hostēs** (subject) **fūgērunt.**

Obs. 2. The corresponding possessive adjective is used instead of the subjective genitive of a personal pronoun; *e.g.* **tua et Caesaris īra,** *the anger felt by you and Caesar.*

335. (iii) The **genitive of material** expresses that of which or in which a thing consists.

rērum cōpia verbōrum cōpiam gignit	*abundance of matter produces abundance of words*
magnās peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiās cōgēbant	*they were collecting large forces of infantry and cavalry*

336. (iv) The **genitive of quality** expresses some inherent or leading characteristic which serves to classify the substantive on which it is dependent. This genitive is always accompanied by an attribute.

ingenuī vultūs puer	*a boy of ingenuous look*
vir maximae gravitātis	*a man of the greatest dignity*

337. (v) A special use of the genitive of quality is that which expresses **the value** set upon a thing; the words commonly so used are the following:—

tantī, *worth so much*	**quantī,** (*worth so much*) *as*
magnī, *of great worth*	**parvī,** *of little worth*
plūris, *of greater worth*	**minōris,** *of less worth*
maximī, *of very great worth*	**minimī,** *of very little worth*
assis, *worth an* **ās** (*a penny*)	**floccī,** *worth a straw* (lit. *a flock of wool*)
nihilī, *worth nothing*	

litterae tantī nōn sunt quantī virtūs	*learning is not of so great worth as goodness*
hōc floccī nōn aestimō	*I don't care a straw for this*
quinquāgintā sestertiōs solvī; sed plūris id rēvērā stat (*or* **est**)	*I paid fifty sesterces; but the article is really of greater value*

Obs. 1. **Tantī, magnī, plūris, minōris** are also used to express *price* (§ 375).

Obs. 2. **Aestimō** is also constructed with the ablative.

338. (vi) **The partitive genitive** (called also the **genitive of the divided whole**) expresses the **whole** of which that denoted by the substantive (on which it depends) forms a **part**. It is used in dependence on words expressing **quantity**, especially **adjectives** and **pronouns** in the **neuter singular** and **adverbs**.

pars hominum aufugērunt	*some of the men escaped*
conscii erant trīgintā hominēs populī Rōmānī levissimī	*thirty men, the most worthless scamps among the Roman people, were in the secret*

The partitive genitive of an adjective of the first class (§ 19) is often used substantivally after **aliquid, multum, nihil**, etc.

nihil novī dē Caesare audīvī	*I have heard nothing new about Caesar*
eō miseriārum vēneram, ut quid agerem nescīrem	*to such a point of wretchedness had I come that I did not know what to do*
ubi terrārum latet Antōnius?	*where in the world is Antonius hiding?*
minus habeō vīrium quam vestrum utervīs	*I have less strength than either of you*

(B) Objective Genitive.

339. The **objective genitive** is used with certain verbs, substantives, and adjectives to express the **direction or object** of the action denoted by the verb or implied in the substantive or adjective. The verbs used with the objective genitive are such as bear the following meanings:—

(*a*) *Feel pity* (**misereor**) or some emotion expressed by one of the impersonal verbs **miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet** (§ 94).

miserēre meī, miserēre dolōrum	*pity me, pity my grief*
taedet mē iniūriārum tuārum	*I am weary of your insults*

Obs. The verb (com-)**miseror**, 1 (*I pity*), takes the accusative.

(*b*) *Remind* (**admoneō**, 2), *remember* (**meminī**, § 518), *forget* (**oblīviscor**, 3).

Catilīna eum admonēbat egestātis	*Catilina reminded him of his poverty*
cūr beneficiōrum oblīvisceris, meministī facinorum?	*why do you forget good deeds and remember bad ones?*

(*c*) *Accuse* (**accūsō**, 1, **arguō**, 3, etc.), *acquit* (**absolvō**, 3), *condemn* (**damnō**, 1, **condemnō**, 1), the *crime* being in the genitive case.

pecūniae publicae est condemnātus	*he was condemned for appropriating public money*
māiestātis (*or sometimes* **dē māiestāte**) **absolūtus est**	*he was acquitted of treason*
mē timōris arguunt	*they accuse me of fear*
capitis damnāre	*to condemn on a capital charge* (or *condemn to death*)

(*d*) Occasionally verbs of *lacking* (**indigeō**, 2) or *filling* (**impleō**, 2) take this genitive, but the ablative is more common.

implentur veteris Bacchī	*they are filled with old wine*
negōtiātōrēs aeris saepe indigent	*merchants are often in want of money*

340. Substantives and adjectives corresponding to verbs included in the preceding section are construed with an objective genitive, such as **memoria** (*memory*), **memor** (*mindful*), **plēnus** (*full*), as well as some others, such as—

amor, *love* (*for*)	**avidus**, *greedy* (*of*)
cūra, *care* (*of*)	**edax**, *devouring*
fuga, *flight* (*from*)	**patiens**, *enduring* (*of*)
odium, *hatred* (*of*)	**perītus**, *skilled* (*in*)

taedium vītae sentit	*he feels the weariness of* (or *weary of*) *life*
Lucrētius odiō deōrum sua carmina scripsit	*Lucretius wrote his poems from hatred of the gods*
fuga ista mortis turpis est	*that flight of yours from death is disgraceful*

Obs. The *objective* use of the genitive in the last two examples—implying the statements **Lucrētius deōs** (object) **ōderat** and **mortem** (object) **fugis**—is to be distinguished from the subjective use of the genitive in the examples in § 334 (see *Obs.*).

341. **Similis** (*like*), **dissimilis** (*unlike*) are used with a genitive or dative of that with which their substantives

are compared. A **person** is more commonly in the genitive; a **thing** is in the genitive or dative indifferently.

valdē similis erat patris	*he was certainly like his father*
ōrātiō fuit precibus quam iurgiō similior	*his speech was more like prayer than quarrelling*
vērī simile est Nerviōs superātum īrī	*it is likely that the Nervii will be defeated*

342. The following adjectives are often used with their substantives to specify certain parts *of* those substantives, and are so translated in English:—

extrēmus	*the end of*
infimus *or* **īmus**	*the bottom of*
medius	*the middle of*
prīmus	*the beginning of*
reliquus	*the rest of*
summus	*the top of*

Examples: **summus** (**īmus**) **mons**, *the top* (*the bottom*) *of the mountain*; **prīmum vēr**, *the beginning of spring.*

343. A genitive (*a*) of the possessor or author, or (*b*) of quality, may be used predicatively.

(*a*) **omnia quae mulieris fuērunt virī fīunt**	*all that was the woman's becomes the husband's*
(*b*) **Catō vir est maximae gravitātis**	*Cato is a man of the greatest dignity.*

Obs. Note such expressions as **hominis est errāre**, *to err is human.*

READING LESSON 36.

A.—Hypsipyle deserted by Jason curses Medea, his New Love.

Utque ego destituor coniux materque duorum,
Cum totidem natis orba sit illa viro.
Nec male parta diu teneat peiusque relinquat:
Exsulet et toto quaerat in orbe fugam.
Quam fratri germana fuit miseroque parenti
Filia, tam natis, tam sit acerba viro.
Cum mare, cum terras consumpserit, aera* temptet:
Erret inops, exspes, caede cruenta sua.

Ovid, Heroides, VI. 155-62.

B.—The Curse Fulfilled.

Medea, having killed Jason's new bride and one of her own sons, is standing on the housetop with her other son.

Med. O placida tandem numina, O festum diem,
O nuptialem! Vade: perfectum est scelus,
Vindicta nondum: perage, dum faciunt manus.
Quid nunc moraris, anime? Quid dubitas? Potes.
Iam cecidit ira; paenitet facti, pudet.—
Quid misera feci? Misera? paeniteat licet,
Feci.—(*Jason appears below.*) Voluptas magna me invitam subit,
Et ecce crescit. Decrat hoc unum mihi,
Spectator iste; nihil adhuc facti reor,
Quidquid sine isto fecimus sceleris, perit.
Ias. En ipsa tecti parte praecipiti imminet.
Huc rapiat ignes aliquis, ut flammis cadat
Suis perusta.

*Medea was said to have been borne from Corinth to Athens in a car drawn by winged dragons.

MED. Congere extremum tuis
Natis, Iason, funus ac tumulum strue.
Seneca, Medea, 985-998.

EXERCISE 36.

1. He said that I would go with him to the top of the mound. 2. He is said to have been a man of great talent, but no honour. 3. The Italian farmers used to plough with two oxen each. 4. It is very easy to forget everything you have learned. 5. There were a hundred thousand Carpetani together with auxiliaries, consisting of Vaccaei. 6. The remembrance of your good deeds makes me ashamed of my poverty. 7. My conscience (*mens conscia recti*) is of more value to me than the words of you all. 8. You cannot conceal from me the fact that the fields are in want of water. 9. Do not go up Vesuvius; the top of the mountain is sending out a fiery smoke. 10. We are prepared to die, provided that we live in the memory of posterity. 11. Has he been persuaded to forget his old friends and his own house? 12. The enemy's fear has put them to flight; they could not have been conquered by our strength alone.

13. A great heap of corn, if you take away now one, now another grain, will become after a short time a little heap. 14. He says that he flattered the mob in order that you might be safer. 15. They held their shields in-front-of them in order that they might seem to have thrown away their swords. 16. I always think that the goddess Proserpina dies at the beginning of autumn and returns to life at the end of spring. 17. Although these soldiers were sent-back to Rome by Pyrrhus, ambassadors accompanied them in order to buy-back the captives. 18. The Roman people, like all the others, was divided into two parts, the rich and poor: the latter were called the *plebs*, the former the "fathers." 19. The common people, faithless towards those who pleased them before, is always looking for something new. 20. Is there anything here that reminds one of [say, "that is like"] Milo? The violence of Milo had always this object [say, "was . . . this"], that Clodius should not overturn the state by his violence, seeing that he could not be accused of any crime before the judges.

LESSON **37.**

Irregularities of the fourth and fifth declensions; the dative.

Irregularities of the Fourth and Fifth Declensions.

344. Fourth Declension.—**Dative and Ablative Plural.** The following generally have dat. and abl. pl. ending in **-ubus** instead of **-ibus**: **acus**, *needle*; **arcus**, *bow*; **artus**, *limb*; **lacus**, *lake*; **partus**, *birth*; **tribus**, *tribe*.

Fifth Declension.—**Diēs**, *day*, and **rēs**, *matter, circumstance*, are the only substantives of this declension that have gen., dat., and abl. plural. In **respublica** (f.), *commonwealth*, each part of the word is declined, **rēs** and **publica**, fem. of the adjective **publicus**, **-a**, **-um**, *public*.

The Dative.

345. The uses of the dative fall under two main headings:—

(A) Dative of the **indirect object**—*i.e.* the person or thing *affected* by the action of the verb;

(B) **Predicative** dative, indicating that which a person or thing serves as or results in.

(A) Dative of the Indirect Object.

346. (i) The **dative of the indirect object** as constructed with certain transitive (§ 26) and some intransitive (§ 66) verbs (including the compounds of **sum**, § 500) has been already mentioned, as well as the impersonal use of those intransitive verbs in the passive (§ 80).

Note 1.—Many verbs, transitive or intransitive, compounded with the following, are used with a dative of the indirect object: **ad, ante, bene, cum, dē, in, inter, male, ob, post, prae, re-, satis, sub, super.**

manum immittit habēnīs	*he puts his hand on the reins*
ōtium labōrī antepōnō	*I prefer rest to work*

NOTE 2.—The dative of the indirect object is found with some verbs of *taking away*, e.g. **adimō**, 3, and some compounds with **dē** (*e.g.* **dētrahō**, 3), **ē** (*e.g.* **ēripiō**, 3). The ablative, however, with a preposition is also used with the verbs compounded with **dē** and **ē**.

adimam (*or* **ēripiam**) **tibi istās compedēs**	*I will take those fetters away from you*
fortūna mē ex illō perīculō ēripuit	*Fortune has rescued me from that danger*

NOTE 3.—A name is assimilated in case to the dative substantive denoting the person to whom the name is given.

nōmen illī inditum est Gāiō (*or* **Gāius**)	*the name Gaius was given to him*
nōmen illī erat Pausaniae	*his name was Pausanias*

NOTE 4.—**Nūbō**, 3, *I am being married*, is constructed with a dative of indirect object. It is used of the woman and is usually translated by the transitive *marry*; compare

Calpurnia Caesarī nupsit	*Calpurnia married Caesar*
Caesar Calpurniam (**in mātrimōnium**) **duxit**	*Caesar married Calpurnia*

347. Certain verbs are differently rendered according as they are constructed with a **direct object** in the accusative or an **indirect object** in the dative; the commonest are **caveō**, **metuō** and **timeō**, **consulō**, **moderor** and **temperō**.

cavē canem, *beware of the dog*	**cavē tibi**, *look out for yourself*
metuunt dominum servī, *the slaves fear their master*	**metue tuīs**, *be anxious about your people*
poenam timeō, *I fear punishment*	**urbī timeō**, *I am anxious about the city*
consulō ōrāculum, *I consult the oracle*	**consule fāmae tuae**, *have regard to your reputation*
moderor equum, *I manage a horse*	**moderor īrae**, *I set bounds to my anger*
Iuppiter mundum temperat, *Jupiter rules the world*	**temperō linguae**, *I restrain my tongue*

348. (ii) The dative **with adjectives** has already been mentioned (§ 26): such adjectives (and adverbs) are those implying *likeness, nearness,* etc. **Similis** and **dissimilis,** however, are constructed with genitive or dative (§ 341), while **aptus** (*fit*) and **idōneus** (*suitable*) are used either with the dative or with **ad** and the accusative.

Trinobantēs proximī sunt Britannōrum Gallīs	*the Trinobantes are the nearest of the Britains to the Gauls*
locus castrīs idōneus dēligēbātur	*a place was being chosen suitable for a camp*
calamus hīc nōn est ad scrībendum aptus	*this pen is not fit to write with*

349. (iii) The **dative of advantage** or **disadvantage** is a development of the dative of the indirect object; it is commonly rendered by *for* or *in honour of.*

scrībit ōrātiōnēs multīs	*he writes speeches for many people*
dūcit avō turmās	*he leads squadrons in honour of his grandfather*

350. (iv) The **ethic** dative is a variety of the dative of advantage; it consists of a personal pronoun in the dative, indicating that the statement is one concerning the person in question.

quid mihi Celsus agit?	*how, I ask, is Celsus?*

351. Closely allied to this is the dative expressing the person whose **point of view** is assumed by the writer.

dextrā iacet eī quī ā Peloponnēsō in Atticam iter faciat	*it lies on the right for one going from the Peloponnese to Attica*

352. (v) The **possessive** dative is occasionally used instead of the genitive with substantives denoting parts of the body.

illī dūra quiēs oculōs urget	*stern rest is upon his eyes*
Caesarī sē ad pedēs prōiēcērunt	*they threw themselves at Caesar's feet*

Obs. The dative after **sum** is similarly used in a possessive sense, *e.g.*

sunt nōbīs mītia pōma	*we have ripe apples*

353. (vi) The dative is used to express the **agent**, *i.e.* the person by whom an action is performed:—

(*a*) **regularly** with the **gerund** (§ 226), **gerundive** (§ 227), or verbal adjective in **-bilis**; (*b*) sometimes with the **perfect participle** (with or without **sum**); (*c*) **occasionally** (in poetry) with other tenses.

(*a*) **multīs ille bonīs flēbilis occidit**	*he died, lamented by many good men*
(*b*) **cui nōn dictus Hylās?**	*by whom has Hylas not been sung?*
(*c*) **honesta bonīs virīs quaeruntur**	*honourable things are sought by good men*

354. (vii) The dative of **purpose** or **work contemplated** indicates the use to which the subject or object of the verb is put.

decem virī lēgibus constituendīs creātī sunt	*a commission of ten was appointed to revise the laws*
locum castrīs dēlēgit	*he selected a place for his camp*
comitia consulibus creandīs habita	*elections for the consulship were held*

Obs. Except in certain phrases, as in the first example above and with **locus** and **diēs**, **ad** with the accusative is more commonly used to express purpose.

(B) Predicative Dative.

355. A large number of substantives more or less abstract in meaning (most of them implying verbal action) are used in the dative singular to denote that which a person or thing serves as or results in. A dative of the indirect object nearly always accompanies **impedīmentum** (*obstacle*), **lūdibrium** (*laughing-stock*), **odium** (*hatred*), **praesidium** (*protection*), **ūsus** (*service*).

deōrum iniūriae dīs cūrae	*insults done to the gods are the gods' concern*
hōc mihi nōn est cūrae	*I take no heed of this*
hōc magnō argumentō est mē vēra dīcere	*this is a great proof that I am speaking the truth*

cui bonō est?	*whom does it profit? for whose good is it?*
equitātum auxiliō Caesarī mīserant	*they had sent the cavalry as an aid to Caesar*

Obs. 1. The predicative dative has either no adjective or one denoting quantity (*e.g.* magnus).

Obs. 2. The verb with the predicative dative is either one of *sending* or *placing*, dō (*give*), dūcō, 3 (*consider*), habeō (*have*); or sum, eō, or the passive of one of the above verbs.

READING LESSON 37.

Two Short Battles.

Mancinus, postquam nec hostem desistere sequi nec spem vidit effugiendi esse, cohortatus suos in proelium rediit, omni parte virium impar. Itaque ipse et delecti equitum circumventi occiduntur; ceteri effuso rursus cursu Cales primum, inde prope inviis callibus ad dictatorem perfugerunt.

Eo forte die Minucius se coniunxerat Fabio: qui coniunctis exercitibus castra in viam deferunt, qua Hannibal ducturus erat. Duo inde milia hostes aberant. Postero die Poeni quod viae inter bina castra erat agmine complevere. Cum Romani sub ipso constitissent vallo, haud dubie in aequiore loco, successit tamen Poenus cum equitibus ad lacessendum hostem. Restitit suo loco Romana acies; lenta pugna, et ex dictatoris magis quam Hannibalis fuit voluntate. Ducenti ab Romanis, octingenti hostium cecidere.—*Livy*, XXII. 16.

EXERCISE 37.

1. Whom does it profit to consult the oracle of Apollo? 2. The Senate voted in favour of declaring war and of calling on the allies to supply corn. 3. Do not say that books are hateful to you, even if you prefer sport to study. 4. What prevented you being present at the battle? Were you afraid of being killed? 5. He pointed

out to the queen Servius lying there, and said that he had been murdered. 6. Whenever I make a speech he is present, and always sits by me when I recite. 7. He declared that Turnus was plotting [say, "preparing"] destruction against himself and his chiefmen. 8. Look! there is a man for you who wishes to be king of the Roman people. 9. He sent an ambassador to Divitiacus to beg him to spare himself and his men. 10. Cassius had more confidence in the loyalty than in the courage of his legions. 11. The Caelian Mount was added to the city, and in order that it might be more populously inhabited, Tullus took it as the site for his palace.

12. Those who take part in religious matters ought to be careful of their honesty. 13. "Let us resist the avarice of Greeks with the help of Greeks," said Cicero. 14. The power of free decision [*use verb*] has been altogether taken away by Gracchus from the Senate, although it had been weakened before. 15. If anyone refuses to meet Caesar as he returns to Rome, he will be having more regard to his fear than his duty. 16. If the Italians pay no attention to agriculture, the lands will lie waste, just as if an enemy had ravaged them. 17. It is very likely that we shall see the king when he passes by. 18. I do not care less what will become of [say, "of-what-kind will be"] the state after my death than what becomes of it to-day. 19. The general promised to perform a sacrifice in honour of Diana before he left the district. 20. He did not give any time for a conference, although he was asked by many to do so: he said that the Romans wished for war.

LESSON **38.**

Heteroclite substantives; the locative.

Learn the heteroclite substantives (§§ 356-7).

Heteroclite Substantives.

356. The following have singular and plural of different declensions:—

Singular.	Plural.
balne um, -ī, -ō (n.), (*private*) *bath*	**balne-ae**, -ās, -ārum, -īs (f.), *public baths*
dēlici-um, -ī, -ō (n.), *delight*	**dēlici-ae**, -ās, -ārum, -īs (f.), (1) *delight*, (2) *pet*
epul-um, -ī, -ō (n.), *banquet*	**epul-ae**, -ās, -ārum, -īs (f.)
iūger-um, -ī, -ō (n.), *acre*	**iūger-a**, -um, -ibus
vās, vās-is, -ī, -e (n.), *vessel*	**vās-a**, -ōrum, -īs

357. Some substantives (mostly names of trees) belonging to the second declension have also fourth declension forms; *e.g.* **laurus**, *bay*, has in the singular gen. **laurī** or **laurūs**, abl. **laurō** or **laurū**; and in the plural nom. **laurī** or **laurūs**, acc. **laurōs** or **laurūs**. **Senātus**, *senate*, belongs to the fourth declension, but sometimes has gen. sing. **senātī**.

Domus (f.), *house*, belongs to the fourth declension, but prefers second declension forms in abl. sing. (**domō**), acc. pl. (**domōs**), and gen. pl. (**domōrum**), though even there fourth declension forms are occasionally found. The locative is **domī**.

Rhyme:—**Domō** for ablative we see,
Domōs, domōrum commonly;
Bear locative **domī** in mind;
The rest like **gradus** is declined.

Some substantives belong to both first and fifth declensions; *e.g.* **luxuria** or **luxuriēs**, *luxury*; **māteria** or **māteriēs**, *timber*. **Requiēs**

(f.), *rest*, has third and fifth declension forms, and is thus declined in the singular only, the plural not being in use :—

N. V.	requi-ēs
Acc.	requi-em *or* requiēt-em
Gen.	requiēt-is
Dat.	——
Abl.	requi-ē *or* requiēt-e

Plebs, gen. **plēbis** (f.), *common people*, sometimes has nom. sing. **plēbēs** and gen. sing. **plēbeī**.

Vesper (m.), *evening*, has in the singular acc. **vesperum**, gen. vesperī or **vesperis**, abl. **vespere** or **vesperō**, locative **vesperī**; the plural is wanting. There is also a first declension form **vespera** (f.), which is fully declined in the singular.

HETEROGENEOUS SUBSTANTIVES (*i.e.* WITH PLURAL DIFFERING IN GENDER FROM THE SINGULAR).

358. The following are the more important words of this class :—

Singular.	Plural.
carbasus, -ī (f.), *linen*	carbasa, -ōrum (n.), *sails*
diēs, -ēī (f. or m.), *a day, set time*	
diēs, -ēī (m.), *a day* (as a division of time)	diēs, -ērum (m.), *days*
frēnum, -ī (n.), *bridle*	frēnī, -ōrum (m.) frēna, -ōrum (n.)
iocus, -ī (m.), *jest*	iocī, iocōrum (m.) ioca, iocōrum (n.)
locus, -ī (m.), *place*	locī, -ōrum (m.), *places* loca, -ōrum (n.), *region*
rastrum, -ī (n.), *harrow*	rastrī, -ōrum (m.) rastra, -ōrum (n.)

SUBSTANTIVES WITH SPECIAL MEANINGS IN THE PLURAL.

359. The following are the more important :—

Singular.	Plural.
aedēs, -is (f.), *temple*	aedēs, -ium, *house*
aqua, -ae (f.), *water*	aquae, -ārum, *medicinal springs*
auxilium, -ī (n.), *help*	auxilia, -ōrum, *auxiliaries*
bonum, -ī (n.), *good*	bona, -ōrum, *goods, property*
carcer, -eris (m.), *prison*	carcerēs, -um, *starting place* (in a race-course)
Castrum, -ī (n.), *Fort* (in names of places)	castra, -ōrum, *camp*

Singular.	Plural.
comitium, -ī (n.), *place of assembly*	**comitia**, -ōrum, *elective assembly, election*
cōpia, -ae (f.), *plenty*	**cōpiae**, -ārum, *supplies* or *troops*
fīnis, -is (m.), *end*	**fīnēs**, -ium, *territory*
fortūna, -ae (f.), *fortune*	**fortūnae**, -ārum, *possessions*
grātia, -ae (f.), *favour*	**grātiae**, -ārum, *thanks, the Graces*
hortus, -ī (m.), *(kitchen-)garden*	**hortī**, -ōrum, *pleasure-grounds*
impedimentum, -ī (n.), *hindrance*	**impedīmenta**, -ōrum, *baggage*
littera, -ae (f.), *letter* (of the alphabet)	**litterae**, -ārum, *letter* (*epistle*) or *literature*
lūdus, -ī (m.), *game* or *school*	**lūdī**, -ōrum, *public games*
opera, -ae (f.), *work*	**operae**, -ārum, *workmen*
opem (acc.), -is (f.), *aid*	**opēs**, -um, *resources*
pars, -tis (f.), *part*	**partēs**, -ium, *a part* (in a play), *party* (in politics)
rostrum, -ī (n.), *beak of a ship*	**rostra**, -ōrum, *platform in the Forum which was adorned with the beaks of ships*
sāl, salis (m. or n.), *salt*	**salēs**, -um (m.), *witticisms*
tabula, -ae (f.), *board, picture*	**tabulae**, -ārum (f.), *writing-tablets*
vīs (f.), *force*	**vīrēs**, -ium, *strength*

Substantives Used in the Plural Only.

360. The following are very common :—

arma, -ōrum (n.), *armour*
dīvitiae, -ārum (f.), *riches*
indūtiae, -ārum (f.), *truce*
līberī, -ōrum (m.), *children*
mānēs, -ium (m.), *spirits of the dead*
moenia, -ium (n.), *city walls*
tenebrae, -ārum (f.), *darkness*

Many names of towns are plural in form ; *e.g.* **Athēnae**, -ārum (f.), *Athens* ; **Gabiī**, -ōrum (m.), *Gabii* ; **Syrācūsae**, -ārum (f.), *Syracuse*. Some proper names are singular or plural, as **Pergamum**, -ī (n.), or **Pergama**, -ōrum (n.), *the citadel of Troy*. So **Tartarus**, -ī (m.), or **Tartara**, -ōrum (n.), *Tartarus, the infernal regions*.

The Locative.

361. The **locative** case has, except in the words and classes of words enumerated below, become merged in the ablative ; accordingly only those usages in which the locative has a form distinct from that of the ablative are here treated.

(A) Locative of place.

The **place where** something happens is expressed by the locative of—

(i) names of **towns** and **small islands** belonging to the first and second declension and singular in form (*e.g.* **Rōma, Corinthus, Lānuvium**), in which case the locative is identical in form with the genitive;

(ii) a few names of **towns of the third declension singular**, in which the locative ends in **-ī**, *e.g.* **Carthāgō**, *Carthage*, of which the locative is **Carthāginī**;

(iii) a few other words, of which the most common are **domus** (*home*), **humus** (*ground*), **rūs** (*country*), **bellum** (*war*), **mīlitia** (*warfare*), which have locatives **domī, humī, rūrī, bellī, mīlitiae** respectively. **Animī** (locative of **animus**, *mind*) and **cordī** (locative of **cor**, *heart*) are also occasionally used with verbs and adjectives.

aestāte Rōmae (Ephesī, etc.) numquam maneō	*I never remain at Rome (Ephesus, etc.) in summer*
rēs Rōmānae domī mīlitiaeque tranquillae sunt	*the Roman world is at peace, at home and abroad*
aeger sum animī	*I am sick at heart* (i.e. *in my mind*)
mihi es cordī	*you are dear to me*

Obs. In English the name of a place is often used with the preposition *at* after a verb of motion to supplement a prepositional phrase of motion, e.g. *he came to me at Rome.* If motion to Rome is implied, the locative cannot be used, and the above sentence would be translated **ad mē Rōmam** (§ 316) **vēnit.**

(B) Locative of Time.

Two locative forms denoting **time when** an action happens are used in Latin: **lūcī** (*in daylight*) and **vesperī** (*in the evening*), the locatives of **lux** (*light*) and **vesper** (*evening*) respectively.

lūcī vēnit, vesperī abiit	*he came while it was light and went away in the evening*

READING LESSON 38.

A GREEK SPY IS BROUGHT INTO THE TROJAN CAMP.

Ecce, manus iuvenem interea post terga revinctum
Pastores magno ad regem clamore trahebant
Dardanidae, qui se ignotum venientibus ultro
(Hoc ipsum ut strueret, Troiamque aperiret Achivis)
Obtulerat, fidens animi, atque in utrumque paratus,
Seu versare dolos, seu certae occumbere morti.
Undique visendi studio Troiana iuventus
Circumfusa ruit, certantque illudere capto.
Accipe nunc Danaum insidias, et crimine ab uno
Disce omnes.
Namque, ut conspectu in medio turbatus, inermis,
Constitit, atque oculis Phrygia agmina circumspexit:
"Heu, quae nunc tellus," inquit, "quae me aequora possunt
Accipere? Aut quid iam misero mihi denique restat?
Cui neque apud Danaos usquam locus, et super ipsi
Dardanidae infensi poenas cum sanguine poscunt."
Quo gemitu conversi animi, compressus et omnis
Impetus. *Vergil, Aeneid*, II. 57-74.

NOTE.—**Troianus, Phrygius** = *Trojan;* **Dardanidae** = *the Trojans* (descendants of Dardanus); **Danai, Achivi** = *the Greeks.*

EXERCISE 38.

1. I do not care whether my sword is useful or not. 2. In the summer the public baths were so full of swimmers that I always bathed in my [private] bath at my Formian villa. 3. For some months there was fighting at Tusculum. 4. With these soldiers he came to Domitius at Corfinium. 5. He threatened to prevent them from going away in the evening. 6. At the public games the shouts of the nobles and of the common people could be heard across the

Tiber. 7. In some places jests are not welcome. 8. Caesar left the river Axona and advanced into the territory of the Nervii. 9. You ask me to describe for you my uncle's death, that you may be able to relate it more truthfully for posterity. I will gladly attempt what you propose. 10. You should plough on the sixth day of the month, and afterwards you should exercise your oxen for many days.

11. I have very often heard Quintus Maximus say that his mind was kindled to virtue when he looked at the images of his ancestors. 12. Labienus left at Agedincum the legions which had lately arrived from Italy, and started for Lutetia with four. 13. Cicero remained at Rhodes for many months in order to learn the art of speaking. 14. We must take care that we arrive at Corinth before Philippus has started away from there. 15. The rivers which flow through the midst of Sicily are so swollen with rains that it is dangerous to cross them. 16. The Stoics believed that a wise man could be happy even amid the greatest pains of body. 17. I do not care whether you go to Tibur or stay at Arpinum. 18. Would you rather be a slave at Rome than a king at Aricia? 19. He did not take the apple from his brother, but from his brother's garden. 20. Scipio started from Spain to seek the friendship of Syphax [*-acis*], and sailed to Africa with two ships.

LESSON 39.

Greek substantives; the ablative.

Learn the declension of **Aenēās, Tȳdīdēs, Ēlectrā, Phoebē** (§ 148), **Dēlos, rhododendron** (§ 449), **lampas, Tēthys, tigris, ēchō** (§ 450), **Sōcratēs, Atreūs** (§ 451).

Greek Substantives.

362. Greek proper names and other Greek substantives, when used in Latin, are sometimes declined like Latin words, but often retain the Greek inflexions.

N. B.—The Latin forms are given in Part II. only where no distinctive Greek form exists, but are in many other instances in use; *e.g.* **Ēlectrā** has accusative **Ēlectrān** or **Ēlectram**.

363. Masculine patronymics (denoting descent from a parent or ancestor) end in **-adēs, -idēs, -īdēs**, and are declined like **Tȳdīdēs**; the corresponding feminine patronymics end in **-as, -is, -ēis**, and are declined like **lampas**. Examples: **Thestiadēs**, *son of Thestius*; **Thestias**, *daughter of Thestius*.

The Ablative.

364. The three uses of the ablative, **local, instrumental,** and **ablative proper**, have already been mentioned (§ 27).

(A) Local Ablative.

365. The usages of the ablative which fall under the heading of "local" denote (1) **the place where** an action is performed, (2) the **time when** an action is performed.

366. (1) **Place where** an action is performed is expressed in prose by the ablative without a preposition only in the case of—

(*a*) **names of towns or small islands** belonging to the **third** declension or (if **plural** in form) to the **first** or **second** declension;

(*b*) substantives qualified by **medius**, *middle of*, or **tōtus**, *the whole of*;

(*c*) **terrā, marī** (used in connection), *by land, by sea*;
dextrā, *on the right*; **laevā**, *on the left*;
parte, partibus (always with an attribute), from **pars**, *part*;
regiōne (with attribute or genitive), from **regiō**, *direction*.

(*a*) **Athēnīs (Tībure) paucōs diēs mansit**	*he stayed at Athens (Tibur) for a few days*
(*b*) **Rōmānī forum mediā urbe constituērunt**	*the Romans set up their forum (or market-place) in the midst of the city*
tōtā urbe (*or* **per tōtam urbem**) **clāmātur**	*there are shouts throughout the city*
(*c*) **ōrātiō stulta est multīs locīs**	*the speech is in many passages foolish*
utrāque parte Tiberis populātōrēs oppressit	*on each side of the Tiber he crushed the plunderers*
terrā marīque bellum comparat	*he prepares war by land and sea*

Obs. The poets freely employ the local ablative without a preposition, *e.g.* **sōla domō maeret vacuā**, *she mourns alone in the empty house.*

367. With the foregoing exceptions (§ 366) **place** where must be expressed by the **ablative** with a preposition (cp. § 27).

NOTE.—If a substantive (*e.g.* **urbs**, *city*; **oppidum**, *town*) stands in apposition to the name of a town in the locative or in the ablative, the preposition **in** is used with the ablative of that substantive; *e.g.* **Tībure habitō, in urbe Ītaliae pulcherrimā**, *I live at Tibur, the most beautiful city in Italy.*

368. The ablative is used to limit the application of a substantive, adjective, or verb. This usage is called the **ablative of respect**, and falls under the general heading of "**local**" ablative.

nēmō cum Pompeiō dignitāte exaequātus est	*no one was put on a level with Pompeius in point of rank*
haec cīvitās plūrimum tōtīus Galliae equitātū valet	*this tribe is the strongest in the whole of Gaul in point of cavalry*

NOTE.—This use of the ablative is very common in dependence on words expressing *want* or *plenty*, considerably more common in fact than the objective genitive (§ 339), and invariable after careō (*I am in want*); *e.g.*

nāvēs frūmentō complēvit	*he filled the ships with corn*
nēmō cibō carēre dēbet	*no man ought to lack food*

369. The **ablative supine** is a particular instance of the ablative of respect. It is the ablative of that fourth declension verbal noun of which the other supine is the accusative, and is used only in the case of certain verbs of *saying*, *hearing*, and *knowing*, with **nascor**, 3 (**nātū**, *by birth*), and **faciō**, 3 (**factū**, *in doing*).

mīrābile dictū (audītū)	*wonderful to relate (hear)*
maximus nātū	*eldest*

370. (2) The **time when** and the **time within which** an action is performed are expressed by the ablative, as has been already mentioned (§§ 224, 225).

READING LESSON 39.

HANNIBAL ENCOURAGES HIS SOLDIERS BEFORE THE BATTLE OF THE TREBIA, 218 B.C.

Si quem animum in alienae sortis exemplo paullo ante habuistis, eundem mox in aestimanda fortuna vestra habueritis, vicimus, milites: neque enim spectaculum modo illud, sed quaedam imago vestrae condicionis erat. Ac nescio, num maiora vincula maioresque necessitates vobis quam captivis vestris fortuna circumdederit. Dextra laevaque duo maria claudunt, nullam nobis, ne ad effugium

quidem, navem habentibus: contra Padus amnis, maior Padus ac violentior Rhodano; ab tergo Alpes urgent, vix integris vobis ac vigentibus transitae. Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites, est, ubi primum hosti occurristis. Et eadem fortuna, quae necessitatem pugnandi imposuit, praemia vobis ea victoribus proponit, quibus ampliora homines ne ab dis quidem immortalibus optare solent. Quidquid Romani partum congestumque possident, id omne vestrum cum ipsis dominis futurum est. In hanc tam opimam mercedem cum dis bene iuvantibus arma capite.—*Livy*, XXI. 43.

EXERCISE 39.

1. The ambassadors returned a few days afterwards without having made a treaty. 2. The Carthaginians won a great victory against the Romans at Cannae. 3. I was staying in Athens, the most beautiful city in the world (*use gen.*). 4. In your judgment when did Carbo begin to be dangerous to the State? 5. The Athenians thought that they had destroyed philosophy also when they had killed Socrates. 6. Of the Greek orators I prefer Demosthenes to Lysias, of ours Crassus and Cicero to the Gracchi and Cato. 7. The horses were wonderful to see as they leapt over the mound. 8. I will now describe the most remarkable of all the wars that have ever been waged. 9. India is the only region in the world which produces tigers. 10. After conquering the Belgae, he started for Illyricum at the beginning of winter.

11. They say that the Argo started from the docks of Pagasae and carried a band of heroes to Phasis. 12. Caesar sailed from Gaul to the west [say, "the setting of the sun"]. 13. The settlers who had been sent from the town to Setia stayed on the way at Velitrae and plundered the goods of the inhabitants. 14. In Vergil we read how Juno brought Aeneas to Carthage by means of a great storm. 15. Before I finally settle in some [particular] place, you will receive letters from me. 16. Pherecydes, who was the first to teach the migration of souls, is said by the Greek writer Diogenes to have been born at Scyros. 17. He pitched his camp five miles away from the city, near a stream which was very difficult to cross.

18. In the eighth year after he had come to Spain Scipio was killed, on the twenty-ninth day after his brother's death. 19. He seized a suitable opportunity for sailing and weighed anchor [say, "loosed his ship"] at the third watch of the night. 20. The Potitii, taught by Evander at Pallanteum, were for many ages the priests of Hercules, until the service was handed over to some public slaves and the whole race of the Potitii perished.

LESSON **40.**

The ablative (continued); future imperative.

The Ablative (*continued*).

(B) Instrumental Ablative.

371. The **instrumental ablative** expresses either (*a*) the **instrument** or (*b*) the **accompaniment** of an action, in both of which meanings it answers to the English substantive with the preposition **with.**

(*a*) The following uses of this ablative to express the **instrument** of an action have already been mentioned:—

(i) The ordinary **ablative of the instrument** without a preposition (§ 27, *b*);

(ii) The **ablative of cause**, an extended use of the instrumental ablative (§ 67).

372. The following special usages of the ablative of the instrument should be noted:—(1) with **opus** (and occasionally **ūsus**) **est** to mean *there is need of . . .*; (2) with the adjectives **contentus** (*content* [*with*]), **frētus** (*relying* [*on*]), **laetus** (*rejoicing* [*in*]), **praeditus** (*endowed* [*with*]), **dignus** (*worthy* [*of*]), **indignus** (*unworthy* [*of*]); (3) with the verbs **ūtor**, 3 (*use*), **abūtor** (*misuse*), **fungor**, 3 (*perform*), **fruor**, 3 (*enjoy*), **dignor**, 1 (*think myself worthy of*), **potior**, 4 (*gain possession of*), **vescor**, 3 (*feed on*), **nītor**, 3 (*lean on*).

(1) **opus est mihi amīcīs**	*I have need of friends* (lit. *there is work to be done for me by means of friends*)
(2) **labōrābat Gracchus ingeniō Fulviī frētus, quī dignus erat fidūciā**	*Gracchus worked in reliance on the talents of Fulvius, who was worthy of his confidence*
(3) **mūneribus impositīs fungendum est**	*we should perform the duties imposed on us*
nītitur hastā	*he leans on a spear*

373. There are other uses of the instrumental ablative to express the **instrument with which** an action is performed:—

(iii) The ablative expresses the **road by which** a journey is performed.

ībam viā sacrā	*I was going along the Sacred Way*

374. (iv) The **ablative of measure** indicates *by how much* one thing differs from another; such difference includes *distance* in space and *interval* in time. This ablative is specially common with comparatives (as in the third and fourth examples below).

(1) **tribus mīlibus passuum ab urbe villam aedificō**	*I am building a house three miles from the city*
(2) **quinque annīs ante** (*or* **ante annīs**) **mortuus erat Attalus**	*Attalus had died five years before* (lit. *before by five years*)
(3) **dente sī nigrō fierēs turpior, crēderem**	*if you were uglier by one black tooth, I would believe in you*
(4) **multō melius quam ego scrībis**	*you write far better than I*
(5) **quō altius montem ascendimus, eō difficilius est spīrāre**	*the higher we climb the mountain, the more difficult it is to breathe*

Obs. 1. The literal translation of this last example, the idiom in which should be noted, is *by what* (*amount*) *we climb . . . by that* (*amount*) *it is more difficult . . .*

Obs. 2. This ablative of measure should be distinguished from the accusative of extent of space (§ 222), the local ablative of time (§ 224, *e.g.* **quintō annō ante**, *in the fifth year before*), and the local ablative of respect (§ 368).

375. (v) The **price** for which a thing is bought or sold is put in the ablative case, the price being regarded as the instrument of purchase.

The **ablative of price** denotes the **price** at which a thing is bought or sold.

quantī (§ 337) **frūmentum sit consīderā. Videō esse bīnīs sestertiīs**	*think what corn costs. I see it is two sesterces a measure*

Obs. **Tantī, quantī,** and the comparatives **plūris, minōris** are used to denote price instead of the corresponding ablatives; cp. § 377.

Quantī emptum?—Parvō.—Quantī ergō?—Octussibus.—Aufer.	*"What did it cost?" "Not much." "How much, I say?" "Eightpence." "Take it away."*

376. (*b*) Of the constructions of the instrumental ablative expressing the **accompaniment** of an action the following have already been mentioned:—

(vi) The **ablative of attendant circumstances**, or ablative absolute (§ 135).

(vii) The **ablative of manner** (§ 67). A substantive used in the ablative to express manner must be accompanied by either (1) the preposition **cum**, or (2) an adjective; except (3) in the case of a few words, of which the most important are

modō, dolō, silentiō, clāmōre, vī, ratiōne, fraude, arte, mōre, iniūriā, consensū, cāsū, iūre,

their meanings being *in a way, by fraud, in silence, with a shout, by force, by reason, by fraud, by art, in the manner, wrongly, by consent, by chance, rightly.*

(1) **cum celeritāte Ameriam iter fēcit**	*he travelled to Ameria with rapidity*
(2) **maximā pigritiā** (*or* **maximā cum pigritiā**) **in opere versātur**	*he goes about his work with the greatest laziness*
(3) **mōre māiōrum hōc sacrum perficimus**	*we perform this rite in the manner of our ancestors*

377. (viii) Another variety of the instrumental ablative is the **ablative of description**, which is always accompanied by an attribute, and usually expresses some temporary or external characteristic, less often a mental quality.

capillō sunt prōmissō Britannī	*the Britons are long-haired*
bonō animō nunc est	*he is now of good courage*

Obs. The genitive of quality (§ 336) which usually expresses a permanent characteristic should be contrasted. Sometimes, however, the ablative is used in the same way, *e.g.* **vir est praestantī prūdentiā** (*or* **praestantis prūdentiae**), *he is a man of remarkable foresight.*

(C) The Ablative Proper.

378. The following usages have already been mentioned:—

(i) the **ablative of the agent**, with **ā** or **ab** (§ 68);

(ii) the ablative with many prepositions implying separation from, *e.g.* **sine**, *without*, **ā**, *from* (§ 69).

379. (iii) The **place from which motion takes place** is expressed by the **ablative without a preposition** if it is denoted by the name of a town or small island, or by **domō**, *from home*, **humō**, *from the ground*, **rūre**, *from the country.*

Rōmā ad Siciliam profectus est	*he started from Rome for Sicily*
rūre ad urbem interdum eō	*I sometimes go to town from the country*

Contrast—

ā Siciliā Rōmam profectus est	*he started from Sicily for Rome*
rūs ab urbe interdum eō	*I sometimes go to the country from town*
ab urbe Corinthō (§ 110) **expulsus est**	*he was driven out of the city of Corinth*
tum Pompēius ā Rōmā aberat	*Pompeius was then away from Rome*

Obs. 1. The last example shows that the above rule applies only to expressions implying *motion.*

Obs. 2. Just as *he came to me at Rome* is translated **ad mē Rōmam vēnit** (§ 361, *Obs.*), so *he came from Gaius at Rome* is translated **ā Gāiō Rōmā vēnit**; as the verb is in each case one of motion, the locative cannot be used in Latin.

380. (iv) An **ablative of separation** without a preposition is used in dependence on words compounded with one of the prepositions **ab, dē, ex,** or the verb **cēdō**, 3 (*withdraw*), **moveō**, 2 (*I set in motion*), and a few others, though even with these a preposition is common.

Brūtus cōpiās castrīs (*or* **ē castrīs**) **ēducit**	*Brutus leads his forces out of the camp*
magistrātū sē abdicāvit	*he resigned office*

(v) A substantive denoting **person** or **family** may be used in the ablative to express **origin**.

nōbilī genere ortus est, familiā antīquissimā	*he was born of a noble race, of a most ancient family*
nāte deā	*O son of a goddess*

Obs. The name of the ancestor from whom one descends is regularly preceded by **ā** or **ab**; *e.g.* **ab illō Catōne ortus es**, *you are descended from that (famous) Cato.*

381. (vi) The ablative is used to express the **standard** of **comparison**, *i.e.* that from which the subject or object of the sentence diverges in respect of the quality denoted by a comparative adjective or adverb.

nēminem vīdī Laeliō sapientiōrem	*I have never seen anyone wiser than Laelius*
sōl māior est terrā	*the sun is greater than the earth*
pulchrius ille Rosciō cantat	*he sings more beautifully than Roscius*

Obs. **Quam**, *than* (§ 118), may always be used instead of this ablative (*e.g.* **quam Laelium, quam terra, quam Roscius** could be substituted for the ablatives in the above examples); and **quam** *must* be used when the thing compared is in a case other than the nominative or accusative, *e.g.* **Caesarī libentius quam rēgī pāreō**, *I obey Caesar more willingly than a king*: **rēge** could not be substituted for **quam rēgī**.

The Future Imperative.

382. The **future imperative** is little used except in laws and formal proclamations, and occasionally in serious admonitions.

hunc tū cavētō	*be thou ware of him*

READING LESSON 40.

The Death of the Bull.

Ecce autem duro fumans sub vomere taurus
Concidit, et mixtum spumis vomit ore cruorem,
Extremosque ciet gemitus. It tristis arator,
Maerentem abiungens fraterna morte iuvencum,
Atque opere in medio defixa relinquit aratra.
Non umbrae altorum nemorum, non mollia possunt
Prata movere animum, non qui per saxa volutus
Purior electro campum petit amnis; at ima
Solvuntur latera atque oculos stupor urget inertes,
Ad terramque fluit devexo pondere cervix.
Quid labor aut benefacta iuvant? quid vomere terras
Invertisse graves? Atqui non Massica Bacchi
Munera, non illis epulae nocuere repostae:
Frondibus et victu pascuntur simplicis herbae,
Pocula sunt fontes liquidi atque exercita cursu
Flumina, nec somnos abrumpit cura salubres.

Vergil, Georgics, III. 515-528.

EXERCISE 40.

1. If I were in need of a horse, I should not expect [say, "hope"] to buy one at so great a price. 2. Cicero, a man of great eloquence, could not prevent the prisoner being condemned to death. 3. They advanced into the middle of the city before the inhabitants collected together to hinder them. 4. The Gauls attacked the camp by night and got possession of the baggage. 5. The more I ask him for money, the greater interest he demands from me. 6. Not long before the sixth hour they arrived here from Gabii. 7. Gaius Gracchus surpassed all his friends in his courage and foresight. 8. The left ditch [say, "the ditch which was situated

on the left"] was three feet wider than the right. 9. They did this the more easily during a great part of the summer, because our ships were held back by storms. 10. It would be better to accept our terms peacefully than in anger. 11. I have finished my journey to Tralles on a long and dusty road. 12. The Germans use the horns of bulls in their feasts instead of cups.

13. Our men, having twice resisted the enemy, now began to yield from their position. 14. Country life [say, "rustic matters"] is not pleasant merely because of the meadows, but owing to gardens also and the various flowers. 15. Two messages reached me, the one that my brother was coming from Ephesus to Athens by sea, the other that he was coming by land through Macedonia. 16. I say that Verres carried off by force from Chios its most beautiful statues. 17. He reached Herdonia by long marches, and in order to strike more terror into the enemy he came with his line in battle array [*use verb*]. 18. Nor, in the memory of man, has one been found who refused to die when that [comrade] to whose friendship he had consecrated himself had been killed. 19. When the Athenians could in no way sustain [the weight of] the Persians' attack, they determined to abandon the city. 20. If I saw that I were so harshly suspected by my countrymen as you are, I would rather be lost to their sight than be the object of the hostile gazes of them all.

LESSON 41.

Revision of cases; some adverbs.

Revise the case-usages in Lessons 34-40 (see § 524).

Construction of Certain Words.

383. **Circum-dō**, irr. (*surround*), and **dōnō**, 1 (*give* or *present*), have each two constructions, (i) the accusative of the direct and dative of the indirect object, (ii) the accusative of the direct object and the instrumental ablative, what was accusative in (i) being ablative in (ii).

(i) **urbī fossam circumdedit** } *he surrounded the city*
(ii) **urbem fossā circumdedit** } *with a wall*

(i) **Caesar praedam mīlitī dōnāvit** } *Caesar presented the booty*
(ii) **Caesar praedā mīlitem dōnāvit** } *to the soldier*

Obs. We have a similar double construction with the word *present*; e.g. *Caesar presented the booty to the soldier* or *the soldier with the booty.*

384. **Mūtō**, 1 (*change, exchange*), has also two constructions: it takes an accusative of the direct object together with an ablative of price, but the accusative may be either (i) the thing *given* or (ii) the thing *taken* in exchange; the sense only determines which construction is used.

(i) **Rōmam Tībure aestāte mūtō** } *I live in Tibur in the summer instead of Rome*
(ii) **Tībur Rōmā aestāte mūtō** }

385. The construction of the impersonal verbs **interest** and **rēfert**, both meaning *it concerns*, calls for special attention.

(*a*) The **person or thing concerned**, if represented by an English personal pronoun of the first or second person or

a reflexive pronoun of the third person, is expressed by the **ablative singular feminine** of the corresponding **possessive adjective** (**meā, nostrā; tuā, vestrā; suā**); otherwise (with **interest** only) by the **genitive**.

(*b*) The **extent** to which the person or thing is concerned is expressed by a **genitive** of value (§ 337) or an accusative neuter singular (§ 329); *e.g.* **parvī, nihil, quid?**

(*c*) **That which concerns** the person or thing is expressed (with **rēfert** only) by a neuter singular pronoun (**hōc, id, illud**), or (with either verb) by an infinitive or a dependent question, or (with **interest** only) by a final clause introduced by **ut** or **nē**.

(*a*) **hōc nōn tuā rēfert**	*this does not concern you*
Cicerōnis interest Caesarem vītare	*it is Cicero's interest to avoid Caesar*
(*b*) **hōc meā magnī rēfert; sed quid tuā?**	*this concerns me greatly, but what does it matter to you?*
(*c*) **meā interest** (*or* **rēfert**) **domum meam tūtam esse** (*or* **num domus mea tūta sit**)	*it is of importance to me that my house should be safe*
Albiī interest ut Rōmae comitiīs consulāribus maneat	*it is of importance to Albius that he should remain at Rome at the time of the consular elections*

Obs. The possessive adjectives **meā, tuā**, etc., agree with **rē** (abl. sing. of **rēs**) in **rē-fert**, the original sense having probably been, *it bears in the direction of my affairs.*

SOME ADVERBIAL PHRASES AND ADVERBS.

386. Ultrō is often used to translate phrases like *of one's own accord, unasked*, etc.

condiciōnēs multō meliōrēs quam quās spērāverant Nerviīs ultrō dedit	*he gave unasked to the Nervii much better conditions than they had hoped for*

387. In the phrase **nē . . . quidem**, *not even*, the emphatic word is placed between **nē** and **quidem**.

nē nunc quidem assentior	*not even now do I agree*
nē ego quidem assentior	*even I do not agree*

Nōn sōlum (**modo**), *not only*, usually corresponds to **sed etiam**, *but also*, or **sed**, *but*.

nōn modo falsum illud fuit, sed hōc vērissimum	*not only was that false, but this was perfectly true*

Nōn modo . . . nōn, *not only . . . not*, balances **nē . . . quidem**.

dolor nōn modo nōn summum malum, sed nē malum quidem est	*pain is not only not the chief evil, it is not an evil at all*

Obs. The second **nōn** is often omitted when the two clauses have a common predicate, *e.g.*

nōn modo ex Italiā, sed nē Rōmā quidem excessit	*not only did he not leave Italy, but he did not even leave Rome*

388. Haud, *not*, is used with adjectives and adverbs, and reverses their meaning. It is rarely found with verbs, except in the phrase **haud sciō an** (§ 194).

dōnum erat haud ingrātum	*the gift was not unpleasing* (i.e. *was pleasing*)

Obs. 1. **Nōn** is the ordinary negative with adjectives, adverbs, and verbs alike.

Nōn, *no*, **minimē**, *by no means*, are used in replies to questions when a negative is required.

num vespertīliō avis est? Minimē	*is a bat a bird? Certainly not*

Obs. 2. The verb or the leading word of the question is often repeated with **nōn**.

num licet puerīs esse ignāvīs? Nōn licet	*are boys allowed to be lazy? They are not*

389. Affirmative replies are made by **ita**, *so*, **etiam**, **vērō**, *yes*, **sānē**, *certainly*, or by repeating the important word of the question, with or without one or other of these words.

an licet domum īre? Licet	*may I go home? Yes*
num faciēs quae rogō? Ego vērō āc libens	*will you do what I ask you? Certainly, with pleasure*

390. The English adverbs *unwillingly*, *sadly*, and a few others are generally translated by predicative adjectives in Latin.

invītus hōc fēcī	*I did this unwillingly*
maestī ineunt loca	*they enter the place sadly*
prīmus pervēnit	*he got there first*

391. *Latin*, *Greek*, etc., referring to the languages, in such phrases as *I speak Latin*, *I have learned Greek*, are translated by the adverbs **Latīnē**, **Graecē**, etc.

Latīnē loquor (sciō, didicī)	*I speak (know, have learned) Latin*

READING LESSON 41.

Character of Catilina.

Lucius Catilina, nobili genere natus, fuit magna vi et animi et corporis sed ingenio malo pravoque. Huic ab adulescentia bella intestina, caedes, rapinae, discordia civilis grata fuere, ibique iuventutem suam exercuit. Corpus patiens inediae algoris vigiliae supra quam cuiquam credibile est. Animus audax subdolus varius, cuius rei libet simulator ac dissimulator, alieni appetens sui profusus, ardens in cupiditatibus; satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum. Vastus animus immoderata incredibilia nimis alta semper cupiebat. Hunc post dominationem Lucii Sullae libido maxima invaserat rei publicae capiendae, neque id quibus modis assequeretur, dum sibi regnum pararet, quicquam pensi habebat.—Sallust, *Catilina*, 5.

EXERCISE 41.

1. The aedile sent fourteen men to pull down the temple. 2. Your letter was brought too late for me to answer yesterday. 3. Every one of you knows that the brothers were alike not only in build but also in character, but utterly unlike their fellow townsmen. 4. Not all men perform their duties with the same diligence as you do. 5. Wine mixed with water is more suitable for drinking than wine alone. 6. This cost more than twenty sesterces. 7. The faster he runs the more I have to hurry. 8. Within these few days the Aulerci had killed their senate for refusing to favour war. 9. What pleasure can there be in life when it is agreed by all that in a short time we must die? 10. If it does not matter to me, to whom does it? 11. If you wish to persuade a crowd of citizens to give you their votes, you must use not only skill but also wit.

12. Not only ought you not to be angry, but you ought not even to be annoyed. 13. I bought the book for six sesterces and will not sell it for less. 14. Surely a disgraceful peace is well exchanged even for war! 15. See that the enemy do not attack us unawares. 16. The soldiers of the thirteenth legion set out on the next day to Rome; it did not matter to Caesar when they would arrive. 17. It is so clear which way we must go in order to arrive at the end of the wood, that there is no need of a guide. 18. He promised to surround my brows with a golden crown on the third day of the Roman games. 19. The consuls of that year had perished, one of disease, the other by the sword. 20. When news was brought that the number of ships was such that the army could be put across in a single night, he brought the legions down to the river and put them across before dawn.

LESSON 42.

Sub-dependent Clauses.

392. Sub-dependent clauses are those which themselves depend on a dependent clause or an accusative and infinitive phrase; *i.e.* sub-dependent clauses do not *directly* depend on the principal verb in the sentence.

The verb in the dependent clause may be **indicative** or **subjunctive**, according to the rules laid down in Lessons 13-29. If it is **indicative**, its sub-dependent clause follows the same rules as govern clauses directly dependent on a principal sentence, and needs no further comment.

quoniam mē rogās (rogāvistī) quid faciendum sit (esset), hōc tibi expōnam	*since you ask (asked) me what is (was) to be done, I will explain to you*
quamquam hominem quem tū digitō monstrābās plānē conspexī, tamen tacuī	*although I saw clearly the man you were pointing out, I nevertheless held my tongue*

393. If, however, the verb in the dependent clause governing the sub-dependent clause is either **infinitive** or **subjunctive**, the verb of the dependent clause (subject to certain exceptions) is **subjunctive** if the writer wishes, as he usually does, to bring out the fact of its dependence.

As the principle here is the same as that involved in reported descriptions and conditions, except that its application is wider, the scheme of tenses for the sub-dependent clause is the same as that already mentioned for "virtually oblique" clauses (see the table in § 290).

In this case, as in that, the sentence should be put into the "direct form" by the student, *i.e.* into the form that the sub-dependent clause would assume if the clause on which it depends were made the principal sentence. In

each of the following examples primary and historic sequence is contrasted.

dīcit (dixit) Cicerō ōrātōrem voluntātēs hominum quōcumque velit (vellet) impellere	*Cicero says (said) that an orator leads (led) men's wills in any direction that he pleases (pleased)*
Caesar prōmittit (prōmīsit) sē omnēs obsidēs quī ad sē perfūgerint (perfūgissent) redditūrum esse	*Caesar promises (promised) that he will (would) give back all the hostages that take (took) refuge with him*
dīcit (dixit) sē, sī possit (posset), Rōmam ventūrum esse	*he says (said) he will (would) come to Rome if he can (could)*
monet (monuit) mē ut omnēs philosophōs quī Athēnīs sint (essent) audiam (audīrem)	*he advises (advised) me to hear all the philosophers that are (were) in Athens*

The direct form of the above sentences (*i.e.* the exact words of the reported speakers) is :—

ōrātor voluntātēs hominum, quōcumque vult, impellit
omnēs obsidēs quī ad mē perfūgerint (fut.-perf.) **reddam**
Rōmam, sī poterō, veniam
audī omnēs philosophōs quī Athēnīs sint (*or* **sunt**)

Obs. 1. If the mood of the dependent clause in the direct form is not indicative but **subjunctive**, it remains unchanged in the sub-dependent form when the main verb is primary, but is changed to an historic tense when the main verb is historic; *e.g.* in the last example **sint** in the direct form remains **sint** in the sub-dependent form after **dīcit**, and becomes **essent** in the sub-dependent form after **dixit**.

Obs. 2. In sub-dependent **causal** clauses the future and future-perfect indicative of the direct form are usually represented by the fut. partic. in **-ūrus** together with the appropriate tense of the subjunctive of **sum** if the verb is active or deponent.

dixit sē, quoniam Caesar crās profectūrus esset, Rōmae mansūrum esse	*he said that, since Caesar would be starting on the morrow, he would remain at Rome*

Contrast—

dixit sē, sī Caesar crās proficiscerētur, Rōmae mansūrum esse	*he said that if Caesar started on the morrow he would remain at Rome*

The direct form in the two cases is **quoniam (sī) Caesar proficiscētur, Rōmae manēbō.**

394. The sequence of tenses is so far modified in the case of clauses dependent on an accusative and infinitive phrase or subjunctive dependent clause, that a perfect infinitive or perfect subjunctive is usually followed by an imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, even when the principal verb is primary.

dīcit mihi sē omnēs philosophōs quī Athēnīs essent puerum audīvisse	*he tells me that as a boy he heard all the philosophers that there were in Athens*

Obs. The "direct form" is here **audīvī omnēs philosophōs quī Athēnīs essent** (*or* **erant**).

395. As an exception to the rule given above, the indicative is *retained* in sub-dependent clauses under certain circumstances.

(i) The indicative is used in a relative or other clause which the writer or speaker introduces for the information of his readers or hearers; in such a case the clause is *only apparently* sub dependent.

dixit sē lūdere, id quod facere solet, quam labōrāre malle	*he said that he would rather play (as he usually does) than work*
imperāvit mē ut eum quem ibi stantem vīdī hominem percuterem	*he ordered me to strike the man—the man I mean whom I saw standing there*

Obs. If **solēret** and **vidērem** were substituted for the indicatives in these two examples, the clauses would become parts of what he "said" and "ordered" respectively, instead of standing, as above, outside the reported speech and command.

(ii) The indicative is generally retained after **dum** meaning *while* or **cum** in a merely temporal sense, and often after **ut** meaning *as*. The reason for this retention is that the meaning might be mistaken if the subjunctive were used; *e.g.* the **cum**-clause might be taken as concessive, the **ut**-clause as consecutive, etc.

nuntiātum est, dum haec apud Nerviōs geruntur, Caesarem ad Sabim fluvium progredī	*it was announced that while this was happening among the Nervii, Caesar was advancing to the river Sabis*
dīcit sē, cum poterit, ventūrum	*he says he will come when he can*

396. In the accusative and infinitive construction (§§ 95-99) the place of the **future infinitive** in either voice may be taken by **fore ut** (or **futūrum esse ut**) and the present or imperfect subjunctive; the present subjunctive is used when the principal verb is primary, the imperfect subjunctive when the principal verb is historic.

dixit mox fore ut aqua fervēret	*he said the water would soon boil*
putāvit futūrum esse ut mīlitēs ad urbem dīripiendam facile urgērentur	*he thought that the soldiers would easily be driven to sack the town*

Obs. 1. In this usage the subjunctive is **consecutive** (§ 202) and the clause is sub-dependent, being dependent on the infinitive **fore** or **futūrum esse**.

Obs. 2. This construction *must* be used in the case of verbs which have no supine base, though it is not confined to these.

READING LESSON 42.

Caesar avoids a Battle.

Caesar in eam spem venerat, se sine pugna et sine vulnere suorum rem conficere posse, quod re frumentaria adversarios interclusisset. Rogavit cur secundo proelio aliquos ex suis amittere deberet, cur vulnerari pateretur optime de se meritos milites, cur denique fortuna tentanda esset, praesertim cum non minus esset imperatoris consilio superare quam gladio. Movebatur etiam misericordia civium, quos in periculum mortis adduci videbat, nisi hostium deditionem prius accepisset. Hoc consilium Caesaris plerisque non probatur; milites vero palam inter se loquebantur, quoniam talis occasio victoriae dimitteretur, etiam cum vellet Caesar, sese non esse pugnaturos. Ille in sua sententia perseverat et paulum ex eo loco digreditur, ut timorem adversariis minuat.—*From Caesar, de Bello Civili*, I. 74.

EXERCISE 42.

1. Brutus said he did not repent of having killed Caesar. 2. I fear that Crassus will die before he reaches old age. 3. They say that our fields will be devastated and our houses set on fire unless we surrender. 4. He threatens that he will return to Cumae if his orders are not obeyed. 5. Solon said that no one could be considered happy before he was dead. 6. He said that the cold of those places was such as he had never felt before. 7. We must take care to reach Rome before Pompeius has started from it. 8. There are some who believe that the wise [man] can be happy even if he is in the greatest pain. 9. We decided that, as the wind was favourable, we must start that very night [say, "that night itself"]. 10. While the soldiers were rejoicing over this victory, news was suddenly brought that the troops had been destroyed almost to a man.

11. He pointed out that the fleet of the Carthaginians, which was drawn up near Agrigentum, could secretly be set-on-fire. 12. I say that you were unworthy to command an army of brave men. 13. Caesar rebuked each of these two brothers for doing such things. 14. I advise you, when you next see Balbus, to ask him what price he paid for [say, "for how much he bought"] his villa. 15. When Cato was asked his opinion about the punishment of Lentulus and the rest, he said he wished them to be condemned to death, because they were enemies of the human race. 16. If we give hostages and promise to pay tribute, the army will go away at once and do no harm to anyone. 17. The Senate decreed that the consuls should draw lots [as to] which of them should hold (*habere*) the elections for appointing the censors before he started for his province. 18. As soon as I heard that Tiro was so ill that he was thought to be on-the-point-of-death (use *fut. partic.*), I started from Athens and returned home as soon as possible. 19. He did not know either where they were going or what time they would come back. 20. At about the same time Crassus heard that he had to wage war in the scenes [say, "places"] where a few years before Lucius Valerius had been killed and his army defeated.

LESSON **43.**

Sub-dependent Clauses (*continued*).

397. When a **conditional sentence with a subjunctive in both the protasis and the apodosis** (cp. §§ 246, 252) depends on a verb either of saying, thinking, etc., or of enquiring, *i.e.* when the apodosis becomes a **dependent statement** or a **dependent question**, the tense of the **protasis** (the sub-dependent clause) is governed by the same rule as that of other sub-dependent clauses (§ 393). But the **subjunctive** of the **apodosis** is represented by a periphrastic form, as shown below, whether it become (i) the infinitive (in an indirect statement) or (ii) the subjunctive (in an indirect question, etc.).

Obs. It is convenient to treat here the change in the apodosis as well as the change in the protasis, though of course only the latter becomes the *sub*-dependent clause, properly speaking; the former, whether its verb be in the (i) infinitive or (ii) subjunctive, becomes the subject or object clause of the principal verb.

398. The original conditional sentence with its apodosis in the subjunctive may be one of three forms (*a*), (*b*) (§ 246), (*c*) (§ 252). In the following examples the indirect follows the direct form in each case.

(i) **Dependent statement:—**

(*a*) **sī tonāret, domī manērem**	*if it were thundering, I should stay at home*
dīcō (dixī) mē, si tonāret, domī mansūrum fuisse	*I say (said) that, if it were thundering (at the time), I should stay at home*
(*b*) **sī tonuisset, domī mansissem**	*if it had thundered, I should have stayed at home*
dīcō (dixī) mē, sī tonuisset, domī mansūrum fuisse	*I say (said) that, if it had thundered, I should have stayed at home*

(*c*) **si tonet, domī maneam**	*if it were to thunder, I should stay at home*
dīcō (dixī) mē, sī tonet (tonāret), domī mansūrum esse	*I say (said) that, if it were to thunder, I should stay at home*

399. (ii) Dependent question:—

(*a*) **quid facerēs, sī adesset?**	*what would you do now if he were here?*
mīror (mīrābar) quid facerēs, sī adesset	*I wonder (wondered) what you would be doing if he were here*
(*b*) **quid fēcissēs, sī advēnisset?**	*what would you have done if he had come?*
mīror (mīrābar) quid factūrus fueris, sī advēnisset	*I wonder (wondered) what you would have done if he had come*
(*c*) **quid faciās, sī adveniat?**	*what would you do if he were to come?*
mīror (mīrābar) quid factūrus sis (essēs), sī adveniat (advenīret)	*I wonder (wondered) what you would do if he were to come*

Obs. The reason for the construction in (*b*) and (*c*) above is that, *e.g.*, **factūrus erās** could be substituted without much difference of meaning for the potential **fēcissēs**.

NOTE.—Similar constructions are found when the conditional sentence is introduced by **quīn** or **ut** consecutive or by a relative pronoun or adverb.

400. When the verb of the apodosis is passive or has no supine base, **futūrum fuisse ut** and the subjunctive may be used in indirect statements of the form (*b*) above, and **futūrum esse ut** and the subjunctive (cp. § 396) in statements of the form (*c*) above. In indirect questions, etc., of the form (*b*) above, the pluperfect subjunctive of the direct form usually remains unchanged.

putō (putāvī), nisi ea mora intervēnisset, futūrum fuisse ut castra Pūnica caperentur	*I think (thought) that, if that delay had not occurred, the Carthaginian camp would have been captured*
nōn dubium est (erat) quīn, nisi ea mora intervēnisset, castra Pūnica essent capta	*there is (was) no doubt that if that delay had not occurred, the Carthaginian camp would have been captured*

READING LESSON 43.

KING ATTALUS (198 B.C.) SENDS AN EMBASSY TO THE SENATE AT ROME: HIS COMPLAINT IS ANSWERED.

Attali deinde regis legatos in senatum consules introduxerunt. *Ii regem classe sua copiisque omnibus terra marique rem Romanam iuvare quaeque imperarent Romani consules impigre ad eam diem fecisse, cum exposuissent, se vereri dixerunt ne id praestare ei per Antiochum regem ultra non liceret: vacuum enim praesidiis navalibus terrestribusque regnum Attali Antiochum invasisse. Itaque Attalum orare patres, si sua classi suaque opera uti ad Macedonicum bellum vellent, mitterent ipsi praesidium ad regnum eius tutandum: si id nollent, ipsum ad sua defendenda cum classe ac reliquis copiis redire paterentur.

Senatus legatis ita responderi iussit: quod rex classe copiisque aliis duces Romanos iuvisset, id gratum senatui esse: auxilia nec ipsos missuros Attalo adversus Antiochum socium populi Romani, nec Attali auxilia retenturos ultra quam regi commodum esset: semper populum Romanum alienis rebus arbitrio alieno usum: et principium et finem in potestate ipsorum qui ope sua velint adiutos Romanos esse legatos ad Antiochum missuros qui nuntient Attali naviumque eius et militum opera adversus Philippum communem hostem uti populum Romanum: gratum eum

* Analysis:—

Ii
  cum exposuissent
    regem . . . iuvare,
    [et ea]
      quae imperarent . . . consules
    impigre . . . fecisse,
  se vereri dixerunt
    ne id . . . liceret.

facturum senatui si regno Attali abstineat belloque absistat: aequum esse socios et amicos populi Romani reges inter se quoque ipsos pacem servare.—*Livy*, XXXII. 8.

EXERCISE 43.

1. Caesar answered that the messengers would have been spared had they spoken the truth. 2. So they sent him as an ambassador, first making him take an oath to return if he did not succeed. 3. Everyone knows that I should have gained more praise if I had not written so many books! 4. I see that there are many causes which would have driven him to act thus, if he had been in danger. 5. I confess that, if pleasure were the best thing in the world, no one would desire anything else. 6. Laelius used to say that, if he were to have a true friend, he would be the happiest of men. 7. I should like to know what Marcus will do when this is reported to him. 8. Sertorius asked him to cry out if he found the deer. 9. I did not think that it interested you to know where my father had gone. 10. Come to the light, that I may see what you have brought. 11. He exhorted them to remember that they were born free. 12. How can you doubt that, if they had rejected Caesar's terms, force would have been used [say, "brought to them"]? 13. Am I not to honour a man who, all confess, would have been consul if he had lived? 14. Were they real friends, there is no doubt that the more you separated them the more would they be united in friendship. 15. We said that we would burn the town if they did not do what they were ordered. 16. I have been informed that at Carthage men are very angry if their weapons are taken away from them. 17. He commanded the cavalry not to be absent from the camp for more than three days, unless they brought back ten prisoners each. 18. These men are so honoured by the Roman people that there would be no one who would not think that whatever they said was just. 19. We ask whether Alexander would have conquered Hannibal if he had been opposed to him. 20. What could they think except that we had committed some crime, owing to which we should violate [the sanctity of] the games if we were to be present at the spectacle?

LESSON 44.

Prepositions and conjunctions.

Learn the lists of prepositions in §§ 521-3.

Prepositions.

401. Most of the prepositions grouped together in §§ 521-3 will already have been learnt. A few idiomatic usages of these prepositions are grouped below.

402. Prepositions used with the Accusative only.

Ad.—

mīlitēs ad pontem collocātī sunt	*the soldiers were stationed at* (or *near*) *the bridge*
ad ūnum interfectī sunt	*they were killed to a man*
(usque) ad noctem pugnāvērunt	*they fought till night*

Ante.—

pulchra est ante omnēs	*she is beautiful above all* (*others*)

Apud.—

apud praetōrem rēs agitur	*the case is being tried before the praetor*
apud Platōnem dē Sōcratē legimus	*we read about Socrates in Plato*

Inter.—

inter sē amant	*they love each other*

Penes.—

multa est penes eum sollertia	*there is much cleverness in him*

Per.—

per tē stetit quōminus hōc fieret	*it was owing to you that this was not done*
per tē deōs ōrō (note order)	*I beseech you by the gods*

Praeter.—

nēmō praeter mē hōc intellegit	*no one except me understands this*

Secundum.—

secundum nātūram vīvit	*he lives in accordance with nature*
mīlitēs secundum flūmen duxit	*he led his soldiers along the river*

403. Prepositions used with Accusative or Ablative.

In (with acc.).—

numerus in diēs augēbātur	*the number was increased from day to day*
in Arruntem equitāvit	*he rode against Arruns*
longē in noctem colloquēbāmur	*we were talking far into the night*
in praesens; in reliquum tempus	*for the present; for the future*

In (with abl.).—

altus in equō sedēbat	*he sat high on his horse*
nimium crūdēlis in illā est	*he is too cruel in her case*

Sub (with acc.).—

sub moenia urbis exercitum mīsit	*he sent the army up to the walls of the city*
sub noctem	*at night-fall*

Sub (with abl.).—

sub monte consēdit	*he took up his position at the foot of the mountain*
sub hastā (corōnā) vendere (vēnīre)	*to sell (be sold) as a slave*

404. Prepositions used with the Ablative only.

Ā, ab.—

ā sinistrō cornū trepidātur	*there is panic in* (lit. *from the side of*) *the left wing*
ab initiō	*in the beginning*

Cum.—

Poenī quondam cum Rōmānīs pugnābant	*the Carthaginians once fought with the Romans*

De.—

dē mediā nocte	*at dead of night*
dē tertiā vigiliā	*in the course of the third watch*
dē improvīsō	*unexpectedly*
dē integrō	*afresh*
dē rēpublicā actum est	*it is all over with the State*

Ē, ex.—

ex itinere nōs adortī sunt	*they attacked us on the march*
ē consulātū accūsātus est	*he was accused just after his consulship*
hōc ē rēpublicā est	*this is in the interests of the State*
ex lēge; ē regiōne	*in accordance with the law; opposite*

Prae.—

prae cēterīs Sulla fēlix erat	*Sulla was happy beyond other men*
prae dolōre loquī nōn possum	*I cannot speak for grief* [only in negative sentences]

Prō.—

virgam prō tēlō cēpit	*he took a stick to serve as a weapon*
hōc prō rēpublicā fēcit	*he did this for the sake of the State*
consilium prō tempore cape	*take counsel in accordance with the occasion*
sapientior quam prō suā aetāte est	*he is wiser than his years* (lit. *in accordance with his age*)
prō certō sciō (habeō)	*I am sure* (lit. *know for certain*)

405. The following points in connection with the use of prepositions should be noted:—

(i) A prepositional phrase very seldom depends in Latin, as it often does in English, on a substantive, but generally on a participle or verb. Such participle or verb must often be inserted in translating English into Latin.

eī quī in urbe erant nihil habuērunt quod ederent	*the men in the city had nothing to eat*
tria templa in forō sita dēmōliuntur	*three temples in the forum are being demolished*

(ii) An abstract noun with a concrete noun in the possessive case will often be translated in Latin by a concrete noun accompanied by a participle, especially if preceded by a preposition.

dūcentēsimus annus erat post urbem conditam (*or* **ab urbe conditā**)	*it was the 200th year after the foundation of the city*
ferae palam cibum edunt	*wild animals eat their food in the open*

Coordinating Conjunctions.

406. Of the conjunctions meaning *and* the most usual is **et**, which is used to connect words, clauses, and sentences; **-que** usually connects words, and is often used in the case of two things commonly associated, *e.g.* **senātus populusque Rōmānus**, *the Senate and people of Rome.*

Atque or **āc** properly means *and indeed, and especially*, though often used by way of variety for **et**. (**Atque** is used before a vowel or a consonant, **āc** before consonants only.)

tibi āc Crassō grātiās agō	*I thank you and (especially) Crassus*

407. In lists and enumerations the items are either left without a connecting particle or **et** is inserted before each item after the first.

labor (et) somnus (et) voluptās tōtam vītam compōnunt	*work, sleep, and pleasure make up the whole of life*

408. Two attributes of a substantive (pronominal adjectives like **hīc** not being included) must be connected by a conjunction.

Rōmānī multa et clāra bella gessērunt	*the Romans have waged many famous wars*

409. Of the commoner conjunctions usually rendered *but*, **sed** limits or corrects a preceding statement, introducing something in contrast to it, whereas **autem** merely denotes transition to a fresh thought; **at** is strongly adversative, and often means *but, it may be objected.*

Mīlō Lānuvium iit, at Clōdius (Clōdius autem) Rōmae mansit	*Milo went to Lanuvium; Clodius on the other hand (while Clodius) remained at Rome*

410. Of the conjunctions meaning *or*, **aut** contrasts things essentially opposed; **vel** and the enclitic **-ve** leave the choice open as to some detail.

aut cum clipeō aut in clipeō redī	*come back either with your shield or on it*
aderant trēs vel quattuor hominēs	*three or four men were present*

READING LESSON 44.

The Capture of Saguntum by Hannibal.

*Ad Alorci verba audienda, qui de pace locutus erat, cum permixtum senatui esset populi concilium, repente

*Analysis:—

Ad audienda verba Alorci,
qui . . . locutus erat,
cum . . . esset populi concilium,
repente principes,
secessione facta,
priusquam . . . daretur,
argentum, . . . collatum, in ignem conicientes
eo plerique se ipsi praecipitaverunt.

principes, secessione facta, priusquam responsum daretur, argentum aurumque omne, ex publico privatoque in forum collatum, in ignem conicientes, eo plerique se ipsi praecipitaverunt. Cum ex eo pavor ac trepidatio totam urbem pervasisset, alius insuper tumultus ex arce auditur. Turris diu concussa prociderat: * perque ruinam eius cohors Poenorum, impetu facto, cum signum imperatori dedisset nudatam custodiis solitis hostium esse urbem; non cunctandum in tali occasione ratus Hannibal, totis viribus aggressus urbem, momento temporis cepit, signo dato, ut omnes puberes interficerentur. Captum oppidum est cum ingenti praeda.—*Livy*, XXI. 14.

EXERCISE 44

1. I was greatly affected by this news, and for a long time could scarcely speak for joy. 2. Three days after the surrender of the city the Romans arrived to bring help to the garrison. 3. Tiro overtook me and told me that he had been murdered just before daybreak. 4. Despite these speeches for and against this law, it was repealed twenty years after it was carried. 5. They had great honour with Caesar. 6. Do you think that what we read in Vergil about Aeneas is to be believed? 7. I should not like you to be angry with your wife (*dat.*) for such a little matter. 8. I hope I shall be beyond the borders of Italy before the war breaks out. 9. All men know how much better good health is than honours or riches. 10. The boy was afraid that if he mounted [on to] the horse, it would run too quickly. 11. They say it is sweet to die for one's country. 12. I cannot forget the benefits which I have received from you. 13. Many more

---

* Cum per ruinam eius cohors Poenorum,
impetu facto,
signum dedisset nudatam . . . esse urbem,
Hannibal, non cunctandum . . . ratus,
totis . . . aggressus urbem,
momento temporis cepit,
signo . . . interficerentur,

soldiers have advanced to the foot of the mountain. 14. All except Galba fled from the Capitol. 15. Although he had a villa near Rome, in the summer he preferred to dwell at Tusculum. 16. Nothing is so wretched as that man who is wretched after being prosperous. 17. Caesar was born 654 years after the city was founded. 18. Themistocles did not hesitate to break his faith. 19. For the remainder of the following days he began to cut down the forests, and piled up on to either side all the timber. 20. In order to be sure that this man has been rightly condemned by the judges, I have taken care that the documents (*tabulae*) should be sent for.

LESSON 45.

Contracted forms of verbs; some remarks on the tenses.

Contracted Forms of Verbs.

411. *Active tenses formed from the Perfect Base.*—Most verbs of which the perfect base ends in **v** have also a shorter form of their perfect tenses without the **v**. In such forms the absence of **v** leads (except in the case of **ie**, and sometimes of **ii**) to a contraction of vowels in which the latter vowel disappears; *e.g.*

The indicatives **amāvistī, amāvistis, amāvērunt, amāveram** become **amastī, amastis, amārunt** (but *not* **amāre**), **amāram**; similarly the subjunctives **amāverim, amāvissem** become **amārim, amassem**; and the infinitive **amāvisse**, amasse.

Parallel forms from **audiō** are **audiistī** (*or* **audistī**), **audiit, audiistis** (*or* **audistis**), **audiērunt** (**audiēre**), **audieram, audierim, audiissem** (**audissem**), **audiisse** (**audisse**).

412. Perfect Participles of Active Meaning from Active Verbs.

Present Indicative.	Past Participle.
cēnō, 1, *dine*	**cēnātus**, *having dined*
iūrō, 1 *swear*	**iūrātus**, *having sworn*
pōtō, 1, *drink*	**pōtus**, *having drunk*
placeō, 2, *please*	**placitus**, *having pleased*
prandeō, 2, *lunch*	**pransus**, *having lunched*
crescō, 3, *grow*	**crētus**, (*having*) *sprung*
suescō, 3, *become accustomed*	**suētus**, (*having become*) *accustomed*

Obs. **Pōtus** is also used in a passive sense (*having been drunk*).

Perfect Participles of Passive Meaning from Deponent Verbs.

413. The passive meaning in the following verbs is alternative with the active, *e.g.* **confessus** means *having confessed* as well as *confessed.*

confessus, *confessed*, from confiteor, 2
expertus, *tried*, from **experior**, 4
mensus, *measured*, from **mētior**, 4
mentītus, *falsified*, from mentior, 4
oblītus, *forgotten*, from oblīviscor, 3
pactus, *agreed*, from **paciscor**, 3
populātus, *ravaged*, from populor, 1
ratus, *settled*, from **reor**, 2
sortītus, *allotted*, from **sortior**, 4
ultus, *avenged*, from **ulciscor**, 3

Meanings of Present and Imperfect Indicative.

414. The present indicative is used of an action or state which has already been going on for some time, and the imperfect of an action which at the time referred to had been going on for some time. This is the case especially when the verb is accompanied by **iam**, *already*, **iamdūdum** or **iamprīdem**, *for some time already.*

tē iamdūdum exspectō (exspectābam) — *I have (had) been waiting for you a long time*
trēs mensēs Rōmae maneō — *for three months I have remained at Rome*

415. The temporal conjunction *since*, in such phrases as *it is ten years since . . .*, is usually translated by **ex quō** with the present indicative, and the ordinal numeral used, as in the following example.

undecimus annus est ex quō vultum tuum conspiciō — *it is eleven years since I beheld your face*

416. The **historic present** (indicative), by which a narrator describes an event from the standpoint of the time when it actually occurred, is frequent in Latin, and

is usually to be rendered by an English past tense. The present infinitive (with the nominative as its subject) is sometimes used in the same sense.

dēnique Gallī castra adeunt	*at last the Gauls approached the camp*
Rōmānī hostem sequī, subīre, trucidāre	*the Romans followed the enemy, came up with them, and began to cut them down*

417. The **imperfect** indicative is sometimes used to express *attempted* action in past time.

mālum eī dabam	*I offered* (i.e. *I attempted to give*) *him an apple*

418. The imperfect is often used at the beginning or end of a letter to describe what is from the writer's point of view present, but what will be, from the receiver's standpoint, past. This is known as the **epistolary imperfect.**

scrībēbam haec Athēnīs	*I write this at Athens*

READING LESSON 45.

PHYLLIS, QUEEN OF THRACE, WRITES TO THE ATHENIAN DEMOPHOON, WHO HAS DESERTED HER.

Per mare, quod totum ventis agitatur et undis,
  Per quod saepe ieras, per quod iturus eras . . .
Per Venerem, nimiumque mihi facientia tela,
  Altera tela arcus, altera tela faces, . . .
Si de tot laesis sua numina quisque deorum
  Vindicet, in poenas non satis unus eris.
At laceras etiam puppes furiosa refeci,
  Ut, qua desererer, firma carina foret;
Remigiumque dedi, quo me fugiturus abires.
  Heu, patior telis vulnera facta meis.

Credidimus blandis, quorum tibi copia, verbis:
Credidimus generi nominibusque tuis:
Credidimus lacrimis. An et hae simulare docentur?
Hae quoque habent artes, quaque iubentur, eunt?
Dis quoque credidimus. Quo iam tot pignora nobis?
Parte satis potui qualibet inde capi.

From Ovid, Heroides, II. 35-54.

EXERCISE 45.

1. I have now waited fifteen hours for Balbus. 2. His name is Marcus. 3. Happy the man who attains whatever he desires. 4. When I am going to run, it makes a great deal of difference how I have dined. 5. Those who used to help each other in battle were called "sworn brothers." 6. I should like you to ask him who he is and by what way he has come. 7. No man felt that he was allowed even to breathe while Sulla was dictator. 8. When Aeneas tried to embrace his wife Creusa, she vanished into thin air (pl.). 9. I tell you that what can happen to anybody, can happen to everybody. 10. Claudius migrated from that beautiful city of Rome to Fregellae.

11. They deliberated about the city of Avaricum in a common council whether it should be burned or defended. 12. He explained these matters and gave the signal. 13. You will be accused before Romans: you can find no fairer judges than they are. 14. "No praetor," he said, "if he were worthy to hold a province should ask for money from any private man." 15. I do not think you have ever read a letter of mine before that was not written by my own hand. 16. I have heard that the Muses changed their abode from Greece to Rome, but I do not know what this means. 17. This has been already decided on by the people in their assembly; and no man of you shall change the decision. 18. The magistrates have taken possession of the provinces allotted to them. 19. They did not know they were surrounded until they heard the sound of the cavalry in the rear. 20. I am not afraid to die.

LESSON **46.**

Oratio Obliqua.

Learn the table in § 526.

Oratio Obliqua.

419. **Ōrātiō oblīqua** (*indirect speech*) is the name given to the form assumed by speeches, etc., usually of considerable length, which are reported, not in the words actually used, but after a verb of *saying, questioning,* or *commanding,* expressed or understood.

420. The moods and tenses in dependent **statements,** whether or not accompanied by subordinate clauses, have already been dealt with in Lessons 6 (accusative and infinitive), 42 and 43 (sub-dependent clauses); *i.e.* **statements** in a principal sentence of direct speech (or **ōrātiō recta**) are expressed by the **infinitive** in oratio obliqua, and **dependent clauses,** subject to the reservations in § 395, in the **subjunctive.** For examples see below, § 423.

421. The rules governing the tenses in dependent statements and subordinate clauses, after a main verb in a historic tense, are summarised in § 290. The same rules hold good after a primary tense, except that the present subjunctive is used instead of the imperfect and the perfect subjunctive instead of the pluperfect.

Obs. The present and perfect subjunctive are for the sake of vividness often used after an historic tense.

422. The management of **pronouns** in oratio obliqua may cause some difficulty. In oratio recta the speaker may use the first and second personal pronouns and possessive adjectives as well as the third; in Latin reported speech, as

in English, all verbs and pronouns and possessive adjectives are of the third person, mostly according to the following table, though the usage of classical writers is by no means uniform.

Oratio Recta.	Oratio Obliqua.
ego, meus, nōs, noster	**sē, suus**
tū, tuus, vōs, vester	**is** (sometimes **ille**), **ēius**, etc.
hīc, iste	**ille** (sometimes **hīc** is retained)

NOTE.—The oblique cases of **ipse** (**ipsum, ipsīus**, etc.) are sometimes used to represent the first person in oratio recta, *i.e.* to refer back to the speaker, when ambiguity might be caused by the use of **sē**, *i.e.* when **sē** also occurs in the same clause in another connection, *e.g.* to refer to the subject of its own clause. Cp. the examples below, § 423, (*b*), § 426, II. (*b*).

STATEMENTS IN ORATIO RECTA AND OBLIQUA COMPARED.

423. (*a*) **dīmidium ēius pecūniae, quam pactus sum, prō hōc carmine tibi dabō**	*I will pay you half what I promised for this poem*
(*O. O.*) **sē dīmidium ēius pecūniae, quam pactus esset, prō illō carmine eī datūrum**	*he would (he said) pay him half what he promised for that poem*
(*b*) **nihil interest, nōsne Rōmānī interficiant, an impedīmentīs exuant**	*it does not matter whether the Romans kill us or deprive us of our baggage*
(*O. O.*) **nihil interesse, ipsōsne Rōmānī interficiant, an impedīmentīs exuant**	*it does not matter (he says) whether the Romans kill them or deprive them of their baggage*

Obs. In this last example **sē** would be ambiguous, as it might refer to the subject of **interficiant**.

424. In oratio recta a **relative pronoun** may either introduce a strictly dependent clause, or it may introduce a new statement and thus be merely **connective** (§ 177). In the first instance the relative clause is naturally treated as dependent in oratio obliqua, and the subjunctive used; in the second it is often treated as a new principal clause, and the infinitive used.

(*a*) omnēs quī arma ferre possint ūnum in locum convenient	*all who can bear arms will meet in one place*
(*O.O.*) omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum conventūrōs esse	(*he said that*) *all who could bear arms would meet in one place*
(*b*) cadent templa; quod vērō brevī ēveniet	*the temples will fall; and this will soon happen*
(*O.O.*) cāsūra templa: quod vērō brevī ēventūrum esse	*the temples would fall* (*he said*); *and this would soon happen*

425. **Commands**, whether affirmative or negative, are expressed in the course of a speech in oratio obliqua by the subjunctive.

īte, nēve redeātis	*go and do not return*
(*O.O.*) īrent, nēve redīrent	*let them* (*he said*) *go and not return*

426. **Questions** in oratio obliqua are distinguished from dependent questions (§ 186) in not being **directly** dependent on the main verb.

I. Questions in which the verb is **subjunctive** in oratio recta **retain the subjunctive** in oratio obliqua.

II. (*a*) Questions in the **1st** or **3rd** person **indicative** in oratio recta become **infinitive** in oratio obliqua;

(*b*) Questions in the **2nd** person **indicative** in oratio recta become **subjunctive** in oratio obliqua, unless they are rhetorical, *i.e.* virtually equivalent to negative statements.

I. quid agāmus?	*what are we to do?*
(*O.O.*) quid agerent?	*what were they to do?*
II. (*a*) quōmodo sociī nāvēs comparābunt?	*how will the allies provide ships?*
(*O.O.*) quōmodo sociōs nāvēs comparātūrōs?	*how* (*he said*) *will the allies provide ships?*
(*b*) cūr dē vestrā virtūte aut dē meā dīligentiā dēspērātis?	*why do you despair of your own valour or my carefulness?*

(*O.O.*) **cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā despērārent?**	*why did they despair of their own value or his carefulness?*
num mihi victō pepercistī?	*did you spare me when I was conquered?*
(*O.O.*) **num eum sibi victō pepercisse?**	*did he spare him (he asked) when he was conquered?*

Obs. The rules as to tenses in questions in oratio obliqua are the same as for dependent statements if the verb is infinitive, and the same as for dependent questions if the verb is subjunctive.

READING LESSON 46.

A Speech of Caesar to his Men.

(1) Translate the following into English; (2) give Caesar's exact words in Latin:—

Dixit Caesar Ariovistum se consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse: cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum iudicaret? Sibi quidem persuaderi, cognitis suis postulatis atque aequitate condicionum perspecta eum neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, cum Cimbris et Teutonis a Gaio Mario pulsis non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus videbatur; factum etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina, quae a nobis accepissent, sublevarent. Ex quo iudicari posse, quantum haberet in se boni constantia, propterea quod, quos aliquamdiu inermes sine causa timuissent, hos postea armatos ac victores superassent.—*Caesar, de Bello Gallico*, I. 40.

EXERCISE 46.

(N.B.—Use Indirect Speech.)

1. He had not, said Ariovistus, waged war against the Gauls, but they against him. 2. Tell me, he said, the whole circumstance. 3. When will you come to my house? 4. "Do not let your generals," he said, "lie unavenged." 5. "Did the army leave the camp?" he said. 6. "He had advised the soldiers," he said, "to give themselves up to him." 7. "We revolted from Philip," they said, "after the Roman army came into Macedonia." 8. "Tell your own [people]," he said, "that the Senate has resolved to send them back home." 9. "It is not," he said, "the custom of the Roman people to accept any terms from an armed enemy." 10. There was no cause, he said, for fear. 11. He would believe me, he said, whether I told him what was true or false (*neut. plur.*). 12. That might happen, he says, if the Aedui bring their forces into the territory of the Bellovaci. 13. I remember that the farmers asked Laelius to plead their cause. 14. When he saw the Gauls standing inside the camp, he asked in the presence of his own army (*abl. abs.*) "Why did they come to him? Was it in order to spy?" 15. He said that he would set out at once if they promised to help him.

Translate the following sentences and turn them into oratio obliqua, in dependence upon a historic verb of saying:—

16. Num litteras a senatu affers, quae me rem gerere vetent? 17. Quid est, cur Romani vobis comparandi sint? 18. Hic est manendum, velut si ante Romana moenia pugnemus. 19. Mortalis deus fieri potest, si quid fecerit quod mortales facere nequeunt. 20. Quantum interest inter temperantiam ac crudelitatem!

LESSON 47.

The Roman Calendar.

427. In each month there were three days named respectively **Kalendae** (*Kalends*), **Nōnae** (*Nones*), and **Īdūs** (*Ides*).

The **Kalends** were always on the **1st**, the **Nones** were in most months on the **5th**, and the **Ides** on the **13th**.

The exceptions are shown in the following rhyme:—

In March, July, October, May,
The Nones are on the seventh day,

and therefore the Ides on the 15th, as the Nones were always (according to the inclusive method of reckoning in use with the Romans) nine days before the Ides (cp. **nōnus**, *ninth*).

428. The **Roman months** were designated by **adjectives**, sometimes used substantivally in the masculine (the word **mensis**, *month*, being understood), but usually in agreement with one of the words **Kalendae, Nōnae, Īdus**. These adjectives are **Iānuārius, Februārius, Martius, Aprīlis, Māius, Iūnius, Quintīlis, Sextīlis, September, Octōber, November, December. Quintīlis** (*July*) was after the death of Julius Caesar named **Iūlius** in his honour, and **Sextīlis** was similarly changed to **Augustus** in honour of the Emperor.

Of these adjectives, those ending in **-us** are declined like **bonus**, those in **-is** like **tristis**, and those in **-er** like **ācer**.

Kalendīs Aprīlibus ībō	*I shall go on the first of April*
Īdibus Martiīs ībō	*I shall go on the fifteenth of March*

429. Intervening days were reckoned as so many days before the next Kalends, Nones, or Ides, as the case might be, as follows:—

March 13th, **ante diem tertium Īdūs Martiās** (a.d. iii. Id. Mart.).

March 14th, **prīdiē Īdūs Martiās** (prid. Id. Mart.).

March 16th, **ante diem septimum decimum Kalendās Aprīlēs** (a.d. xvii. Kal. Apr.).

Obs. 1. The Roman method of reckoning was inclusive, as will be seen from the above examples.

Obs. 2. The phrase **ante diem**, etc., probably originated thus: the ablative form (denoting point of time, § 224) was, *e.g.*, **diē tertiō ante Kalendās Iānuāriās**; subsequently **ante** was transferred to the beginning and **diē** was changed to **diem**, as if it were governed by **ante**.

Obs. 3. **Prīdiē**, *on the day before*, is constructed with an accusative, which is due to analogy with the construction of **ante diem**.

Obs. 4. The above phrases, having come to be regarded as substantives, may be used after prepositions.

ex ante diem quartum Īdūs Iūniās usque ad prīdiē Kalendās Sextīlēs Rōmae erō	*I shall be at Rome from June 10th to July 31st*

430. The Romans named their years either according to the consuls of the year or from the traditional date of the foundation of Rome, **annō urbis conditae** (or, in brief, A.U.C.), viz. 753 B.C.

Given the year **A.U.C.**—

To find B.C. subtract from 754: **A.U.C. 710 = 44 B.C.**

,, ,, A.D. ,, 753: **A.U.C. 767 = 14 A.D.**

Cicerō Arpīnī annō sescentēsimō quadrāgēsimō octāvō urbis conditae (or **A.U.C. DCXLVIII**) **nātus est**	*Cicero was born at Arpinum in* 106 B.C.

READING LESSON 47.

Scr. Romae a.d. VI Kal. Sextiles A.U.C. DCC.

CICERO ATTICO SAL.

Nunc Romanas res accipe. A.d. III Nonas Quintiles Cato absolutus, Procilius condemnatus, ex quo intellectum est iudices totam rempublicam flocci non facere. His rebus actis Reatini me duxerunt ut agerem causam contra

Interamnates apud consulem et decem legatos. Redii Romam Fonteii causa a.d. VII Idus Quint. Ludi magnifici et grati: venatio in aliud tempus dilata.

Sequere nunc me in Campum: ardet ambitus; fenus ex triente Idibus Quintilibus factum erat bessibus.* Ea comitia puto fore ut ducantur. Tribunicii candidati iurarunt se arbitrio Catonis petituros: apud eum HS quingena deposuerunt, ut qui a Catone damnatus esset id perderet et competitoribus tribueretur. Haec ego pridie scribebam quam comitia fore putabantur: sed ad te, a.d. V Kal. Sextil., si facta erunt, scribam.

Ex Q. fratris litteris suspicor iam eum esse in Britannia: suspenso animo exspecto quid agat. Dionysium † velim salvere iubeas, et eum roges et hortere ut quam primum veniat, ut possit Ciceronem meum atque etiam me ipsum erudire.—*From Cicero, ad Atticum*, IV. 15.

EXERCISE 47.

1. The horse was sold for about five hundred thousand sesterces, but I know well it was worth much more. 2. I know from your letters what was done from the third of June to the first of September. 3. Five-sixths of the [whole] number of ships were lost. 4. Caesar, I think, is heir to a twelfth of the property. 5. I shall have to pay 3 per cent. next year. 6. You will receive eleven-twelfths of the property at my death. 7. If he does not give me 300,000 sesterces on March 28th, he will become my slave. 8. Interest was fixed at 48 per cent. per annum. 9. He receives a million sesterces from his estates. 10. Stertinius was born on July 7th 63 B.C. [say, "in the consulship of Cicero and Antonius"].

---

* § 434. † A philosopher, friend of Atticus and Cicero.

LESSON 48.

Revision of Lessons 41-7 ; *numerals.*

Roman Money.

431. The unit used in reckoning sums of money was the **sestertius**, a silver coin of which the bullion value (not the purchasing power) was about 2d.

mille sestertiī (or HS M)	*1,000 sestertii* (£8 10s.)

432. In expressing *thousands* of **sestertiī** (up to one million) the word **mīlia** was omitted and **sestertium**, the genitive plural of **sestertius**, was converted into a neuter plural substantive; the number of thousands was denoted by a **distributive** numeral.

septēna sestertia (HS $\overline{\text{VII}}$)	*7,000 sesterces*
centēna sestertia (HS $\overline{\text{C}}$)	*100,000 sesterces*

In expressing *hundreds of thousands* of **sestertiī**, if amounting to not less than one million, the words **centēna mīlia** were omitted, and **sestertium** was declinable as a neuter singular substantive; the number of hundreds of thousands was denoted by an **adverbial** numeral.

quingentiēs sestertium ($\overline{\text{HS D}}$)	*fifty million sesterces*

433. The **ās** (originally a copper coin worth $\frac{2}{5}$ of a **sestertius**) remained the theoretical unit in reckoning interest, portions of inheritances, etc., after it had dropped out of use as the unit for reckoning sums of money. The following fractions of the **ās** were thus employed:—

unci-a (-ae)	$= \frac{1}{12}$	**quincun-x** (-cis)	$= \frac{5}{12}$	**dōdran-s** (-tis)	$= \frac{3}{4}$
sextan-s (-tis)	$= \frac{1}{6}$	**sēmis** (sēmissis)	$= \frac{1}{2}$	**dextan-s** (-tis)	$= \frac{5}{6}$
quadran-s (-tis)	$= \frac{1}{4}$	**septun-x** (-cis)	$= \frac{7}{12}$	**deun-x** (-cis)	$= \frac{11}{12}$
trien-s (-tis)	$= \frac{1}{3}$	**bēs** (bessis)	$= \frac{2}{3}$		

hērēs ex asse (**ē triente**)	*heir to the whole* (*one third of the*) *property*

434. **Interest** (ūsūrae or fēnus) was reckoned **by the month** at so many hundredth parts (**centēsimae**, *i.e.* **centēsimae partēs**) of the capital (**sors**).

Accordingly **ūsūrae centēsimae** = 1 *per cent. per mensem* = 12 *per cent. per annum.*

ūsūrae bīnae centēsimae = 2 *per cent. per mensem* = 24 *per cent. per annum.*

Lower rates were expressed by fractions of the **ās** in apposition to **ūsūrae** or **fēnus**, the rate of 1 *per cent. per mensem* being taken as the standard; *e.g.*

fēnus triens = $\frac{1}{3}$ *per cent. per mensem* = 4 *per cent. per annum*
ūsūrae bessēs = $\frac{2}{3}$ *per cent. per mensem* = 8 *per cent. per annum*

fēnus ex triente factum erat bessibus	*interest had advanced from 4 to 8 per cent.*

Obs. In the above example **bessibus** is ablative of price (§ 375).

PRAENOMINA.

§ 435. A free-born Roman had three names: **praenōmen**, **nōmen**, and **cognōmen**. The **praenōmen** was the **personal** name, the **nōmen** that of the **gens** (*clan*), the **cognōmen** that of the **familia** (*family*); *e.g.* **Publius Cornēlius Scīpiō** is the individual **Publius** belonging to the **gens Cornēlia** and the **familia Scīpiōnum**.

The following is a list of Roman **praenōmina** with the abbreviations commonly used :—

A.	**Aulus**	N.	**Numerius**
App.	**Appius**	P.	**Publius**
C.	**Gāius**	Q.	**Quintus**
Cn.	**Gnaeus**	Ser.	**Servius**
D.	**Decimus**	Sex. or S.	**Sextus**
K.	**Kaesō**	Sp.	**Spurius**
L.	**Lūcius**	T.	**Titus**
M.	**Marcus**	Ti.	**Tiberius**
M'.	**Mānius**		

READING LESSON 48.

MOTHER EARTH CALLS UPON HER CHILDREN, THE GIANTS, TO MAKE WAR ON THE GODS.

O pubes domitura deos, quodcumque videtis
Pugnando dabitur. Praestat victoria mundum.
Sentiet ille meas tandem Saturnius iras.
Agnoscet quod Terra potest. Sic viribus illis
Vincor: cur Cybele nobis meliora creavit?
Cur nullus Telluris honos? cur semper acerbis
Me damnis urgere solet? Quae forma nocendi
Defuit? Hinc volucrem vivo sub pectore pascit
Infelix Scythica fixus convalle Prometheus.
Hinc Atlantis apex flammantia pondera fulcit,
Et per canitiem glacies asperrima durat.
Quid dicam Tityon, cuius sub vulture flavo
Viscera nascuntur gravibus certantia poenis?
Sed vos, o tandem veniens exercitus ultor,
Solvite Titanas vinclis: defendite matrem.

Claudian, Gigantomachia, 14-28.

EXERCISE 48.

1. Some fled to one city, some to another. 2. Do not say you did not see him. 3. The prisoner could be persuaded neither by prayers nor threats to confess. 4. Cannot you govern your tongue for a single hour? 5. He was so far from repenting of his crime that he boasted of it. 6. I have been waiting for you for a long time. 7. He determined to send six thousand picked soldiers to attack the town. 8. It makes a very great difference whether you act deliberately or on the spur of the moment. 9. Shall we not rightly be sorry if we refuse to buy peace at a lower price than victory? 10. It was of great importance to Clodius that corn should be sold at a cheap rate. 11. You will certainly have reason to regret your clemency if you spare these villains.

12. I hope that this will be found to be true, but I fear that it is false. 13. I would rather live unknown than be eager to attain fame. 14. The issue of the war was different from what men had expected. 15. As it had rained for several days, it was not easy to cross the river. 16. A general who knows how to win a victory ought not to be too lazy to make use of it. 17. You may give this book to any of the boys, but see that he takes it home immediately. 18. I think your father would have given me the money if I had met him on the Sacred Way. 19. I am sure that the city will be taken. 20. There was a rumour early in the summer that he had secretly collected a large force, and that as soon as the ships arrived he was going to cross the channel, in the hope of reducing the island to subjection.

PART II.—SUMMARY OF ACCIDENCE.

SUBSTANTIVES.

436. First (or A) Declension.

Example: **mensa** (f.), *table*. Base, **mens-**.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nominative.	**mens-a**	**mens-ae**
Vocative.	**mens-a**	**mens-ae**
Accusative.	**mens-am**	**mens-ās**
Genitive.	**mens-ae**	**mens-ārum**
Dative.	**mens-ae**	**mens-īs**
Ablative.	**mens-ā**	**mens-īs**

437. Second (or O) Declension.

(1) Example: **dominus** (m.), *lord*. Base, **domin-**.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	**domin-us**	**domin-ī**
Voc.	**domin-e**	**domin-ī**
Acc.	**domin-um**	**domin-ōs**
Gen.	**domin-ī**	**domin-ōrum**
Dat.	**domin-ō**	**domin-īs**
Abl.	**domin-ō**	**domin-īs**

(2) Example: **magister** (m.), *master*. Base, **magistr-**.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	**magister**	**magistr-ī**
Voc.	**magister**	**magistr-ī**
Acc.	**magistr-um**	**magistr-ōs**
Gen.	**magistr-ī**	**magistr-ōrum**
Dat.	**magistr-ō**	**magistr-īs**
Abl.	**magistr-ō**	**magistr-īs**

(3) Example: **regnum** (n.), *kingdom*. Base, **regn-**.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.A.	regn-um	regn-a
Gen.	regn-ī	regn-ōrum
Dat.	regn-ō	regn-īs
Abl.	regn-ō	regn-īs

Third Declension (I-substantives).

I. Masculine and Feminine Substantives.

438. Parisyllabic I-substantives add **-ēs** or **-is** to the base in the nom. sing.

First example: **nūbēs** (f.), *cloud*. Base, **nūb-**.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.	nūb-ēs	nūb-ēs
Acc.	nūb-em	nūb-ēs *or* -īs
Gen.	nūb-is	nūb-ium
Dat.	nūb-ī	nūb-ibus
Abl.	nūb-e	nūb-ibus

Second example: **hostis** (c.), *enemy*. Base, **host-**.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.	host-is	host-ēs
Acc.	host-em	host-ēs *or* -īs
Gen.	host-is	host-ium
Dat.	host-ī	host-ibus
Abl.	host-e	host-ibus

439. Substantives with base ending in two consonants have the suffix **-s** in the nom. sing.

First example: **urbs** (f.), *city*. Base, **urb-**.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.V.	urb-s	urb-ēs
Acc.	urb-em	urb-ēs *or* -īs
Gen.	urb-is	urb-ium
Dat.	urb-ī	urb-ibus
Abl.	urb-e	urb-ibus

Second example (with dental dropped before -s in the nom. sing.): dens (m.), *tooth*. Base, dent-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. den-s	dent-ēs
Acc. dent-em	dent-ēs *or* -īs
Gen. dent-is	dent-Ium
Dat. dent-ī	dent-ibus
Abl. dent-e	dent-ibus

II. Neuter Substantives.

440. Substantives with nom. sing. ending in -e drop the -e in the base.

Example: mare (n.), *sea*. Base, mar-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V.A. mar-e	mar-ia
Gen. mar-is	mar-Ium
Dat. mar-ī	mar-ibus
Abl. mar-ī	mar-ibus

441. In substantives with nom. sing. ending in -al or -ar a final -e has been dropped and the last vowel of the base (if long) shortened.

Example: animal (n.), *animal*. Base, animāl-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V.A. animal	animāl-ia
Gen. animāl-is	animāl-Ium
Dat. animāl-ī	animāl-ibus
Abl. animāl-ī	animāl-ibus

Third Declension (Consonant-substantives).

442. The nom. sing. frequently ends in -s.

Example: hiems (f.), *winter*. Base, hiem-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. hiem-s	hiem-ēs
Acc. hiem-em	hiem-ēs
Gen. hiem-is	hiem-um
Dat. hiem-ī	hiem-ibus
Abl. hiem-e	hiem-ibus

Often the increase in the number of syllables is accompanied by a change of vowel (e to i).

Example: **princeps** (c.), *chief*. Base, princip-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. princep-s	princip-ēs
Acc. princip-em	princip-ēs
Gen. princip-is	princip-um
Dat. princip-ī	princip-ibus
Abl. princip-e	princip-ibus

443. Final **s** in the nom. sing. changes to r in the base.

First example: **crūs** (n.), *leg*. Base, crūr-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V.A. crūs	crūr-a
Gen. crūr-is	crūr-um
Dat. crūr-ī	crūr-ibus
Abl. crūr-e	crūr-ibus

Second example (with vowel change): **opus** (n.), *work*. Base, oper-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V.A. opus	oper-a
Gen. oper-is	oper-um
Dat. oper-ī	oper-ibus
Abl. oper-e	oper-ibus

Irregular Substantives.

444. **Bōs** (c.), *ox* or *cow*. **Sūs** (c.), *boar* or *sow*.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N.V. **bōs**	**bovēs**	*N.V.* **sūs**	**suēs**
Acc. **bovem**	**bovēs**	*Acc.* **suem**	**suēs**
Gen. **bovis**	**boum**	*Gen.* **suis**	**suum**
Dat. **bovī**	**būbus** *or* **bōbus**	*Dat.* **suī**	**suibus** *or* **subus**
Abl. **bove**	**būbus** *or* **bōbus**	*Abl.* **sue**	**suibus** *or* **subus**

Iuppiter (m.), *Jupiter* (a Roman god). (No plural.)

Singular.	
N.V. **Iuppiter**	*Dat.* **Iovī**
Acc. **Iovem**	*Abl.* **Iove**
Gen. **Iovis**	

445. FOURTH (OR U) DECLENSION.

(1) Example: gradus (m.), *step*. Base, grad-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. grad-us	grad-ūs
Acc. grad-um	grad-ūs
Gen. grad-ūs	grad-Uum
Dat. grad-uī	grad-ibus
Abl. grad-ū	grad-ibus

(2) Example: genū (n.), *knee*. Base, gen-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V.A. gen-ū	gen-ua
Gen. gen-ūs	gen-Uum
Dat. gen-ū	gen-ibus
Abl. gen-ū	gen-ibus

446. FIFTH (OR E) DECLENSION.

Example: diēs (m. or f. in sing., m. in pl.), *day*. Base, di-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. di-ēs	di-ēs
Acc. di-em	di-ēs
Gen. di-ēī	di-Erum
Dat. di-ēī	di-ēbus
Abl. di-ē	di-ēbus

447. In respublica (f.), *commonwealth*, each part of the word is declined, viz. rēs, *thing*, and publica, fem. of the adjective publicus, -a, -um, *public*. The plural is rarely used; the singular (sometimes written as two words) is thus declined:—

N.V. respublica
Acc. rempublicam
Gen. rēīpublicae
Dat. rēīpublicae
Abl. rēpublicā

Greek Substantives.

448. First Declension.

(1) Examples: **Aenēās** (m.), *Aeneas*; **Tȳdīdēs** (m.), *son of Tydeus* (see § 363).

Singular.		Singular.	
Nom.	**Aenē-ās**	*Nom.*	**Tȳdīd-ēs**
Voc.	**Aenē-ā**	*Voc.*	**Tȳdīd-ē**
Acc.	**Aenē-ān**	*Acc.*	**Tȳdīd-ēn**
Gen.	**Aenē-ae**	*Gen.*	**Tȳdīd-ae**
Dat.	**Aenē-ae**	*Dat.*	**Tȳdīd-ae**
Abl.	**Aenē-ā**	*Abl.*	**Tȳdīd-ē**

amples: **Ēlectrā** (f.), *Electra*; **Phoebē** (f.), *Phoebe*.

Singular.		Singular.	
N. V.	**Ēlectr-ā**	*N. V.*	**Phoeb-ē**
Acc.	**Ēlectr-ān**	*Acc.*	**Phoeb-ēn**
Gen.	**Ēlectr-ae**	*Gen.*	**Phoeb-ēs**
Dat.	**Ēlectr-ae**	*Dat.*	**Phoeb-ae**
Abl.	**Ēlectr-ā**	*Abl.*	**Phoeb-ē**

449. Second Declension.

Examples: (1) **Dēlos** (f.), *Delos*
(2) **rhododendron** (n.), *rhododendron*

Singular.		Singular.	
Nom.	**Dēl-os**	*Nom.*	**rhododendr-on**
Voc.	**Dēl-e**	*Voc.*	**rhododendr-on**
Acc.	**Dēl-on**	*Acc.*	**rhododendr-on**
Gen.	**Dēl-ī**	*Gen.*	**rhododendr-ī**
D. Abl.	**Dēl-ō**	*D. Abl.*	**rhododendr-ō**

In the plural Greek forms occur as follows:—*nom.* (m. or f.) in **oe**, *e.g.* Adelphoe, "*The Brothers*"; *gen.* in **-ōn**, *e.g.* Georgicōn, *of the "Georgics."*

450. Third Declension.

Examples: (1) **lampas** (f.), *torch*
Tēthys (f.), *Tethys*
(2) **tigris** (c.), *tiger*
(3) **ēchō** (f.), *echo*

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	lampa-s	lampad-es
Acc.	lampad-a	lampad-as
Gen.	lampad-os	lampad-um
Dat.	lampad-ī	lampad-ibus
Abl.	lampad-e	lampad-ibus

	Singular.
Nom.	Tēthy-s
Voc.	Tēthy
Acc.	Tēthy-n
Gen.	Tēthy-os
Dat.	Tēthy-ī
Abl.	Tēthy-e

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	tigr-is	tigr-ēs
Acc.	tigr-im	tigr-ēs *or* tigrid-as
Gen.	tigr-is *or* tigrid-is	tigr-ium
Dat.	tigr-ī *or* tigrid-ī	tigr-ibus
Abl.	tigr-e *or* tigrid-e	tigr-ibus

	Singular.
N. V. A.	ēch-ō
Gen.	ēch-ūs
Dat.	ēch-ō
Abl.	ēch-ō

451. Substantives of the Greek Third Declension with some Latin Second Declension Forms.

	Singular.
Nom.	Sōcrat-ēs
Voc.	Sōcrat-ē
Acc.	Sōcrat-ēn
Gen.	Sōcrat-ī *or* -is
Dat.	Sōcrat-ī
Abl.	Sōcrat-ē

	Singular.
Nom.	Atr-ēūs
Voc.	Atr-ēū
Acc.	Atr-eum *or* -ea
Gen.	Atr-eī *or* -eos
Dat.	Atr-eō *or* -eī
Abl.	Atr-eō

ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives of the First Class.

452. Examples: bonus, bona, bonum, *good*. Base, bon-.
niger, nigra, nigrum, *black*. Base, nigr-.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	bon-us	bon-a	bon-um	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-a
Voc.	bon-e	bon-a	bon-um	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-a
Acc.	bon-um	bon-am	bon-um	bon-ōs	bon-ās	bon-a
Gen.	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-ī	bon-ōrum	bon-ārum	bon-ōrum
Dat.	bon-ō	bon-ae	bon-ō	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs
Abl.	bon-ō	bon-ā	bon-ō	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.V.	niger	nigr-a	nigr-um	nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-a
Acc.	nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-a
Gen.	nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
Dat.	nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
Abl.	nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs

453. Example: nullus, nulla, nullum, *no, none.* Base, null-

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	null-us	null-a	null-um	null-ī	null-ae	null-a
Acc.	null-um	null-am	null-um	null-ōs	null-ās	null-a
Gen.	null-īus	null-īus	null-īus	null-ōrum	null-ārum	null-ōrum
Dat.	null-ī	null-ī	null-ī	null-īs	null-īs	null-īs
Abl.	null-ō	null-ā	null-ō	null-īs	null-īs	null-īs

Adjectives of the Second Class.

454. I. Those declined like I-substantives.

Examples: (*a*) ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp.* Base, ācr-.
(*b*) tristis, triste, *sad.* Base, trist-.
(*c*) fēlix, *fortunate.* Base, fēlīc-.
prūdens, *discreet.* Base, prūdent-.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. and F.		Neut.
N.V.	ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e	ācr-ēs		ācr-ia
Acc.	ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-e	ācr-ēs *or* -īs		ācr-ia
Gen.		ācr-is			ācr-ium	
Dat.		ācr-ī			ācr-ibus	
Abl.		ācr-ī			ācr-ibus	

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N.V.	trist-is	trist-e	trist-ēs	trist-ia
Acc.	trist-em	trist-e	trist-ēs *or* -īs	trist-ia
Gen.	trist-is		trist-ium	
Dat.	trist-ī		trist-ibus	
Abl.	trist-ī		trist-ibus	

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N.V.	fēlix		fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ia
Acc.	fēlīc-em	fēlix	fēlīc-ēs *or* -īs	fēlīc-ia
Gen.	fēlīc-is		fēlīc-ium	
Dat.	fēlīc-ī		fēlīc-ibus	
Abl.	fēlīc-ī *or* -e		fēlīc-ibus	

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N.V.	prūdens		prūdent-ēs	prūdent-ia
Acc.	prūdent-em	prūdens	prūdent-ēs *or* -īs	prūdent-ia
Gen.	prūdent-is		prūdent-ium	
Dat.	prūdent-ī		prūdent-ibus	
Abl.	prūdent-ī *or* -e		prūdent-ibus	

NOTE.—Adjectives in -er are declined like (1) **ācer**, (2) **tener**, or (3) **niger**.

(1) To **ācer**, **alacer**, **campester**, **celer**, **celeber**, **equester**, **terrester**, **paluster**, **pedester**, **salūber**, **volucer**, **silvester**, add **puter** and months like **September**.

(2) Like **tener** compound words in -fer retain the **e**; so those in -ger. Add **asper**, *rough*, and **lacer**, *torn*, with **līber**, *free*, and **miser**, *lorn*.

(3) All other adjectives in -er are declined like **niger**.

455. II. **Those declined like Consonant-substantives.**

Examples: (*a*) **longior**, **longius**, *longer*. Base, **longiōr-**.
(*b*) **pauper**, *poor*. Base, **pauper-**.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N.V.	longior	longius	longiōr-ēs	longiōr-a
Acc.	longiōr-em	longius	longiōr-ēs	longiōr-a
Gen.	longiōr-is		longiōr-um	
Dat.	longiōr-ī		longiōr-ibus	
Abl.	longiōr-e		longiōr-ibus	

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. V.	pauper		pauper-ēs	*none*
Acc.	pauper-em	pauper	pauper-ēs	*none*
Gen.	pauper-is		pauper-um	
Dat.	pauper-ī		pauper-ibus	
Abl.	pauper-e		pauper-ibus	

	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Adverbs.
1	ūn-us, *one*	prīm-us, *first*	singul-ī, *one a-*	semel, *once*
2	du-o	secund-us *or* alter*	bīn-ī [*piece*	bis
3	tr-ēs	terti-us	tern-ī *or* trīn-ī†	ter
4	quattuor	quart-us	quatern-ī	quater
5	quinque	quint-us	quīn-ī	quinquiēs
6	sex	sext-us	sēn-ī	sexiēs
7	septem	septim-us	septēn-ī	septiēs
8	octo	octāv-us	octōn-ī	octiēs
9	novem	nōn-us	novēn-ī	noviēs
10	decem	decim-us	dēn-ī	deciēs
11	undecim	undecim-us	undēn-ī	undeciēs
12	duodecim	duodecim-us	duodēn-ī	duodeciēs
13	tredecim	terti-us decim-us	tern-ī dēn-ī	terdeciēs
14	quattuordecim	quart-us decim-us	quatern-ī dēn-ī	quater deciēs
15	quindecim	quint-us decim-us	quīn-ī dēn-ī	quindeciēs
16	sēdecim	sext-us decim-us	sēn-ī dēn-ī	sēdeciēs
17	septemdecim	septim-us decim-us	septēn-ī dēn-ī	septiēs deciēs
18	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsim-us	duodēvīcēn-ī	duodēvīciēs
19	undēvīgintī	undēvīcēsim-us	undēvīcēn-ī	undēvīciēs
20	vīgintī	vīcēsim-us	vīcēn-ī	vīciēs
21	ūn-us et vīgintī *or* vīgintī ūn-us	ūn-us et vīcēsim-us *or* vīcēsim-us prīm-us	vīcēn-ī singul-ī	semel et vīciēs
22	du-o et vīgintī *or* vīgintī du-o	alt-er et vīcēsim-us *or* vīcēsim-us alt-er	vīcēn-ī bīn-ī	bis et vīciēs
28	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsim-us	duodētrīcēn-ī	duodētrīciēs
29	undētrīgintā	undētrīcēsim-us	undētrīcēn-ī	undētrīciēs
30	trīgintā	trīcēsim-us	trīcēn-ī	trīciēs
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsim-us	quadrāgēn-ī	quadrāgiēs
50	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsim-us	quinquāgēn-ī	quinquāgiēs
60	sexāgintā	sexāgēsim-us	sexāgēn-ī	sexāgiēs
70	septuāgintā	septuāgēsim-us	septuāgēn-ī	septuāgiēs
80	octōgintā	octōgēsim-us	octōgēn-ī	octōgiēs
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsim-us	nōnāgēn-ī	nōnāgiēs
100	centum	centēsim-us	centēn-ī	centiēs
200	ducent-ī	ducentēsim-us	ducēn-ī	ducentiēs
300	trecent-ī	trecentēsim us	trecēn-ī	trecentiēs
400	quadringent-ī	quadringentēsim-us	quadringēn-ī	quadringentiēs
500	quingent-ī	quingentēsim-us	quingēn-ī	quingentiēs
600	sescent-ī	sescentēsim-us	sescēn-ī	sescentiēs
700	septingent-ī	septingentēsim-us	septingēn-ī	septingentiēs
800	octingent-ī	octingentēsim-us	octingēn-ī	octingentiēs
900	nongent-ī	nongentēsim-us	nongēn-ī	nongentiēs
1000	mille	millēsim-us	singul-a mīl-ia	milliēs
2000	du-o mīl-ia	bis millēsim-us	bīn-a mīl-ia	bis milliēs

* **Alter**, *second* (*of two*) ; **secundus**, *second* (*of a larger number than two*).

† **Trīnī** (not **ternī**) is used with substantives plural in form but singular in meaning; *e.g.* **trīnae aedēs**, *three houses*.

457. Duo and trēs are thus declined:—

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N.V.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Acc.	duōs *or* duo	duās	duo	trēs *or* trīs	tria
Gen.	duōrum *or* duum	duārum *or* duum	duōrum *or* duum	trium	
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	

NOTE.—Ambo, *both, the two*, is declined like duo.

PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

458. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, **ego**, *I*, and **tū**, *thou*, are of common gender.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. ego	nōs
Acc. mē	nōs
Gen. meī	nostrī nostrum (partitive)
Dat. mihi *or* (in poetry) mī	nōbīs
Abl. mē	nōbīs

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. tū	vōs
Acc. tē	vōs
Gen. tuī	vestrī vestrum (partitive)
Dat. tibi	vōbīs
Abl. tē	vōbīs

NOTE.—Final **i** is sometimes long in **mihi**, **tibi**.

459. For the third person reflexive there is a special form, *viz.* **sē**, *himself, herself, itself, themselves*, which is thus declined for both numbers and all genders:—

Singular and Plural.

Acc. sē *or* sēsē
Gen. suī
Dat. sibi *or* sibī
Abl. sē *or* sēsē

Demonstrative Pronouns.

460. Hīc, *this*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	hīc *or* hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae (haec)	haec
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs (hosce)	hās (hasce)	haec
Gen.	hūius (hūiusce)			hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic				hīs (hisce)	
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc		hīs (hisce)	

461. Iste or Istic, *that (of yours)*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Gen.	istīus			istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī				istīs	
Abl.	istō	istā	istō		istīs	

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	istic	istaec	istūc	istīce	istaec	istaec
Acc.	istunc	istanc	istūc	istosce	istasce	istaec
Gen.	istīusce			istōrunc	istārunc	istōrunc
Dat.	istī				istisce	
Abl.	istōc	istāc	istōc		istisce	

462. Ille, *that (yonder)*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī*	illae	illa
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Gen.	illius			illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī*				illīs	
Abl.	illō	illā	illō		illīs	

* In poetry also **olli**.

463. **Is**, *that.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī *or* iī	eae	ea
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Gen.		ēius		eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.		eī			eīs *or* iīs	
Abl.	eō	eā	eō		eīs *or* iīs	

464. **Īdem**, *the same.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	īdem *or* eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eosdem	easdem	eadem
Gen.		ēiusdem		eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.		eīdem			isdem *or* eisdem	
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem		isdem *or* eisdem	

465. **Ipse**, (*I*) *myself*, (*you*) *yourself*, (*he*) *himself.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Gen.		ipsīus		ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.		ipsī			ipsīs	
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		ipsīs	

Relative Pronouns.

466. **Quī**, *who, which.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Gen.		cūius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.		cui		quibus (in poetry also quīs)		
Abl.	quō, quī*	quā	quō	quibus (in poetry also quīs)		

* All genders (rare).

Interrogative Pronouns.

467. **Quis**, *who, which.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quis / quī	quae	quid / quod	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quid / quod	quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	cūius			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui			quibus (in poetry also quīs)		
Abl.	quō / quī*	quā	quō	quibus (in poetry also quīs)		

* Only as adverb, *how?*

Indefinite Pronouns.

468. **Quis**, *any.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quis / quī	qua	quid / quod	quī	quae	qua
Acc.	quem	quam	quid / quod	quōs	quās	qua
Gen.	cūius			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui			quibus (in poetry also quīs)		
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus (in poetry also quīs)		

469. **Quīdam**, *a certain (one).*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam / quoddam	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Acc.	quemdam	quamdam	quiddam / quoddam	quosdam	quasdam	quaedam
Gen.	cūiusdam			quōrumdam	quārumdam	quōrumdam
Dat.	cuidam				quibusdam	
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam		quibusdam	

Obs. In the above declension **n** is sometimes written instead of **m** before **d**; *e.g.* **quendam, quandam**; cp. the declension of **īdem**, § 464.

470. Synopsis of Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives (§§ 112-117; also § 81).

Demonstrative.	Relative.	Interrogative.	Indefinite.	
hĭc or **hic**, *this* **iste** (istic), *that (of yours)* **ille**, *that (yonder)* **is**, *that*; **īdem**, *the same*; **ipse**, *he himself*	**quī**, *who* **quīcumque**, *whoever* **quisquis**, *whoever*	**quis**, *who?* **quisnam**, *who, pray?*	**quisque**, *each* **quilibet**, *any you please* **quīvīs**, *any you will*	**quīdam**, *a certain one* **aliquis** (subst.), *someone* **aliquī** (adj.), *some* **quispiam**, *someone* **quisquam**, **ullus** (adj.), **quis** (adj. **quī**), *anyone, any* (with negative)
Referring to *two* objects only:—	**uter**, *which of two* **utercumque**, *whichever*	**uter**, *which of two?*	**uterque**, *each* **uterlibet**, *which you please* **utervīs**, *which you will*	**alteruter**, *the one or the other*
tālis, *such*	**quālis**, *as* **quāliscumque**, *of what kind soever*	**quālis**, *of what kind?*		
tantus, *so great* **tantusdem**, *just so great*	**quantus**, (*as great*) *as* **quantuscumque**, *how great soever*	**quantus**, *how great?*	**quantusvīs**, *as great as you will*	**aliquantus**, *of a considerable size*
tantulus, *so small*	**quantulus**, (*as small*) *as* **quantuluscumque**, *how small soever*	**quantulus**, *how small?*		**aliquantulus**, *of a small size*
tot, *so many* **totidem**, *just so many*	**quot**, (*as many*) *as* **quotcumque** or **quotquot**, *how many soever*	**quot**, *how many?* **quotus**,* *which (in numerical order)?*		

* **Quotus** asks a question answered by an ordinal numeral; *e.g.* **quota pars?** *what part?* (Answer: **tertia**, *one-third*, etc.) It is often used in conjunction with **quisque**, *each*, to signify *how few! e.g.* **quotusquisque** (or **quotus quisque**) **bonus est!** *how few good men there are!*

VERBS.

471. Table of Bases in a Latin Verb.

		Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imperative.	Verbals.
Present Base	Present	Act. & Pass.	Act. & Pass.	Act. & Pass.	Pres. Part.
	Imperfect	,, ,,	,, ,,	——	Gerundive
	Future	,, ,,	——	,, ,,	Pres. Inf. Act. & Pass.
					Gerund
Perfect Base	Perfect	Active	Active	——	Perf. Inf. Act.
	Pluperfect	,,	,,	——	——
	Future Perf.	,,	——	——	——
Supine Base	Perfect	Passive	Passive	——	Perf. Part. (& Inf.) Pass.
	Pluperfect	,,	,,	——	Fut. Part. (& Inf.) Act.
	Future Perf.	,,	——	——	Supine (& Fut. Inf. Pass.)

472. The Verb **Sum.**

Principal Parts : **sum, esse, fu-ī,** (*no supine*).

Participles * { Present : *none*
Future : **futūrus, futūra, futūrum**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

sum,	*I am*	**sumus,**	*we are*
es,	*thou art*	**estis,**	*ye are*
est,	*he is*	**sunt,**	*they are*

Imperfect Tense.

eram,	*I was*	**erāmus,**	*we were*
erās,	*thou wast*	**erātis,**	*ye were*
erat,	*he was*	**erant,**	*they were*

Future Tense.

erō,	*I shall be*	**erimus,**	*we shall be*
eris,	*thou wilt be*	**eritis,**	*ye will be*
erit,	*he will be*	**erunt,**	*they will be*

Perfect Tense.

fu-ī,	*I was* or *I have been*	**fu-imus,**	*we were* or *we have been*
fu-istī,	*thou wast* or *thou hast been*	**fu-istis,**	*ye were* or *ye have been*
fu-it,	*he was* or *he has been*	**fu-ērunt** or **fu-ēre**	*they were* or *they have been*

Pluperfect Tense.

fu-eram,	*I had been*	**fu-erāmus,**	*we had been*
fu-erās,	*thou hadst been*	**fu-erātis,**	*ye had been*
fu-erat,	*he had been*	**fu-erant,**	*they had been*

Future-Perfect Tense.

fu-erō,	*I shall have been*	**fu erimus,**	*we shall have been*
fu-eris,	*thou wilt have been*	**fu-eritis,**	*ye will have been*
fu erit,	*he will have been*	**fu-erint,**	*they will have been*

* In this and other tables of the conjugation of verbs the participles are given first, as some parts of the verb are formed by means of a participle and the auxiliary.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
PRESENT TENSE.		
sim,	*I should be*	(*if*) *I were to be*
sīs,	*thou wouldst be*	(*in order that*) *I may be*
sit,	*he would be*	(*so that*) *I am*
sīmus,	*we should be*	(*although*) *I am*
sītis,	*ye would be*	
sint,	*they would be*	
IMPERFECT TENSE.		
essem *or* **forem,**	*I should be*	(*if*) *I were*
essēs *or* **forēs,**	*thou wouldst be*	(*in order that*) *I might be*
esset *or* **foret,**	*he would be*	(*so that*) *I was*
essēmus *or* **forēmus,**	*we should be*	(*when, although,* etc.) *I was*
essētis *or* **forētis,**	*ye would be*	
essent *or* **forent,**	*they would be*	
PERFECT TENSE.		
fu-erim	rare in principal sentences	(*if*) *I were to have been*
fu-eris		(*so that*) *I was* or *have been*
fu-erit		(*although*) *I have been*
fu-erimus		
fu-eritis		
fu-erint		
PLUPERFECT TENSE.		
fu-issem,	*I should have been*	(*if*) *I had been*
fu issēs,	*thou wouldst have been*	(*when, although,* etc.) *I had been*
fu-isset,	*he would have been*	
fu-issēmus,	*we should have been*	
fu-issētis,	*ye would have been*	
fu-issent,	*they would have been*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

es,	*be* (*thou*)	**este,**	*be* (*ye*)

FUTURE TENSE.

estō,	*thou shalt* or *must be*	**estōte,**	*ye shall* or *must be*
estō,	*he shall* or *must be*	**suntō,**	*they shall* or *must be*

INFINITIVE.		GERUND.
PRESENT:	**esse,** *to be*	None.
PERFECT:	**fu-isse,** *to have been*	SUPINE.
FUTURE:	**fore** *or* **futūr-us esse,** *to be about to be*	None.

473. First (or A) Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Model: **amō**, *I love, I like.*

Principal Parts: **am-āre, amāv-ī, amāt-um.**

Bases: **am-** (present); **amāv-** (perfect); **amāt-** (supine).

Participles { Present: **am-ans** (gen. **amant-is**), *loving*
Future: **amāt-ūrus, amāt-ūra, amāt-ūrum**, *about to love*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

am-ō,	*I love*	**am-āmus,**	*we love*
am-ās,	*thou lovest*	**am-ātis,**	*ye love*
am-at,	*he loves*	**am-ant,**	*they love*

Imperfect Tense.

am-ābam,	*I was loving*	**am-ābāmus,**	*we were loving*
am-ābās,	*thou wast loving*	**am-ābātis,**	*ye were loving*
am-ābat,	*he was loving*	**am-ābant,**	*they were loving*

Future Tense.

am-ābō,	*I shall love*	**am-ābimus,**	*we shall love*
am-ābis,	*thou wilt love*	**am-ābitis,**	*ye will love*
am-ābit,	*he will love*	**am-ābunt,**	*they will love*

Perfect Tense.

amāv-ī,	*I loved* or *have loved*	**amāv-imus,**	*we loved* or *have loved*
amāv-istī,	*thou lovedst* or *hast loved*	**amāv-istis,**	*ye loved* or *have loved*
amāv-it,	*he loved* or *has loved*	**amāv-ērunt** or **amāv-ēre**	*they loved* or *have loved*

Pluperfect Tense.

amav-eram,	*I had loved*	**amāv-erāmus,**	*we had loved*
amāv-erās,	*thou hadst loved*	**amāv-erātis,**	*ye had loved*
amāv-erat,	*he had loved*	**amāv-erant,**	*they had loved*

Future-Perfect Tense.

amāv-erō,	*I shall have loved*	**amāv-erimus,**	*we shall have loved*
amāv-eris,	*thou wilt have loved*	**amāv-eritis,**	*ye will have loved*
amāv-erit,	*he will have loved*	**amāv-erint,**	*they will have loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
PRESENT TENSE.		
am-em,	*I should love*	(*if*) *I were to love*
am-ēs,	*thou wouldst love*	(*in order that*) *I may love*
am-et,	*he would love*	(*so that*) *I love*
am-ēmus,	*we should love*	(*although*) *I love*
am-ētis,	*ye would love*	
am-ent,	*they would love*	
IMPERFECT TENSE.		
am-ārem,	*I should be loving*	(*if*) *I were loving*
am-ārēs,	*thou wouldst be loving*	(*in order that*) *I might love*
am-āret,	*he would be loving*	(*so that*) *I loved*
am-ārēmus,	*we should be loving*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I was loving*
am-ārētis,	*ye would be loving*	
am-ārent,	*they would be loving*	
PERFECT TENSE.		
amāv-erim amāv-eris amāv-erit amāv-erimus amāv-eritis amāv-erint	rare in principal sentences	(*if*) *I were to have loved* (*so that*) *I loved* or *have loved* (*although*) *I have loved*
PLUPERFECT TENSE.		
amāv-issem,	*I should have loved*	(*if*) *I had loved*
amāv-issēs,	*thou wouldst have loved*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I had loved*
amāv-isset,	*he would have loved*	
amāv-issēmus,	*we should have loved*	
amāv issētis,	*ye would have loved*	
amāv-issent,	*they would have loved*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ā,	*love* (*thou*)	am-āte,	*love* (*ye*)

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ātō,	*thou shalt* or *must love*	am-ātōte,	*ye shall* or *must love*
am-ātō,	*he shall* or *must love*	am-antō,	*they shall* or *must love*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **am-āre**, *to love*
PERFECT: **amāv-isse**, *to have loved*
FUTURE: **amātūr-us esse**, *to be about to love*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* **am-andum**)
Acc. **am-andum**, *loving*
Gen. **am-andī**
Dat. **am-andō**
Abl. **am-andō**

SUPINE.

Acc. **amāt-um**, *to love* | *Abl.* **amāt-ū**, *in loving*

474. SECOND (OR E) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

MODEL: **moneō**, *I advise.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **mon-ēre, monu-ī, monit-um.**

BASES: **mon-** (present); **monu-** (perfect); **monit-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: **mon-ens** (gen. **monentis**), *advising*; FUTURE: **monit-ūrus, monit-ūra, monit-ūrum**, *about to advise*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-eō,	*I advise*	**mon-ēmus,**	*we advise*
mon-ēs,	*thou advisest*	**mon-ētis,**	*ye advise*
mon-et,	*he advises*	**mon-ent,**	*they advise*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ēbam,	*I was advising*	**mon-ēbāmus,**	*we were advising*
mon-ēbās,	*thou wast advising*	**mon-ēbātis,**	*ye were advising*
mon-ēbat,	*he was advising*	**mon-ēbant,**	*they were advising*

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ēbō,	*I shall advise*	**mon-ēbimus,**	*we shall advise*
mon-ēbis,	*thou wilt advise*	**mon-ēbitis,**	*ye will advise*
mon-ēbit,	*he will advise*	**mon ēbunt,**	*they will advise*

PERFECT TENSE.

monu-ī,	*I advised* or *have advised*	**monu-imus,**	*we advised* or *have advised*
monu-istī,	*thou advisedst* or *hast advised*	**monu-istis,**	*ye advised* or *have advised*
monu-it,	*he advised* or *has advised*	**monu-ērunt** or **monu-ēre**	*they advised* or *have advised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monu-eram,	*I had advised*	**monu-erāmus,**	*we had advised*
monu-erās,	*thou hadst advised*	**monu-erātis,**	*ye had advised*
monu-erat,	*he had advised*	**monu erant,**	*they had advised*

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

monu-erō,	*I shall have advised*	**monu-erimus,**	*we shall*
monu-eris,	*thou wilt have advised*	**monu-eritis,**	*ye will*
monu-erit,	*he will have advised*	**monu-erint,**	*they will* } *have advised*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
PRESENT TENSE.		
mon-eam,	*I should advise*	(*if*) *I were to advise*
mon-eās,	*thou wouldst advise*	(*in order that*) *I may advise*
mon-eat,	*he would advise*	
mon-eāmus,	*we should advise*	(*so that*) *I advise*
mon-eātis,	*ye would advise*	(*although*) *I advise*
mon-eant,	*they would advise*	
IMPERFECT TENSE.		
mon-ērem,	*I should be advising*	(*if*) *I were advising*
mon-ērēs,	*thou wouldst be advising*	(*in order that*) *I might advise*
mon-ēret,	*he would be advising*	
mon-ērēmus,	*we should be advising*	(*so that*) *I advised*
mon-ērētis,	*ye would be advising*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I was advising*
mon-ērent,	*they would be advising*	
PERFECT TENSE.		
monu-erim	rare in principal sentences	(*if*) *I were to have advised*
monu-eris		(*so that*) *I advised* or *have advised*
monu-erit		(*although*) *I have advised*
monu-erimus		
monu-eritis		
monu-erint		
PLUPERFECT TENSE.		
monu-issem,	*I should have advised*	(*if*) *I had advised*
monu-issēs,	*thou wouldst have advised*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I had advised*
monu-isset,	*he would have advised*	
monu-issēmus,	*we should have advised*	
monu issētis,	*ye would have advised*	
monu-issent,	*they would have advised*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-ē, *advise (thou)* | **mon-ēte,** *advise (ye)*

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ētō, *thou shalt* or *must advise* | **mon-ētōte,** *ye shall* or *must advise*
mon-ētō, *he shall* or *must advise* | **mon-entō,** *they shall* or *must advise*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **mon-ēre,** *to advise*
PERFECT: **monu-isse,** *to have advised*
FUTURE: **monitūr-us esse,** *to be about to advise*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* **mon-endum**)
Acc. **mon-endum,** *advising*
Gen. **mon-endī**
Dat. **mon-endō**
Abl. **mon-endō**

SUPINE.

Acc. **monit-um,** *to advise* | *Abl.* **monit-ū,** *in advising*

475. Third (or Consonant) Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Model: **regō**, *I rule.*

Principal Parts: **reg-ere, rex-ī, rect-um.**

Bases: **reg-** (present); **rex-** (perfect); **rect-** (supine).

Participles { Present. **reg ens** (gen. **regent-is**), *ruling*
Future: **rect-ūrus, rect-ūra, rect ūrum**, *about to rule*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

reg-ō,	*I rule*	**reg imus,**	*we rule*
reg-is,	*thou rulest*	**reg-itis,**	*ye rule*
reg-it,	*he rules*	**reg-unt,**	*they rule*

Imperfect Tense.

reg-ēbam,	*I was ruling*	**reg-ēbāmus,**	*we were ruling*
reg-ēbās,	*thou wast ruling*	**reg ēbātis,**	*ye were ruling*
reg-ēbat,	*he was ruling*	**reg-ēbant,**	*they were ruling*

Future Tense.

reg-am,	*I shall rule*	**reg-ēmus,**	*we shall rule*
reg-ēs,	*thou wilt rule*	**reg ētis,**	*ye will rule*
reg-et,	*he will rule*	**reg-ent,**	*they will rule*

Perfect Tense.

rex-ī,	*I ruled* or *have ruled*	**rex-imus,**	*we ruled* or *have ruled*
rex-istī,	*thou ruledst* or *hast ruled*	**rex-istis,**	*ye ruled* or *have ruled*
rex-it,	*he ruled* or *has ruled*	**rex-ērunt** or **rex-ēre**	*they ruled* or *have ruled*

Pluperfect Tense.

rex-eram,	*I had ruled*	**rex erāmus,**	*we had ruled*
rex-erās,	*thou hadst ruled*	**rex-erātis,**	*ye had ruled*
rex-erat,	*he had ruled*	**rex-erant,**	*they had ruled*

Future-Perfect Tense.

rex-erō,	*I shall have ruled*	**rex-erimus,**	*we shall have ruled*
rex-eris,	*thou wilt have ruled*	**rex-eritis,**	*ye will have ruled*
rex-erit,	*he will have ruled*	**rex-erint,**	*they will have ruled*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
PRESENT TENSE.		
reg-am,	*I should rule*	(*if*) *I were to rule*
reg-ās,	*thou wouldst rule*	(*in order that*) *I may rule*
reg-at,	*he would rule*	
reg-āmus,	*we should rule*	(*so that*) *I rule*
reg ātis,	*ye would rule*	(*although I rule*
reg ant,	*they would rule*	
IMPERFECT TENSE.		
reg-erem,	*I should be ruling*	(*if*) *I were ruling*
reg-erēs,	*thou wouldst be ruling*	(*in order that*) *I might rule*
reg eret,	*he would be ruling*	
reg erēmus,	*we should be ruling*	(*so that*) *I ruled*
reg-erētis,	*ye would be ruling*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I was ruling*
reg erent,	*they would be ruling*	
PERFECT TENSE.		
rex erim	rare in principal sentences	(*if*) *I were to have ruled*
rex-eris		(*so that*) *I ruled* or *have ruled*
rex-erit		(*although*) *I have ruled*
rex-erimus		
rex eritis		
rex-erint		
PLUPERFECT TENSE.		
rex-issem,	*I should have ruled*	(*if*) *I had ruled*
rex-issēs,	*thou wouldst have ruled*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I had ruled*
rex-isset,	*he would have ruled*	
rex-issēmus,	*we should have ruled*	
rex-issētis,	*ye would have ruled*	
rex issent,	*they would have ruled*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.			
reg e,	*rule* (*thou*)	reg-ite,	*rule* (*ye*)
FUTURE TENSE.			
reg itō,	*thou shalt* or *must rule*	reg-itōte,	*ye shall* or *must rule*
reg-itō,	*he shall* or *must rule*	reg-untō,	*they shall* or *must rule*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: reg-ere, *to rule*
PERFECT: rex-isse, *to have ruled*
FUTURE: rectūr-us esse, *to be about to rule*

GERUND.

(*Nom* reg-endum)
Acc. reg-endum, *ruling*
Gen. reg-endī
Dat. reg-endō
Abl. reg-endō

SUPINE.

Acc. rect-um, *to rule* | *Abl.* rect-ū, *in ruling*

476. FOURTH (OR I) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

MODEL: **audiō**, *I hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **aud-īre, audīv-ī, audīt-um.**

BASES: **aud-** (present); **audīv-** (perfect); **audīt-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: **aud iens** (gen. **audient-is**), *hearing*
FUTURE: **audīt-ūrus, audīt-ūra, audīt-ūrum**, *about to hear*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-iō,	*I hear*	**aud-īmus,**	*we hear*
aud-īs,	*thou hearest*	**aud-ītis,**	*ye hear*
aud-it,	*he hears*	**aud-iunt,**	*they hear*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-iēbam,	*I was hearing*	**aud-iēbāmus,**	*we were hearing*
aud-iēbās,	*thou wast hearing*	**aud-iēbātis,**	*ye were hearing*
aud-iēbat,	*he was hearing*	**aud-iēbant,**	*they were hearing*

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-iam,	*I shall hear*	**aud-iēmus,**	*we shall hear*
aud-iēs,	*thou wilt hear*	**aud-iētis,**	*ye will hear*
aud-iet,	*he will hear*	**aud ient,**	*they will hear*

PERFECT TENSE.

audīv-ī,	*I heard* or *have heard*	**audīv-imus,**	*we heard* or *have heard*
audīv-istī,	*thou heardest* or *hast heard*	**audīv-istis,**	*ye heard* or *have heard*
audīv-it,	*he heard* or *has heard*	**audīv-ērunt** or **audīv-ēre**	*they heard* or *have heard*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audīv-eram,	*I had heard*	**audīv-erāmus,**	*we had heard*
audīv erās,	*thou hadst heard*	**audīv-erātis,**	*ye had heard*
audīv-erat,	*he had heard*	**audīv erant,**	*they had heard*

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

audīv-erō,	*I shall have heard*	**audīv-erimus,**	*we shall have heard*
audīv-eris,	*thou wilt have heard*	**audīv-eritis,**	*ye will have heard*
audīv erit,	*he will have heard*	**audīv-erint,**	*they will have heard*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
PRESENT TENSE.		
aud-iam,	*I should hear*	(*if*) *I were to hear*
aud-iās,	*thou wouldst hear*	(*in order that*) *I may hear*
aud-iat,	*he would hear*	
aud-iāmus,	*we should hear*	(*so that*) *I hear*
aud-iātis,	*ye would hear*	(*although*) *I hear*
aud-iant,	*they would hear*	
IMPERFECT TENSE.		
aud-īrem,	*I should be hearing*	(*if*) *I were hearing*
aud-īrēs,	*thou wouldst be hearing*	(*in order that*) *I might hear*
aud-īret,	*he would be hearing*	
aud-īrēmus,	*we should be hearing*	(*so that*) *I heard*
aud-īrētis,	*ye would be hearing*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I was hearing*
aud-īrent,	*they would be hearing*	
PERFECT TENSE.		
audīv-erim	rare in principal sentences	(*if*) *I were to have heard*
audīv-eris		(*so that*) *I heard* or *have heard*
audīv-erit		(*although*) *I have heard*
audīv-erimus		
audīv-eritis		
audīv-erint		
PLUPERFECT TENSE.		
audīv-issem,	*I should have heard*	(*if*) *I had heard*
audīv-issēs,	*thou wouldst have heard*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I had heard*
audīv-isset,	*he would have heard*	
audīv-issēmus,	*we should have heard*	
audīv-issētis,	*ye would have heard*	
audīv-issent,	*they would have heard*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-ī,	*hear* (*thou*)	**aud-īte,**	*hear* (*ye*)

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-ītō,	*thou shalt* or *must hear*	**aud-ītōte,**	*ye shall* or *must hear*
aud-ītō,	*he shall* or *must hear*	**aud iuntō,**	*they shall* or *must hear*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **aud-īre,** *to hear*
PERFECT: **audīv-isse,** *to have heard*
FUTURE: **audītūr-us esse,** *to be about to hear*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* **aud iendum**)
Acc. **aud-iendum,** *hearing*
Gen. **aud-iendī**
Dat. **aud-iendō**
Abl. **aud-iendō**

SUPINE.

Acc. **audīt-um,** *to hear* | *Abl.* **audīt-ū,** *in hearing*

477. First (or A) Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Model: **amō**, *I love, I like.*

Bases: **am-** (present); **amāv-** (perfect); **amāt-** (supine).

Participles { Perfect: **amāt us, amāt a, amāt-um**, *loved* or *having been loved*; Gerundive: **am-andus, am-anda, am-andum**, *fit to be loved*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

am-or,	*I am loved*	**am-āmur,**	*we are loved*
am-āris,	*thou art loved*	**am-āminī,**	*ye are loved*
am-ātur,	*he is loved*	**am-antur,**	*they are loved*

Imperfect Tense.

am ābar,	*I was being loved*	**am-ābāmur,**	*we were being loved*
am-ābāris or **am-ābāre**	*thou wast being loved*	**am-ābāminī,**	*ye were being loved*
am-ābātur,	*he was being loved*	**am-ābantur,**	*they were being loved*

Future Tense.

am-ābor,	*I shall be loved*	**am-ābimur,**	*we shall be loved*
am-āberis or **am-ābere,**	*thou wilt be loved*	**am-ābiminī,**	*ye will be loved*
am-ābitur,	*he will be loved*	**am-ābuntur,**	*they will be loved*

Perfect Tense.

amāt-us sum,	*I was* or *have been loved*	**amāt ī sumus,**	*we were* or *have been loved*
amāt-us es,	*thou wast* or *hast been loved*	**amāt-ī estis,**	*ye were* or *have been loved*
amāt-us est,	*he was* or *has been loved*	**amāt ī sunt,**	*they were* or *have been loved*

Pluperfect Tense.

amāt us eram,	*I had*	**amāt ī erāmus,**	*we had*
amāt-us erās,	*thou hadst*	**amāt-ī erātis,**	*ye had*
amāt-us erat,	*he had*	**amāt-ī erant,**	*they had*
	been loved		*been loved*

Future-Perfect Tense.

amāt-us erō,	*I shall*	**amāt-ī erimus,**	*we shall*
amāt-us eris,	*thou wilt*	**amāt-ī eritis,**	*ye will*
amāt-us erit,	*he will*	**amāt-ī erunt,**	*they will*
	have been loved		*have been loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
Present Tense		
am-er,	*I should be loved*	(*if*) *I were to be loved*
am-ēris *or* **am-ēre**	*thou wouldst be loved*	(*in order that*) *I may be loved*
am-ētur,	*he would be loved*	
am-ēmur,	*we should be loved*	(*so that*) *I am loved*
am-ēminī,	*ye would be loved*	(*although*) *I am loved*
am-entur,	*they would be loved*	
Imperfect Tense.		
am-ārer,	*I should be loved*	(*if*) *I were being loved*
am-ārēris *or* **am-ārēre**	*thou wouldst be loved*	(*in order that*) *I might be loved*
am-ārētur,	*he would be loved*	
am-ārēmur,	*we should be loved*	(*so that*) *I was loved*
am ārēminī,	*ye would be loved*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I was being loved*
am-ārentur,	*they would be loved*	
Perfect Tense.		
amāt-us sim		(*if*) *I were to have been loved*
amāt-us sīs		
amāt-us sit	rare in principal sentences	(*so that*) *I was loved* or *have been loved*
amāt-ī sīmus		
amāt-ī sītis		(*although*) *I have been loved*
amāt-ī sint		
Pluperfect Tense.		
amāt-us essem,	*I should have been loved*	(*if*) *I had been loved*
amāt-us essēs,	*thou wouldst have been loved*	
amāt-us esset,	*he would have been loved*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I had been loved*
amāt-ī essēmus,	*we should have been loved*	
amāt ī essētis,	*ye would have been loved*	
amāt-ī essent,	*they would have been loved*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

am-āre,	*be (thou) loved*	**am-āminī,**	*be (ye) loved*

Future Tense.

am-ātor,	*thou shalt* or *must be loved*		
am-ātor,	*he shall* or *must be loved*	**am-antor,**	*they shall* or *must be loved*

INFINITIVE.

Present: **am-ārī,** *to be loved*
Perfect: **amāt-us esse,** *to have been loved*
Future: **amātum īrī,** *to be about to be loved*

478. SECOND (OR E) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.
MODEL: **moneō**, *I advise.*

BASES: **mon-** (present); **monu-** (perfect); **monit-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT: **monit-us, monit-a, monit-um**, *advised* or *having been advised*
GERUNDIVE: **mon endus, mon-enda, mon-endum**, *fit to be advised*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-eor,	*I am advised*	**mon-ēmur,**	*we are advised*
mon-ēris,	*thou art advised*	**mon-ēminī,**	*ye are advised*
mon-ētur,	*he is advised*	**mon-entur,**	*they are advised*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ēbar,	*I was being*	**mon-ēbāmur,**	*we were being*
mon-ēbāris *or* **mon-ēbāre**	*thou wast being*	**mon-ēbāminī,**	*ye were being*
mon-ēbātur,	*he was being*	**mon-ēbantur,**	*they were being*

advised

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ēbor,	*I shall be advised*	**mon-ēbimur,**	*we shall be advised*
mon-ēberis *or* **mon-ēbere**	*thou wilt be advised*	**mon-ēbiminī,**	*ye will be advised*
mon-ēbitur,	*he will be advised*	**mon-ēbuntur,**	*they will be advised*

PERFECT TENSE.

monit-us sum,	*I was* or *have been advised*	**monit-ī sumus,**	*we were* or *have been advised*
monit-us es,	*thou wast* or *hast been advised*	**monit-ī estis,**	*ye were* or *have been advised*
monit-us est,	*he was* or *has been advised*	**monit-ī sunt,**	*they were* or *have been advised*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monit-us eram,	*I had been*	**monit-ī erāmus,**	*we had been*
monit-us erās,	*thou hadst been*	**monit-ī erātis,**	*ye had been*
monit-us erat,	*he had been*	**monit-ī erant,**	*they had been*

advised

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

monit-us erō,	*I shall*	**monit-ī erimus,**	*we shall*
monit-us eris,	*thou wilt*	**monit-ī eritis,**	*ye will*
monit-us erit,	*he will*	**monit ī erunt,**	*they will*

have been advised

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
mon-ear,	*I should be advised*	(*if*) *I were to be advised*
mon-eāris *or* **mon-eāre**	*thou wouldst be advised*	(*in order that*) *I may be advised*
mon-eātur,	*he would be advised*	
mon-eāmur,	*we should be advised*	(*so that*) *I am advised*
mon-eāminī,	*ye would be advised*	(*although*) *I am advised*
mon-eantur,	*they would be advised*	
	IMPERFECT TENSE.	
mon-ērer,	*I should be advised*	(*if*) *I were being advised*
mon-ērēris *or* **mon-ērēre**	*thou wouldst be advised*	(*in order that*) *I might be advised*
mon-ērētur,	*he would be advised*	
mon-ērēmur,	*we should be advised*	(*so that*) *I was advised*
mon-ērēminī,	*ye would be advised*	(*when, although*, etc.) *I was being advised*
mon-ērentur,	*they would be advised*	
	PERFECT TENSE.	
monit-us sim		(*if*) *I were to have been advised*
monit-us sīs		
monit-us sit	rare in principal sentences	(*so that*) *I was advised* or *have been advised*
monit-ī sīmus		
monit-ī sītis		(*although*) *I have been advised*
monit-ī sint		
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
monit-us essem,	*I should have been advised*	
monit-us essēs,	*thou wouldst have been* ,,	(*if*) *I had been advised*
monit-us esset,	*he would have been* ,,	
monit-ī essēmus,	*we should have been* ,,	(*when, although*, etc.) *I had been advised*
monit-ī essētis,	*ye would have been* ,,	
monit-ī essent,	*they would have been* ,,	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-ēre, *be (thou) advised* | **mon-ēminī,** *be (ye) advised*

FUTURE TENSE.

mon ētor, *thou must be advised*
mon-ētor, *he must be advised* | **mon-entor,** *they must be advised*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **mon-ērī,** *to be advised*
PERFECT: **monit-us esse,** *to have been advised*
FUTURE: **monitum īrī** *to be about to be advised*

479. Third (or Consonant) Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Model: **regō**, *I rule.*

Bases: **reg-** (present); **rex-** (perfect); **rect-** (supine).

Participles { Perfect: **rect-us, rect-a, rect um**, *ruled* or *having been ruled*
Gerundive: **reg-endus, reg-enda, reg-endum**, *fit to be ruled*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

reg-or,	*I am ruled*	**reg-imur,**	*we are ruled*
reg-eris,	*thou art ruled*	**reg-iminī,**	*ye are ruled*
reg-itur,	*he is ruled*	**reg-untur,**	*they are ruled*

Imperfect Tense.

reg-ēbar,	*I was being ruled*	**reg-ēbāmur,**	*we were being ruled*
reg-ēbāris or **reg-ēbāre**	*thou wast being ruled*	**reg-ēbāminī,**	*ye were being ruled*
reg-ēbātur,	*he was being ruled*	**reg ēbantur,**	*they were being ruled*

Future Tense.

reg-ar,	*I shall be ruled*	**reg-ēmur,**	*we shall be ruled*
reg-ēris or **reg-ēre**	*thou wilt be ruled*	**reg-ēminī,**	*ye will be ruled*
reg-ētur,	*he will be ruled*	**reg entur,**	*they will be ruled*

Perfect Tense.

rect-us sum,	*I was* or *have been ruled*	**rect ī sumus,**	*we were* or *have been ruled*
rect-us es,	*thou wast* or *hast been ruled*	**rect-ī estis,**	*ye were* or *have been ruled*
rect-us est,	*he was* or *has been ruled*	**rect-ī sunt,**	*they were* or *have been ruled*

Pluperfect Tense.

rect-us eram,	*I had*	**rect-ī erāmus,**	*we had*
rect-us erās,	*thou hadst*	**rect-ī erātis,**	*ye had*
rect-us erat,	*he had*	**rect-ī erant,**	*they had*

been ruled

Future-Perfect Tense.

rect-us erō,	*I shall*	**rect-ī erimus,**	*we shall*
rect-us eris,	*thou wilt*	**rect-ī eritis,**	*ye will*
rect-us erit,	*he will*	**rect-ī erunt,**	*they will*

have been ruled

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
reg-ar,	*I should be ruled*	(*if*) *I were to be ruled*
reg-āris *or* reg-āre	*thou wouldst be ruled*	(*in order that*) *I may be ruled*
reg-ātur,	*he would be ruled*	(*so that*) *I am ruled*
reg-āmur,	*we should be ruled*	(*although*) *I am ruled*
reg-āminī,	*ye would be ruled*	
reg-antur,	*they would be ruled*	
	IMPERFECT TENSE.	
reg-erer,	*I should be ruled*	(*if*) *I were being ruled*
reg-erēris *or* reg-erēre	*thou wouldst be ruled*	(*in order that*) *I might be ruled*
reg-erētur,	*he would be ruled*	(*so that*) *I was ruled*
reg-erēmur,	*we should be ruled*	(*when, although,* etc.) *I was being ruled*
reg-erēminī,	*ye would be ruled*	
reg-erentur,	*they would be ruled*	
	PERFECT TENSE.	
rect-us sim rect-us sīs rect-us sit rect-ī sīmus rect-ī sītis rect-ī sint	rare in principal sentences	(*if*) *I were to have been ruled* (*so that*) *I was ruled* or *have been ruled* (*although*) *I have been ruled*
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
rect-us essem,	*I should have been ruled*	(*if*) *I had been ruled*
rect-us essēs,	*thou wouldst have been ruled*	(*when, although,* etc.) *I had been ruled*
rect-us esset,	*he would have been ruled*	
rect-ī essēmus,	*we should have been ruled*	
rect-ī essētis,	*ye would have been ruled*	
rect-ī essent,	*they would have been ruled*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-ere,	*be (thou) ruled*	reg-iminī,	*be (ye) ruled*

FUTURE TENSE.

reg-itor,	*thou must be ruled*		
reg-itor,	*he must be ruled*	reg untor,	*they must be ruled*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: reg-ī, *to be ruled*
PERFECT: rect-us esse, *to have been ruled*
FUTURE: rectum īrī, *to be about to be ruled*

480. Fourth (or I) Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Model: audiō, *I hear.*

Bases: aud- (present); audīv- (perfect); audīt- (supine).

Participles { Perfect: audīt us, audīt-a, audīt-um, *heard* or *having been heard*
Gerundive: aud-iendus, aud-ienda, aud-iendum, *fit to be heard*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

aud-ior,	*I am heard*	aud-īmur,	*we are heard*
aud-īris,	*thou art heard*	aud-īminī,	*ye are heard*
aud-ītur,	*he is heard*	aud-iuntur,	*they are heard*

Imperfect Tense.

aud-iēbar,	*I was being heard*	aud-iēbāmur,	*we were being heard*
aud-iēbāris *or* aud-iēbāre	*thou wast being heard*	aud-iēbāminī,	*ye were being heard*
aud-iēbātur,	*he was being heard*	aud-iēbantur,	*they were being heard*

Future Tense.

aud-iar,	*I shall be heard*	aud-iēmur,	*we shall be heard*
aud-iēris *or* aud-iēre	*thou wilt be heard*	aud-iēminī,	*ye will be heard*
aud-iētur,	*he will be heard*	aud-ientur,	*they will be heard*

Perfect Tense.

audīt-us sum,	*I was* or *have been heard*	audīt-ī sumus,	*we were* or *have been heard*
audīt-us es,	*thou wast* or *hast been heard*	audīt-ī estis,	*ye were* or *have been heard*
audīt-us est,	*he was* or *has been heard*	audīt-ī sunt,	*they were* or *have been heard*

Pluperfect Tense.

audīt-us eram,	*I had*	audīt-ī erāmus,	*we had*
audīt-us erās,	*thou hadst*	audīt-ī erātis,	*ye had*
audīt-us erat,	*he had*	audīt-ī erant,	*they had*

been heard

Future-Perfect Tense.

audīt-us erō,	*I shall*	audīt-ī erimus,	*we shall*
audīt-us eris,	*thou wilt*	audīt-ī eritis,	*ye will*
audīt-us erit,	*he will*	audīt-ī erunt,	*they will*

have been heard

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.	IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.
	Present Tense.	
aud-iar,	*I should be heard*	(*if*) *I were to be heard*
aud-iāris *or* **aud-iāre,**	*thou wouldst be heard*	(*in order that*) *I may be heard*
aud-iātur,	*he would be heard*	
aud-iāmur,	*we should be heard*	(*so that*) *I am heard*
aud-iāminī,	*ye would be heard*	(*although*) *I am heard*
aud-iantur,	*they would be heard*	
	Imperfect Tense.	
aud-īrer,	*I should be heard*	(*if*) *I were being heard*
aud-īrēris *or* **aud-īrēre,**	*thou wouldst be heard*	(*in order that*) *I might be heard*
aud-īrētur,	*he would be heard*	
aud-īrēmur,	*we should be heard*	(*so that*) *I was heard*
aud-īrēminī,	*ye would be heard*	(*when, although,* etc.) *I was being heard*
aud-īrentur,	*they would be heard*	
	Perfect Tense.	
audīt-us sim		(*if*) *I were to have been heard*
audīt-us sīs		
audīt-us sit	rare in principal sentences	(*so that*) *I was heard* or *have been heard*
audīt-ī sīmus		
audīt-ī sītis		(*although*) *I have been heard*
audīt-ī sint		
	Pluperfect Tense.	
audīt-us essem,	*I should have been heard*	(*if*) *I had been heard*
audīt-us essēs,	*thou wouldst have been heard*	
audīt-us esset,	*he would have been heard*	(*when, although,* etc.) *I had been heard*
audīt-ī essēmus,	*we should have been heard*	
audīt-ī essētis,	*ye would have been heard*	
audīt-ī essent,	*they would have been heard*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

aud-īre,	*be (thou) heard*	**aud-īminī,**	*be (ye) heard*

Future Tense.

aud-ītor,	*thou must be heard*		
aud-ītor,	*he must be heard*	**aud-iuntor,**	*they must be heard*

INFINITIVE.

Present :	**aud-īrī,**	*to be heard*
Perfect :	**audīt-us esse,**	*to have been heard*
Future :	**audītum īrī,**	*to be about to be heard*

481. THIRD CONJUGATION, WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

MODEL: **capiō**, *I take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **cap-iō, cēp-ī, capt-um.**

BASES: **cap-** (present); **cēp-** (perfect); **capt-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES: PRESENT: **cap-iens** (gen. **capient-is**), *taking*
FUTURE: **capt-ūrus, capt-ūra, capt-ūrum**, *about to take*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I take.*)

cap-iō	**cap-imus**
cap-is	**cap-itis**
cap-it	**cap-iunt**

IMPERFECT. (*I was taking.*)

cap-iēbam	**cap-iēbāmus**
cap-iēbās	**cap-iēbātis**
cap-iēbat	**cap-iēbant**

FUTURE. (*I shall take.*)

cap-iam	**cap-iēmus**
cap-iēs	**cap-iētis**
cap-iet	**cap-ient**

PERFECT. (*I took* or *have taken.*)

cēp-i	**cēp-imus**
cēp-istī	**cēp-istis**
cēp-it	**cēp-ērunt** *or* **cēp-ēre**

PLUPERFECT. (*I had taken.*)

cēp eram	**cēp erāmus**
cēp-erās	**cēp-erātis**
cēp-erat	**cēp-erant**

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have taken.*)

cēp-erō	**cēp-erimus**
cēp-eris	**cēp-eritis**
cēp-erit	**cēp-erint**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should take.*)

cap iam	**cap-iāmus**
cap-iās	**cap-iātis**
cap-iat	**cap-iant**

IMPERFECT. (*I should be taking.*)

cap-erem	**cap-erēmus**
cap-erēs	**cap-erētis**
cap-eret	**cap-erent**

PERFECT.

cēp-erim	**cēp-erimus**
cēp-eris	**cēp-eritis**
cēp-erit	**cēp-erint**

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have taken.*)

cēp-issem	**cēp-issēmus**
cēp-issēs	**cēp-issētis**
cēp-isset	**cēp-issent**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Take.*)

cap-e	**cap-ite**

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must take.*)

cap-itō	**cap-itōte**
cap-itō	**cap-iuntō**

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **cap-ere**, *to take*
PERFECT: **cēp-isse**, *to have taken*
FUTURE: **captūr-us esse**, *to be about to take*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* **cap-iendum**)
Acc. **cap-iendum**, *taking*
Gen. **cap-iendī**
Dat. **cap-iendō**
Abl. **cap-iendō**

SUPINE.

Acc. **capt-um**, *to take* | *Abl.* **capt-ū**, *in taking*

PASSIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES
- PERFECT: **capt-us, capt-a, capt-um,** *taken* or *having been taken*
- GERUNDIVE: **cap-iendus, cap-ienda, cap-iendum,** *fit to be taken*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am taken.*)

cap-ior	**cap-imur**
cap-eris	**cap-iminī**
cap-itur	**cap-iuntur**

IMPERFECT. (*I was being taken.*)

cap-iēbar	**cap-iēbāmur**
cap-iēbāris *or* **cap-iēbāre**	**cap-iēbāminī**
cap-iēbātur	**cap-iēbantur**

FUTURE. (*I shall be taken.*)

cap-iar	**cap-iēmur**
cap-iēris *or* **cap-iēre**	**cap-iēminī**
cap-iētur	**cap-ientur**

PERFECT. (*I was taken* or *have been taken.*)

capt-us sum	**capt-ī sumus**
capt-us es	**capt-ī estis**
capt-us est	**capt-ī sunt**

PLUPERFECT. (*I had been taken.*)

capt-us eram	**capt-ī erāmus**
capt-us erās	**capt-ī erātis**
capt-us erat	**capt-ī erant**

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have been taken.*)

capt-us erō	**capt-ī erimus**
capt-us eris	**capt-ī eritis**
capt-us erit	**capt-ī erunt**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am* or *may be taken.*)

cap-iar	**cap-iāmur**
cap-iāris *or* **cap-iāre**	**cap-iāminī**
cap-iātur	**cap-iantur**

IMPERFECT. (*I was* or *might be taken.*)

cap-erer	**cap-erēmur**
cap-erēris *or* **cap-erēre**	**cap-erēminī**
cap-erētur	**cap-erentur**

PERFECT.

capt-us sim	**capt-ī sīmus**
capt-us sīs	**capt-ī sītis**
capt-us sit	**capt-ī sint**

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have been taken.*)

capt-us essem	**capt-ī essēmus**
capt-us essēs	**capt-ī essētis**
capt-us esset	**capt-ī essent**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Be taken.*)

cap-ere	**cap-iminī**

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must be taken.*)

cap-itor	
cap-itor	**cap-iuntor**

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **cap-ī,** *to be taken*
PERFECT: **capt-us esse,** *to have been taken*
FUTURE: **captum īrī,** *to be about to be taken*

All verbs of the third conjugation (*i.e.* with pres. inf. act. ending in **-ere**) which in the pres. indic. act. end in **-iō** are conjugated like **capiō,** as also are deponents of the third conjugation ending in **-ior.**

Obs. **Capiō** is conjugated like **audiō** in those parts in which the **i** of **audiō** is followed by a vowel, *i.e.* in which the **i** is short; in other parts **capiō** is conjugated like **regō.**

482. DEPONENT VERBS.—FIRST CONJUGATION.

MODEL: **hortor**, *I exhort.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **hort-ārī, hortāt-us sum.**

BASES: **hort-** (present); **hortāt-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES
- PRESENT: **hort-ans** (gen. **hortant-is**), *exhorting*
- FUTURE: **hortāt-ūrus, hortāt-ūra, hortāt-ūrum**, *about to exhort*
- PERFECT: **hortāt-us, hortāt-a, hortāt-um**, *having exhorted*
- GERUNDIVE: **hort-andus, hort-anda, hort-andum**, *fit to be exhorted*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I exhort.*)	
hort-or	**hort-āmur**
hort-āris *or* **-āre**	**hort-āminī**
hort-ātur	**hort-antur**
IMPERFECT. (*I was exhorting.*)	
hort-ābar	**hort-ābāmur**
hort-ābāris *or* **hort-ābāre**	**hort-ābāminī**
hort-ābātur	**hort-ābantur**
FUTURE. (*I shall exhort.*)	
hort-ābor	**hort-ābimur**
hort-āberis *or* **hort-ābere**	**hort-ābiminī**
hort-ābitur	**hort-ābuntur**
PERFECT. (*I exhorted* or *have exhorted.*)	
hortāt-us sum	**hortāt-ī sumus**
hortāt-us es	**hortāt-ī estis**
hortāt-us est	**hortāt-ī sunt**
PLUPERFECT. (*I had exhorted.*)	
hortāt-us eram	**hortāt-ī erāmus**
hortāt-us erās	**hortāt-ī erātis**
hortāt-us erat	**hortāt-ī erant**
FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have exhorted.*)	
hortāt-us erō	**hortāt-ī erimus**
hortāt-us eris	**hortāt-ī eritis**
hortāt-us erit	**hortāt-ī erunt**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should exhort.*)	
hort-er	**hort-ēmur**
hort-ēris *or* **hort-ēre**	**hort-ēminī**
hort-ētur	**hort-entur**
IMPERFECT. (*I should be exhorting.*)	
hort-ārer	**hort-ārēmur**
hort-ārēris *or* **hort-ārēre**	**hort-ārēminī**
hort-ārētur	**hort-ārentur**
PERFECT.	
hortāt-us sim	**hortāt-ī sīmus**
hortāt-us sīs	**hortāt-ī sītis**
hortāt-us sit	**hortāt-ī sint**
PLUPERFECT. (*I should have exhorted.*)	
hortāt-us essem	**hortāt-ī essēmus**
hortāt-us essēs	**hortāt-ī essētis**
hortāt-us esset	**hortāt-ī essent**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Exhort.*)	
hort-āre	**hort-āminī**
FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must exhort.*)	
hort-ātor	
hort-ātor	**hort-antor**

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **hort-ārī**, *to exhort*
PERFECT: **hortāt-us esse**, *to have exhorted*
FUTURE: **hortātūr-us esse**, *to be about to exhort*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* **hort-andum**)
Acc. **hort-andum**, *exhorting*
Gen. **hort-andi**
Dat. **hort-andō**
Abl. **hort-andō**

SUPINE.

Acc. **hortāt-um**, *to exhort* | *Abl.* **hortāt-ū**, *in exhorting*

483. Deponent Verbs.—Second Conjugation.

Model: **vereor**, *I fear.*

Principal Parts: **ver-ērī, verit-us sum.**

Bases: **ver-** (present); **verit-** (supine).

PRINCIPLES
- Present: **ver-ens** (gen. **verent-is**), *fearing*
- Future: **verit-ūrus, verit-ūra, verit ūrum**, *about to fear*
- Perfect: **verit-us, verit-a, verit-um**, *having feared*
- Gerundive: **ver-endus, ver-enda, ver-endum**, *fit to be feared*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (*I fear.*)

ver-eor,	**ver-ēmur**
ver-ēris *or* **ver-ēre**	**ver-ēminī**
ver-ētur	**ver-entur**

Imperfect. (*I was fearing.*)

ver ēbar	**ver-ēbāmur**
ver-ēbāris *or* **ver-ēbāre**	**ver ēbāminī**
ver-ēbātur	**ver-ēbantur**

Future. (*I shall fear.*)

ver-ēbor	**ver-ēbimur**
ver-ēberis *or* **ver-ēbere**	**ver-ēbiminī**
ver-ēbitur	**ver-ēbuntur**

Perfect. (*I feared* or *have feared.*)

verit-us sum	**verit-ī sumus**
verit-us es	**verit-ī estis**
verit-us est	**verit-ī sunt**

Pluperfect. (*I had feared.*)

verit-us eram	**verit-ī erāmus**
verit-us erās	**verit-ī erātis**
verit-us erat	**verit-ī erant**

Future-Perfect. (*I shall have feared.*)

verit-us erō	**verit-ī erimus**
verit-us eris	**verit-ī eritis**
verit-us erit	**verit-ī erunt**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (*I should fear.*)

ver-ear	**ver-eāmur**
ver-eāris *or* **ver-eāre**	**ver-eāminī**
ver-eātur	**ver-eantur**

Imperfect. (*I should be fearing.*)

ver-ērer	**ver-ērēmur**
ver-ērēris *or* **ver-ērēre**	**ver-ērēminī**
ver-ērētur	**ver ērentur**

Perfect.

verit-us sim	**verit-ī sīmus**
verit-us sīs	**verit-ī sītis**
verit-us sit	**verit-ī sint**

Pluperfect. (*I should have feared.*)

verit-us essem	**verit-ī essēmus**
verit-us essēs	**verit-ī essētis**
verit-us esset	**verit-ī essent**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. (*Fear.*)

ver-ēre	**ver-ēminī**

Future. (*Thou shalt* or *must fear.*)

ver-ētor	
ver-ētor	**ver-entor**

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

Present: **ver-ērī**, *to fear*

Perfect: **verit-us esse**, *to have feared*

Future: **veritūr-us esse**, *to be about to fear*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* **ver-endum**)
Acc. **ver-endum**, *fearing*
Gen. **ver-endī**
Dat. **ver-endō**
Abl. **ver-endō**

SUPINE.

Acc. **verit-um**, *to fear*

Abl. **verit-ū**, *in fearing*

484. Deponent Verbs.—Third Conjugation.

Model: **loquor**, *I speak.*

Principal Parts: **loquī, locūt-us sum.**

Bases: **loqu-** (present); **locūt-** (supine).

Participles:
- Present: **loqu-ens** (gen. **loquent-is**), *speaking*
- Future: **locūt-ūrus, locūt-ūra, locūt-ūrum**, *about to speak*
- Perfect: **locūt-us, locūt-a, locūt-um**, *having spoken*
- Gerundive: **loqu-endus, loqu-enda, loqu-endum**, *fit to be spoken*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (*I speak.*)	
loqu-or	**loqu-imur**
loqu-eris *or* **loqu-ere**	**loqu-iminī**
loqu-itur	**loqu-untur**
Imperfect. (*I was speaking.*)	
loqu-ēbar	**loqu-ēbāmur**
loqu-ēbāris *or* **loqu-ēbāre**	**loqu-ēbāminī**
loqu-ēbātur	**loqu-ēbantur**
Future. (*I shall speak.*)	
loqu-ar	**loqu-ēmur**
loqu-ēris *or* **loqu-ēre**	**loqu-ēminī**
loqu-ētur	**loqu-entur**
Perfect. (*I spoke* or *have spoken.*)	
locūt-us sum	**locūt-ī sumus**
locūt-us es	**locūt-ī estis**
locūt-us est	**locūt-ī sunt**
Pluperfect. (*I had spoken.*)	
locūt-us eram	**locūt-ī erāmus**
locūt-us erās	**locūt-ī erātis**
locūt-us erat	**locūt-ī erant**
Future-Perfect. (*I shall have spoken.*)	
locūt-us erō	**locūt-ī erimus**
locūt-us eris	**locūt-ī eritis**
locūt-us erit	**locūt-ī erunt**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (*I should speak.*)	
loqu-ar	**loqu-āmur**
loqu-āris *or* **loqu-āre**	**loqu-āminī**
loqu-ātur	**loqu-antur**
Imperfect. (*I should be speaking.*)	
loqu-erer	**loqu-erēmur**
loqu-erēris *or* **loqu-erēre**	**loqu-crēminī**
loqu-erētur	**loqu-erentur**
Perfect.	
locūt-us sim	**locūt-ī sīmus**
locūt-us sīs	**locūt-ī sītis**
locūt-us sit	**locūt-ī sint**
Pluperfect. (*I should have spoken.*)	
locūt-us essem	**locūt-ī essēmus**
locūt-us essēs	**locūt-ī essētis**
locūt-us esset	**locūt-ī essent**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. (*Speak.*)	
loqu-ere	**loqu-iminī**
Future. (*Thou shalt* or *must speak.*)	
loqu-itor	
loqu-itor	**loqu-untor**

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

Present: **loqu-ī**, *to speak*
Perfect: **locūt-us esse**, *to have spoken*
Future: **locūtūr-us esse**, *to be about to speak*

GERUND.

(*Nom.*	**loqu-endum**)
Acc.	**loqu-endum**, *speaking*
Gen.	**loqu-endī**
Dat.	**loqu-endō**
Abl.	**loqu-endō**

SUPINE.

Acc. **locūt-um**, *to speak* | *Abl.* **locūt-ū**, *in speaking*

485. Deponent Verbs.—Fourth Conjugation.

Model: **partior**, *I divide.*

Principal Parts: **part-īrī, partīt-us sum.**

Bases: **part-** (present); **partīt-** (supine).

Participles:
- Present: **part-iens** (gen. **partient-is**), *dividing*
- Future: **partīt-ūrus, partīt-ūra, partīt-ūrum**, *about to divide*
- Perfect: **partīt-us, partīt-a, partīt-um**, *having divided*
- Gerundive: **part-iendus, part-ienda, part-iendum**, *fit to be divided*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (*I divide*).

part-ior	**part-īmur**
part-īris *or* **part-īre**	**part-īminī**
part-ītur	**part-iuntur**

Imperfect. (*I was dividing.*)

part-iēbar	**part-iēbāmur**
part-iēbāris *or* **part-iēbāre**	**part-iēbāminī**
part-iēbātur	**part-iēbantur**

Future. (*I shall divide.*)

part-iar	**part-iēmur**
part-iēris *or* **part-iēre**	**part-iēminī**
part-iētur	**part-ientur**

Perfect. (*I divided* or *have divided.*)

partīt-us sum	**partīt-ī sumus**
partīt-us es	**partīt-ī estis**
partīt-us est	**partīt-ī sunt**

Pluperfect. (*I had divided.*)

partīt-us eram	**partīt-ī erāmus**
partīt-us erās	**partīt-ī erātis**
partīt-us erat	**partīt-ī erant**

Future-Perfect. (*I shall have divided.*)

partīt-us erō	**partīt ī erimus**
partīt-us eris	**partīt-ī eritis**
partīt-us erit	**partīt-ī erunt**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (*I should divide.*)

part-iar	**part-iāmur**
part-iāris *or* **part-iāre**	**part-iāminī**
part-iātur	**part-iantur**

Imperfect. (*I should be dividing.*)

part-īrer	**part-īrēmur**
part-īrēris *or* **part-īrēre**	**part-īrēminī**
part-īrētur	**part-īrentur**

Perfect.

partīt-us sim	**partīt-ī sīmus**
partīt-us sīs	**partīt-ī sītis**
partīt-us sit	**partīt-ī sint**

Pluperfect. (*I should have divided.*)

partīt-us essem	**partīt-ī essēmus**
partīt-us essēs	**partīt-ī essētis**
partīt-us esset	**partīt-ī essent**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. (*Divide.*)

part-īre	**part-īminī**

Future. (*Thou shalt* or *must divide.*)

part-ītor	
part-ītor	**part-iuntor**

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

Present: **part-īrī**, *to divide*

Perfect: **partīt-us esse**, *to have divtded*

Future: **partītūr-us esse**, *to be about to divide*

GERUND.

(*Nom.* **part iendum**)
Acc. **part-iendum**, *dividing*
Gen. **part-iendī**
Dat. **part-iendō**
Abl. **part-iendō**

Principal Parts of Verbs.

486. First Conjugation.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
d-ō	**-are**	**ded-ī**	**dat-um**	*give*
Compounds belong to 3rd conj. except				
circumd-ō	**-are**	**circumded-ī**	**circumdat-um**	*put round*
st-ō	**-āre**	**stet-ī**	**stat-um**	*stand*
Compounds (few having sup.) as				
praest-ō	**-āre**	**praestit-ī**	**praestāt-um** / **praestit-um**	*excel*
Except				
circumst-ō	**-āre**	**circumstet-ī**	——	*stand around*

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

iuv-ō	**-āre**	**iūv-ī**	**iūt-um**	*help, delight*
lav-ō	-āre	lāv-ī (perf. part. lavāt-um / laut-us / lōt-us)		*wash*

C.—Perfect formed by **S**: *none.*

D.—Perfect formed by **V** preceded by long vowel (**A**).

This is the way in which the perfect base of **amō** and of other verbs of the first conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is irregular in—

pōt-ō	-āre	pōtāv-ī	pōt-um *or* pōtāt-um	*drink*

E.—Perfect formed by **U**.

crep-ō	-āre	crepu-ī	crepit-um	*rattle*
cub-ō	-āre	cubu-ī	cubit-um	*lie down*
dom-ō	-āre	domu-ī	domit-um	*tame*
ēnic-ō	-āre	ēnicu-ī	ēnect-um	*wear to death*
fric-ō	-āre	fricu-ī	frict-um *or* fricāt-um	*rub*
plic-ō	**-āre**	**plicāv-ī** / **plicu-ī**	**plicāt-um** / **plicit-um**	*fold*
sec-ō	**-āre**	**secu-ī**	**sect-um**	*cut*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
son-ō	**-āre**	**sonu-ī**	**sonit-um**	*sound*
ton-ō	-āre	tonu-ī	tonit-um	*thunder*
vet-ō	**-āre**	**vetu-ī**	**vetit-um**	*forbid*
mic-ō	-āre	micu-ī	——	*vibrate*
So comp., except				
dīmic-ō	-āre	dīmicāv-ī	dīmicāt-um	*fight*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base: *none.*

487. Second Conjugation.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

mord-eō	**-ēre**	**momord-ī**	**mors-um**	*bite*
pend-eō	**-ēre**	**pepend-ī**	——	*be suspended*
spond-eō	**-ēre**	**spopond-ī**	**spons-um**	*promise*
tond-eō	-ēre	totond-ī	tons-um	*clip*

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

căv-eō	**-ēre**	**căv-ī**	**caut-um**	*beware of*
fav-eō	**-ēre**	**fāv-ī**	**faut-um**	*be favourable*
fov-eō	-ēre	fōv-ī	fōt-um	*cherish*
mov-eō	**-ēre**	**mōv-ī**	**mōt-um**	*set in motion*
vov-eō	**-ēre**	**vōv-ī**	**vōt-um**	*vow*
sed-eō	**-ēre**	**sēd ī**	**sess-um**	*sit*
Compounds as				
possid-eō	**-ēre**	**possēd-ī**	**possess-um**	*possess*
Except				
circumsed-eō	-ēre	circumsēd-ī	circumsess-um	*besiege*
supersed-eō	-ēre	supersēd-ī	supersess-um	*forbear*
vid-eō	**-ēre**	**vīd-ī**	**vīs-um**	*see*
pāv-eō	-ēre	pāv-ī	——	*tremble*

C.—Perfect formed by **S**.

alg-eō	-ēre	als-ī	——	*feel cold*
fulg-eō	-ēre	fuls-ī	——	*gleam*
indulg-eō	**-ēre**	**induls-ī**	——	*be indulgent*
urg-eō	-ēre	urs-ī	——	*press*
frīg-eō	-ēre	frīx-ī	——	*be cold*
lūc-eō	-ēre	lux-ī	——	*shine*
torqu-eō	**-ēre**	**tors-ī**	**tort-um**	*twist*
aug-eō	**-ēre**	**aux-ī**	**auct-um**	*augment*
lūg-eō	-ēre	lux-ī	luct-um	*mourn for*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ard-eō	-ēre	ars-ī	ars-um	*be on fire*
haer-eō	**-ēre**	**haes-ī**	**haes-um**	*stick*
iub-eō	**-ēre**	**iuss-ī**	**iuss-um**	*command*
man-eō	**-ēre**	**mans-ī**	**mans-um**	*remain*
mulc-eō	-ēre	muls-ī	muls-um	*caress*
mulg-eō	-ēre	muls-ī	mulct-um / muls-um	*milk*
rīd-eō	**-ēre**	**rīs-ī**	**rīs-um**	*laugh*
suād-eō	**-ēre**	**suās-ī**	**suās-um**	*recommend*
terg-eō	-ēre	ters-ī	ters-um	*wipe*

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel.

abol-eō	-ēre	abolēv-ī	abolit-um	*abolish*
ci-eō	-ēre	cīv-ī	cit-um	*arouse*
dēl-eō	**-ēre**	**dēlēv-ī**	**dēlēt-um**	*abolish*
fl-eō	**-ēre**	**flēv-ī**	**flēt-um**	*weep*
n-eō	-ēre	nēv-ī	nēt-um	*spin*
compl-eō	**-ēre**	**complēv-ī**	**complēt-um**	*fill up*
expl-eō	-ēre	explēv-ī	explēt-um	*fill up*
impl-eō	-ēre	implēv-ī	implēt-um	*fill*
repl-eō	**-ēre**	**replēv-ī**	**replēt-um**	*refill*
suppl-eō	-ēre	supplēv-ī	supplēt-um	*fill up*

E.—Perfect formed by U.

This is the way in which the perfect base of **moneō** and of other verbs of the second conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is wanting in many verbs of this conjugation, and is irregular in—

doc-eō	**-ēre**	**docu-ī**	**doct-um**	*teach*
misc-eō	**-ēre**	**miscu-ī**	**mixt-um**	*mix*
ten-eō	**-ēre**	**tenu-ī**	**tent-um**	*hold*
Comp. as **retin-eō**	**-ēre**	**retinu-ī**	**retent-um**	*hold back*
torr-eō	-ēre	torru-ī	tost-um	*scorch*
cens-eō	**-ēre**	**censu-ī**	**cens-um**	*count*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

prand-eō	**-ēre**	prand-ī	prans-um	*lunch*
ferv-eō	-ēre	ferv-ī (*or* ferbu-ī)	——	*be boiling*
strīd-eō	**-ēre**	strīd-ī	——	*creak*

488. THIRD CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
can-ō	**-ere**	**cecin-ī**	**cant-um**	*sing*
Compounds as praecin-ō (§ 488, E)				
Compounds of **dō**, except **circumd-ō** (§ 486, A), as **ĕd-ō** *	**-ere**	**ēdid-ī**	**ēdit-um**	*give out*
Including:				
crēd-ō	**-ere**	**crēdid-ī**	**crēdit-um**	*trust*
perd-ō	**-ere**	**perdid-ī**	**perdit-um**	*destroy*
vend-ō	**-ere**	**vendid-ī**	**vendit-um**	*sell*
pung-ō	-ere	pupug-ī	**punct-um**	*prick*
Compounds as compung-ō (§ 488, C)				
sist-ō	**-ere**	**stit-ī**	**stat-um**	*make to stand*
Comp. as **consist-ō**	**-ere**	**constit-ī**	**constit-um**	*stand still*
Except circumsist-ō	-ere	circumstet-ī	——	*stand around*
tang-ō	**-ere**	**tetig-ī**	**tact-um**	*touch*
Comp. as **atting-ō**	**-ere**	**attig-ī**	**attact-um**	*touch*
tend-ō	**-ere**	**tetend-ī**	**tent-um**	*stretch*
cad-ō	**-ere**	**cecid-ī**	**cās-um**	*fall*
Comp. as **concid-ō**	**-ere**	**concid-ī**	——	*fall*
Supine stem in				
occid-ō	**-ere**	**occid-ī**	**occās-um**	*fall, set*
recid-ō	**-ere**	**reccid-ī**	**recās-um**	*fall back*
caed-ō	**-ere**	**cecīd-ī**	**caes-um**	*cut*
Comp. as **occīd-ō**	**-ere**	**occīd-ī**	**occīs-um**	*kill*
curr-ō	**-ere**	**cucurr-ī**	**curs-um**	*run*
Compounds as				
accurr-ō	**-ere**	**accucurr-ī** or **accurr-ī**	**accurs-um**	*run to*
fall-ō	**-ere**	**fefell-ī**	**fals-um**	*deceive*
Comp. refell-ō	-ere	refell-ī	——	*disprove*

* Some of these are compounds of **dō**, *I give*, others of a verb **-dō**, *I put*, of which the simple form is not in use. No distinction is here attempted, as it is in many cases impossible to ascertain from which simple verb the compound is formed.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ɔell-ō	-ere	pepul-ī	puls-um	*drive*
ɔend-ō	-ere	pepend-ī	pens-um	*weigh out, pay*
ɔund-ō	-ere	tutud-ī	{tuns-um / tūs-um}	*beat*
ɨisc-ō	-ere	didic-ī	——	*learn*
Comp. as addisc-ō	-ere	addidic-ī	——	*learn besides*
ɔarc-ō	-ere	peperc-ī	pars-ūrus	*be sparing*
posc ō	-ere	poposc-ī	——	*demand*
Comp. as dēposc-ō	-ere	dēpoposc-ī	——	*demand*

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

ag-ō	-ere	ēg-ī	act-um	*drive*
Comp. as abig-ō	-ere	abēg-ī	abact-um	*drive away*
Except circumag-ō	-ere	circumēg-ī	circumact-um	*drive around*
cōg-ō	-ere	coēg-ī	coact-um	*drive together, compel*
dēg-ō	-ere	dēg-ī	——	*pass (time)*
perag-ō	-ere	perēg-ī	peract-um	*accomplish*
ɐm-ō	ere	ēm-ī	empt-um	*buy*
Comp. as adim-ō	-ere	adēm-ī	adempt-um	*take away*
Except coem-ō	-ere	coēm-ī	coempt-um	*buy up*
ʼrang-ō	-ere	frēg-ī	fract-um	*break*
Compounds as confring-ō	-ere	confrēg-ī	confract-um	*break*
leg-ō	-ere	lēg-ī	lect-um	*pick, read*
Comp. as collig-ō	-ere	collēg ī	collect-um	*collect*
But e remains in perleg-ō	-ere	perlēg-ī	perlect-um	*read through*
releg-ō	-ere	relēg-ī	relect-um	*again go over*
Perf. differs in dīlig-ō, intelleg-ō, negleg-ō } (§ 488, c)				
linqu-ō	-ere	līqu ī	——	*leave*
Comp. as relinqu-ō	-ere	reliqu ī	relict-um	*leave*
pang-ō	-ere	pēg-ī *or* pepig-ī	pact-um	*fasten*
Comp. : coming-ō	-ere	compēg-ī	compact-um	*join together*
rump ō	-ere	rūp ī	rupt-um	*break*
vinc-ō	-ere	vīc-ī	vict-um	*conquer*
ed-ō	-ere	ēd-ī	ēs-um	*eat*
fund-ō	-ere	fūd-ī	fūs-um	*pour*

C.—Perfect formed by S.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
carp-ō	**-ere**	**carps-ī**	**carpt-um**	*pluck*
Comp. as dēcerp-ō	-ere	dēcerps-ī	dēcerpt-um	*pluck off*
Four compounds of **em-ō** (§ 488, B):				
cōm-ō	-ere	comps-ī	compt-um	*deck*
dēm-ō	-ere	demps-ī	dempt-um	*take off*
prōm-ō	**-ere**	**promps-ī**	**prompt-um**	*bring out*
sūm-ō	**-ere**	**sumps-ī**	**sumpt-um**	*take up*
ger-ō	**-ere**	**gess-ī**	**gest-um**	*carry*
nūb-ō	-ere	nups-ī	nupt-um	*put on the bridal veil*, i.e. *be married*
rēp-ō	-ere	reps-ī	rept-um	*creep*
scalp-ō	-ere	scalps-ī	scalpt-um	*carve*
scrīb-ō	**-ere**	**scrips-ī**	**script-um**	*write*
sculp-ō	-ere	sculps-ī	sculpt-um	*carve*
serp-ō	-ere	serps-ī	serpt-um	*crawl*
temn-ō	**-ere**	**temps-ī**	**tempt-um**	*despise*
ūr-ō	**-ere**	**uss-ī**	**ust-um**	*burn, inflame*
Comp. : **combūr-ō**	**-ere**	**combuss-ī**	**combust-um**	*burn up*
cing-ō	**-ere**	**cinx-ī**	**cinct-um**	*gird*
coqu-ō	-ere	cox-ī	coct-um	*cook*
dīc-ō (§ 200)	**-ere**	**dix-ī**	**dict-um**	*say*
dūc-ō (§ 200)	**-ere**	**dux-ī**	**duct-um**	*lead*
fing-ō	**-ere**	**finx-ī**	**fict-um**	*form*
afflīg-ō	**-ere**	**afflix-ī**	**afflict-um**	*strike against*
conflīg-ō	-ere	conflix-ī	conflict-um	*contend*
inflīg-ō	-ere	inflix-ī	inflict-um	*strike on*
iung-ō	**-ere**	**iunx-ī**	**iunct-um**	*join*
Three compounds of **leg-ō** (§ 488, B):				
dīlig-ō	**-ere**	**dīlex-ī**	**dīlect-um**	*love*
intelleg-ō	**-ere**	**intellex-ī**	**intellect-um**	*understand*
negleg-ō	**-ere**	**neglex-ī**	**neglect-um**	*neglect*
ping-ō	**-ere**	**pinx-ī**	**pict-um**	*paint*
plang-ō	**-ere**	**planx-ī**	**planct-um**	*beat*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Compounds of pung-ō (§ 488, A), as				
compung-ō	-ere	compunx-ī	compunct-um	*sting*
reg-ō	**-ere**	**rex-ī**	**rect-um**	*rule*
Comp. as **corrig-ō**	**-ere**	**correx-ī**	**correct-um**	*correct*
Except **perg-ō**	**-ere**	**perrex-ī**	**perrect-um**	*continue*
surg-ō	**-ere**	**surrex-ī**	**surrect-um**	*rise*
distingu-ō	-ere	distinx-ī	distinct-um	*distinguish*
exstingu-ō	-ere	exstinx-ī	exstinct-um	*extinguish*
restingu-ō	-ere	restinx-ī	restinct-um	*extinguish*
string-ō	-ere	strinx-ī	strict-um	*strip*
stru-ō	-ere	strux-ī	struct-um	*pile*
sūg-ō	-ere	sux-ī	suct-um	*suck*
teg-ō	**-ere**	**tex-ī**	**tect-um**	*cover*
ting-ō *or* tingu-ō	-ere	tinx-ī	tinct-um	*steep*
trah-ō	**-ere**	**trax-ī**	**tract-um**	*draw*
ung-ō *or* ungu-ō	-ere	unx-ī	unct-um	*anoint*
veh-ō	**-ere**	**vex-ī**	**vect-um**	*carry*
vīv-ō	**-ere**	**vix-ī**	**vict-um**	*live*
cĕd-ō	**-ere**	**cess ī**	**cess-um**	*yield*
claud-ō	**-ere**	**claus-ī**	**claus-um**	*shut*
Comp. as **conclūd-ō**	**-ere**	**conclūs-ī**	**conclūs-um**	*confine*
dīvid-ō	**-ere**	**dīvīs-ī**	**dīvīs-um**	*divide*
laed-ō	**-ere**	**laes-ī**	**laes-um**	*hurt*
Comp. as collīd-ō	-ere	collīs-ī	collīs-um	*clash*
lūd-ō	**-ere**	**lūs-ī**	**lūs-um**	*play*
merg-ō	-ere	mers-ī	mers-um	*dip*
mitt-ō	**-ere**	**mīs-ī**	**miss-um**	*send*
plaud-ō	-ere	plaus-ī	plaus-um	*clap*
Comp. : explōd-ō	-ere	explōs-ī	explōs-um	*hiss off*
prem-ō	**-ere**	**press-ī**	**press-um**	*press*
Compounds as **comprim-ō**	**-ere**	**compress-ī**	**compress-um**	*restrain*
rād-ō	-ere	rās-ī	rās-um	*scrape*
rōd-ō	-ere	rōs-ī	rōs-um	*gnaw*
sparg-ō	**-ere**	**spars-ī**	**spars-um**	*scatter*
Comp. as asperg-ō	-ere	aspers-ī	aspers-um	*sprinkle*
trūd-ō	-ere	trūs-ī	trūs-um	*thrust*
vād-ō	**-ere**	——	——	*go*
Comp. as **ēvād-ō**	**-ere**	**ēvās-ī**	**ēvās-um**	*go forth*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
fīg-ō	**-ere**	**fix-ī**	**fix-um**	*fix*
flect-ō	**-ere**	**flex-ī**	**flex-um**	*bend*
flu-ō	**-ere**	**flux-ī**	**flux-um**	*flow*
nect-ō	-ere	nex-ī	nex-um	*bind*
ning-it *or* ningu-it	-ere	ninx-it	— —	*snow*

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel.

cern-ō	**-ere**	**crēv-ī**	**crēt-um**	*discern*
lin-ō	-ere	lēv-ī	lit-um	*besmear*
N.B.—Comp. :				
oblin-ō	-ere	oblēv-ī	oblit-um	*besmear*
pet-ō	**-ere**	**petīv-ī** *or* **peti-ī**	**petīt-um**	*seek*
quaer-ō	**-ere**	**quaesīv-ī**	**quaesīt-um**	*seek*
Comp. as **exquīr-ō**	**-ere**	**exquīsīv-ī**	**exquīsīt-um**	*seek out*
ser-ō	**-ere**	**sēv-ī**	**sat-um**	*sow*
Comp. as **inser-ō**	**-ere**	**insēv-ī**	**insit-um**	*ingraft*
sin-ō	**-ere**	**sīv-ī**	**sit-um**	*allow*
spern-ō	**-ere**	**sprēv-ī**	**sprēt-um**	*despise*
stern-ō	**-ere**	**strāv-ī**	**strāt-um**	*spread*
ter-ō	**-ere**	**trīv-ī**	**trīt-um**	*rub*
arcess-ō *or* accers-ō	-ere	arcessīv-ī	arcessit-um	*send for*
capess-ō	-ere	capessīv-ī	capessīt-um	*take in hand*
lacess-ō	-ere	lacessīv-ī	lacessīt-um	*provoke*
incess-ō	-ere	incessīv-ī	——	*assault*

The present base of the following is inceptive (§ 498) in form :—

adolesc-ō	**-ere**	**adolēv-ī**	**adult um**	*grow up*
cresc-ō (§ 412)	**-ere**	**crēv-ī**	**crēt-um**	*grow*
nosc-ō	**-ere**	**nōv-ī**	**nōt-um**	*get to know*
Comp. (**noscō** has lost an initial **g**) :				
agnosc-ō	**-ere**	**agnōv-ī**	**agnit-um**	*recognise*
cognosc-ō	**-ere**	**cognōv-ī**	**cognit-um**	*ascertain*
ignosc-ō	**-ere**	**ignōv-ī**	**ignōt-um**	*overlook*
obsolesc-ō	-ere	obsolēv-ī	obsolēt-um	*decay*
pasc-ō	-ere	pāv-ī	past-um	*pasture*
quiesc-ō	-ere	quiēv-ī	quiēt-um	*rest*
scisc-ō	-ere	scīv-ī	scīt-um	*enact*
suesc-ō (§ 412)	**-ere**	**suēv-ī**	**suēt-um**	*become accustomed*

E.—Perfect formed by U.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
al-ō	**-ere**	**alu-ī**	**alt-um**	*nourish*
Compounds of can-ō (§ 488, A),				
as praecin-ō	-ere	praecinu-ī	praecent-um	*sing before*
col-ō	**-ere**	**colu-ī**	**cult-um**	*cultivate*
accumb-ō	**-ere**	**accubu-ī**	**accubit-um**	*recline at table*
incumb-ō	**-ere**	**incubu-ī**	**incubit-um**	*lean*
occumb-ō	-ere	occubu-ī	occubit-um	*sink*
prōcumb-ō	-ere	prōcubu-ī	prōcubit-um	*bend down*
recumb-o	-ere	recubu-ī	recubit-um	*recline*
succumb-ō	-ere	succubu-ī	succubit-um	*submit*
consul-ō	**-ere**	**consulu-ī**	**consult-um**	*consult*
frem-ō	-ere	fremu-ī	fremit-um	*roar*
gem-ō	-ere	gemu-ī	gemit-um	*groan*
gign-ō	**-ere**	**genu-ī**	**genit-um**	*produce*
occul-ō	-ere	occulu-ī	occult-um	*hide*
pōn-ō	**-ere**	**posu-ī**	**posit-um**	*place*
ser-ō	**-ere**	——	**sert-um**	*join*
Comp as **conser-ō**	**-ere**	**conseru-ī**	**consert-um**	*join*
tex-ō	**-ere**	**texu-ī**	**text-um**	*weave*
vom-ō	-ere	vomu-ī	vomit-um	*vomit*
met-ō	-ere	——	mess-um	*reap*
compesc-ō	-ere	compescu-ī	——	*check*
strep-ō	-ere	strepu-ī	——	*resound*
trem-ō	-ere	tremu-ī	——	*tremble*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

acu-ō	-ere	acu-ī	acūt-um	*sharpen*
argu-ō	-ere	argu-ī	argūt-um	*accuse*
dīlu-ō	-ere	dīlu-ī	dīlūt-um	*wash out*
exu-ō	-ere	exu-ī	exūt-um	*strip off*
imbu-ō	-ere	imbu-ī	imbūt-um	*steep*
indu-ō	**-ere**	**indu-ī**	**indūt-um**	*put on*
minu-ō	-ere	minu-ī	minūt-um	*lessen*
abnu-ō	-ere	abnu-ī	abnūt-um	*refuse*
annu-ō	-ere	annu-ī	annūt-um	*assent*
pollu-ō	-ere	pollu-ī	pollūt-um	*defile*
statu-ō	**-ere**	**statu-ī**	**statūt-um**	*settle*
Compounds as **constitu-ō**	**-ere**	**constitu-ī**	**constitūt-um**	*settle*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
su-ō	-ere	su-ī	sūt-um	*stitch*
tribu-ō	-ere	tribu-ī	tribūt-um	*assign*
ru-ō	**-ere**	**ru-ī**	**rūt-um**	*rush down*
Comp. as **dīru-o**	-ere	**dīru-ī**	**dirut-um**	*demolish*
metu-ō	**-ere**	**metu-ī**	——	*fear*
congru-ō	-ere	congru-ī	——	*agree*
lu-ō	-ere	lu-ī	——	*pay*
plu-it	-ere	plu-it (*or* plūv-it)	——	*rain*
solv ō	**-ere**	**solv-ī**	**solūt-um**	*loose*
volv-ō	**-ere**	**volv-ī**	**volūt-um**	*roll*
facess-ō	-ere	facess-ī	facessīt-um	*accomplish*
accend-ō	**-ere**	**accend-ī**	**accens-um**	*kindle*
incend-ō	**-ere**	**incend-ī**	**incens-um**	*set on fire*
succend ō	-ere	succend-ī	succens-um	*kindle below*
dēfend-ō	**-ere**	**dēfend-ī**	**dēfens-um**	*defend*
offend-ō	-ere	offend-ī	offens-um	*stumble*
mand-ō	-ere	mand-ī	mans-um	*chew*
pand-ō	**-ere**	**pand-ī**	**pass-um**	*spread open*
prehend-ō	-ere	prehend-ī	prehens-um	*seize*
scand-ō	**-ere**	**scand-ī**	**scans-um**	*climb*
Comp. as **ascend-ō**	-ere	**ascend-ī**	**ascens-um**	*climb up*
sīd-ō	**-ere**	**sīd-ī**	——	*settle down*
Comp as **consīd-ō**	-ere	**consēd-ī**	**consess-um**	*settle down*
vell-ō	-ere	vell-ī	vuls-um	*pluck*
verr-ō	-ere	verr-ī	vers-um	*sweep*
vert-ō	**-ere**	**vert-ī**	**vers-um**	*turn*
bib-ō	**-ere**	**bib-ī**	——	*drink*
excūd-ō	-ere	excūd-ī	excūs-um	*hammer out*
strid-ō	-ere	strid-ī	——	*creak*
vīs-ō	-ere	vīs-ī	——	*visit*
In the following the perfect base is identical with the verbal stem :—				
find-ō	**-ere**	**fid-ī**	**fiss-um**	*cleave*
scind-ō	**-ere**	**scid-ī**	**sciss-um**	*rend*
percell-ō	-ere	percul-ī	perculs-um	*overturn*

489. THIRD CONJUGATION, WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

par-iō	**-ere**	**peper-ī**	**part-um**	*produce*

Compounds (4th conj.) : **comper-iō** and **reper-iō** (§ 490, F).

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
cap-iō	-ere	**cēp-ī**	**capt-um**	*take*
Comp. as **accip-iō**	-ere	**accēp-ī**	**accept-um**	*receive*
fac-iō	-ere	**fēc-ī**	**fact-um**	*make, do*
Comp. (§ 31, N) as **satisfac-iō**	-ere	**satisfēc-ī**	**satisfact-um**	*satisfy*
,, with preps. as **affic-iō**	-ere	**affēc-ī**	**affect-um**	*affect*
fug-iō	-ere	**fūg-ī**	**fugit-um**	*flee*
iac-iō	-ere	**iēc-ī**	**iact-um**	*throw*
Comp. as **abic-iō** *	-ere	**abiēc-ī**	**abiect-um**	*throw away*
fod-iō	-ere	fōdī	foss-um	*dig*

C.—Perfect formed by S.

allic-iō	-ere	allex-ī	allect-um	*attract*
illic-iō	-ere	illex-ī	illect-um	*entice*
pellic-iō	-ere	pellex-ī	pellect-um	*entice*
spec-iō (in old Lat. only)	-ere	spex-ī	——	*look*
Comp. as **aspic-iō**	-ere	**aspex-ī**	**aspect-um**	*look at*
quat-iō	-ere	——	**quass-um**	*shake, agitate*
Comp. as **concut-iō**	-ere	**concuss-ī**	**concuss-um**	*shake, agitate*

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel (I).

cup-iō	-ere	**cupīv-ī**	**cupīt-um**	*desire*
sap-iō	-ere	sapīv-ī	——	*have taste, know*

E.—Perfect formed by U.

ēlic-iō	-ere	ēlicu-ī	ēlicit-um	*lure forth*
rap-iō	-ere	rapu-ī	**rapt-um**	*seize*
Comp. as **abrip-iō**	-ere	**abripu-ī**	**abrept-um**	*carry off*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

coep-iō (pres. not classical)	-ere	**coep-ī** (§ 518)	**coept-um**	*begin*

* In compounds of **iaciō** the consonantal **i** is omitted in tenses formed from the present base, but the syllable of the prefix preceding the **i** is nevertheless counted long by position (§ 3).

490. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication: *none.*

B.—Perfect formed by vowel lengthening.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ven-iō	**-īre**	**vēn-ī**	**vent-um**	*come*

C.—Perfect formed by **S.**

farc-iō	-īre	fars-ī	fart-um	*stuff*
Comp. as refere-iō	-īre	refers-ī	refert-um	*stuff*
fulc-iō	-ire	fuls-ī	fult-um	*prop*
haur-iō	**-īre**	**haus-ī**	**haust-um**	*drain*
saep-iō	-īre	saeps-ī	saept-um	*fence in*
sanc-iō	-īre	sanx-ī	{sanct-um *or* sancīt-um}	*ratify*
sarc-iō	-īre	sars-ī	sart-um	*patch*
vinc-iō	**-īre**	**vinx-ī**	**vinct-um**	*bind*
sent-iō	**-īre**	**sens-ī**	**sens-um**	*feel*

D.—Perfect formed by **V** preceded by long vowel **(I).**

This is the way in which the perfect base of **audiō** and of other verbs of the fourth conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is irregular in—

sepel-iō	**-īre**	**sepelīv-ī**	**sepult-um**	*bury*

E.—Perfect formed by **U.**

amic-iō	-īre {amicu-ī / amix-ī}		amict-um	*clothe*
aper-iō	**-īre**	**aperu-ī**	**apert-um**	*uncover, open*
oper-iō	**-īre**	**operu-ī**	**opert-um**	*cover*
sal-iō	-īre	salu-ī	salt-um	*leap*
Comp. as dēsil-iō	-īre	dēsilu-ī	dēsult-um	*leap down*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

comper-iō	**-īre**	**comper-ī**	**compert-um**	*ascertain*
reper-iō	**-īre**	**repper-ī**	**repert-um**	*find*

Deponent and Semi-Deponent Verbs.

491. First Conjugation.

All form their supine base like **hortor**.

492. Second Conjugation.

All form their supine base like **vereor**, except—

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	
r-eor	**-ērī**	**rat-us sum**	*think*
fat-eor	**-ērī**	**fass-us sum**	*acknowledge*
Compounds as			
confit-eor	**-ērī**	**confess-us sum**	*confess*
aud-eō	**-ēre**	**aus-us sum**	*dare*
gaud-eō	**-ēre**	**gāvīs-us sum**	*rejoice*

493. Third Conjugation.

fru-or	**-ī**	**fruct-us sum**	*enjoy oneself*
fung-or	**-ī**	**funct-us sum**	*busy oneself*
loqu-or	**-ī**	**locūt-us sum**	*speak*
quer-or	**-ī**	**quest-us sum**	*complain*
sequ-or	**-ī**	**secūt-us sum**	*follow*
amplect-or	-ī	amplex-us sum	*embrace*
complect-or	-ī	complex-us sum	*embrace*
lāb-or	**-ī**	**laps-us sum**	*slide*
nīt-or	**-ī**	**nīs-us sum**, *I endeavoured* / **nix-us sum**, *I leaned*	*endeavour, lean*
ūt-or	**-ī**	**ūs-us sum**	*make use*
fīd-ō	**-ere**	**fīs-us sum**	*trust*

The present base of the following is inceptive (§ 498) in form :—

apisc-or	-ī	apt-us sum	*obtain*
Comp. : **adipisc-or**	**-ī**	**adept-us sum**	*obtain*
comminisc-or	-ī	comment-us sum	*devise*
expergisc-or	-ī	experrect-us sum	*awake oneself*
īrasc-or	**-ī**	**īrāt-us sum**	*get angry*
nancisc-or	-ī	nact-us sum	*obtain*
nasc-or	**-ī**	**nāt-us sum**	*be born*
oblīvisc-or	**-ī**	**oblīt-us sum**	*forget*
pacisc-or	-ī	pact-us sum	*bargain*
proficisc-or	**-ī**	**profect-us sum**	*set out*
ulcisc-or	**-ī**	**ult-us sum**	*take vengeance on, avenge*
dēfetisc-or	**-ī**	**dēfess-us sum**	*grow weary*

494. THIRD CONJUGATION WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	
mor-ior *	-ī	mortu-us sum	*die*
grad-ior	-ī	gress-us sum	*step*
Compounds a, aggred-ior	-ī	aggress-us sum	*attack*
pat-ior	-ī	pass-us sum	*suffer*
Comp. : perpet-ior	-ī	perpess-us sum	*endure*

495. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

All form their supine base like **partior**, except-

exper-ior	-īrī	expert-us sum	*try*
opper-ior	-īrī	{oppert-us / opperīt-us} sum	*wait*
or-ior †	-īrī	ort-us sum	*rise*
assent-ior	-īrī	assens-us sum	*agree*
mēt-ior	-īrī	mens-us sum	*measure*
ord-ior	-īrī	ors-us sum	*begin*

MISCELLANEOUS.

496. VERBS WITH PRINCIPAL PARTS FROM VARIOUS ROOTS.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
fer-iō	-īre	{īc-ī / percuss-ī}	{ict-um / percuss-um}	*strike*
ferō	ferre	tul-ī	lāt-um	*bear*
fīō	fierī	fact-us sum		*become*
toll-ō	-ere	sustul-ī	sublāt-um	*raise*

497. INTRANSITIVE ACTIVE VERBS USED IN PLACE OF PASSIVE VERBS.

fīō	{*I become*, / *am made*}	serves as the passive of	**faciō**, *I make, do*
pereō	*I perish*	,, ,,	**perdō**, *I destroy*
vāpul-ō, -āre	*I get whipped*	,, ,,	**verberō**, *I whip*
vēneō	*I am on sale*	,, ,,	**vendō**, *I sell*

* Fut. Partic. *moritūrus.* † Fut. Partic. *oritūrus.*

498. ALPHABETICAL LIST OF VERBS.

This list contains all common verbs of the third conjugation, together with irregular verbs, and those verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations which form their perfect and supine differently from **amō**, **moneō**, and **audiō** respectively; except—

(*a*) Inceptive verbs in **-ascō**, **-escō**, **-iscō**, formed from simple verbs, the perfect and supine of these, if they exist, being the same as the perfect and supine of the simple verb;

(*b*) Compound verbs which contain the simple verb unchanged in form, but drop the reduplication (if any) in the perfect, *e g.*—

	Pres. Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Simple verb:	**dūc ō**	**-ere**	**dux-ī**	**duct-um**	*lead*
Compound verb:	**abdūc-ō**	**-ere**	**abdux-ī**	**abduct-um**	*lead away*
Simple verb:	**pell-ō**	**-ere**	**pepul-ī**	**puls-um**	*drive*
Compound verb:	**impell-ō**	**-ere**	**impul-ī**	**impulsum**	*drive on*

But one compound at least is given of verbs which when compounded change in form or retain the reduplication in the perfect. The perfect and supine of verbs which are only slightly modified in composition, *e.g.* **occīdō**, *I kill* (from **ob** and **caedō**), must be ascertained by reference to the simple verb; but compound verbs such as **surgō**, *I arise* (compounded of **sub** and **regō**), of which the elements cannot readily be seen, are given in alphabetical order as well as under the simple verb. Compound verbs of which the simple forms are not in use, *e.g.* **abnuō**, *I refuse*, are given in alphabetical order.

For the changes undergone by prepositions in composition see § 198.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
abnu-ō	-ere	abnu-ī	abnūt-um	*refuse*
abol-eō	-ēre	abolēv-ī	abolit-um	*abolish*
accend-ō	**-ere**	**accend-ī**	**accens-um**	*kindle*
accumb-ō	**-ere**	**accubu-ī**	**accubit-um**	*recline at table*
acu-ō	-ere	acu-ī	acūt-um	*sharpen*
adipisc-or	**-ī**	**adept-us sum**		*obtain*
adolesc-ō	**-ere**	**adolēv-ī**	**adult-um**	*grow up*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
afflīg-ō	**-ere**	**afflix-ī**	**afflict-um**	*strike against*
ag-ō	**-ere**	**ēg-ī**	**act-um**	*drive*
Compounds as				
abig-ō	**-ere**	**abēg-ī**	**abact-um**	*drive away*
Except				
circumag-ō	-ere	circumēg-ī	circumact-um	*drive around*
cōg-ō	**-ere**	**coēg-ī**	**coact-um**	*drive together, compel*
dēg-ō	-ere	dēg-ī	——	*pass (time)*
perag-ō	-ere	perēg-ī	peract-um	*accomplish*
alg-ēō	-ēre	als-ī	——	*feel cold*
allic-iō	-ere	allex-ī	allect-um	*attract*
al-ō	**-ere**	**alu-ī**	**alt-um**	*nourish*
amic-iō	-īre	amicu-ī / amix-ī	amict-um	*clothe*
amplect-or	-ī	amplex-us sum		*embrace*
annu-ō	-ere	annu-ī	annūt-um	*assent*
aper-iō	**-īre**	**aperu-ī**	**apert-um**	*uncover, open*
apisc-or	-ī	apt-us sum		*obtain*
Compound :				
adipisc-or	**-ī**	**adept-us sum**		*obtain*
arcess-o *or* accers-ō	-ere	arcessīv-ī	arcessīt-um	*send for*
ard-ēō	-ēre	ars-ī	ārs-um	*be on fire*
argu-ō	-ere	argu-ī	argūt-um	*accuse*
assent-ior	-īrī	assens-us sum		*agree*
aud-eō	**-ēre**	**aus-us sum**		*dare*
aug-eō	**-ēre**	**aux-ī**	**auct-um**	*augment*
bīb-ō	**-ere**	**bib-ī**	——	*drink*
cad-ō	**-ere**	**cecid-ī**	**cās-um**	*fall*
Compounds as				
concid-ō	**-ere**	concid-ī	——	*fall*
Supine stem in				
occid-ō	**-ere**	**occid-ī**	**occās-um**	*fall, set*
recid-ō	**-ere**	**reccid-ī**	**recās-um**	*fall back*
caed-ō	**-ere**	**cecīd-ī**	**caes-um**	*cut*
Compounds as				
occid-ō	**-ere**	**occīd-ī**	**occīs-um**	*kill*
can-ō	**-ere**	**cecin-ī**	**cant-um**	*sing*
Compounds as				
praecin-ō	**-ere**	praecinu-ī	praecent-um	*sing before*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
capess-ō	-ere	capessīv-ī	capessīt-um	*take in hand*
cap-iō	**-ere**	**cēp-ī**	**capt-um**	*take*
Compounds as				
accip-iō	**-ere**	**accēp-ī**	**accept-um**	*receive*
carp-ō	**-ere**	**carps-ī**	**carpt-um**	*pluck*
Compounds as				
dēcerp-ō	-ere	dēcerps-ī	dēcerpt-um	*pluck off*
cav-eō	**-ēre**	**cāv-ī**	**caut-um**	*beware of*
cēd-ō	**-ere**	**cess-ī**	**cess-um**	*yield*
cens-eō	**-ēre**	**censu-ī**	**cens-um**	*count*
cern-ō	**-ere**	**crēv-ī**	**crēt-um**	*discern*
ci-eō	-ēre	cīv-ī	cit-um	*arouse*
cing-ō	**-ere**	**cinx-ī**	**cinct-um**	*gird*
claud-ō	**-ere**	**claus-ī**	**claus-um**	*shut*
Compounds as				
conclūd-ō	**-ere**	**conclūs-ī**	**conclūs-um**	*confine*
coep-iō (pres. not classical)	-ere	coep-ī	coept-um	*begin*
cōg-ō	**-ere**	**coēg-ī**	coact-um	*drive together, compel*
col-ō	**-ere**	**colu-ī**	**cult-um**	*cultivate*
combūr-ō	**-ere**	**combuss-ī**	**combust-um**	*burn up*
comminisc-or	-ī	comment-us sum		*devise*
cōm-ō	-ere	comps-ī	compt-um	*deck*
comper-iō	**-īre**	**comper-ī**	**compert-um**	*ascertain*
compesc-ō	-ere	compescu-ī	——	*check*
complect-or	-ī	complex-us sum		*embrace*
compl-eō	**-ēre**	**complēv-ī**	**complēt-um**	*fill up*
concut-iō	**-ere**	**concuss-ī**	**concuss-um**	*shake*
conflīg-ō	-ere	conflix-ī	conflict-um	*contend*
congru-ō	-ere	congru-ī	——	*agree*
consul-ō	**-ere**	**consulu-ī**	**consult-um**	*consult*
coqu-ō	-ere	cox-ī	coct-um	*cook*
crēd-ō	**-ere**	**crēdid-ī**	**crēdit-um**	*trust*
crep-ō	-āre	crepu-ī	crepit-um	*rattle*
cresc-ō (§ 412)	**-ere**	**crēv-ī**	**crēt-um**	*grow*
cub-ō	-āre	cubu-ī	cubit-um	*lie down*
cup-iō	**-ere**	**cupīv-ī**	**cupīt-um**	*desire*
curr-ō	**-ere**	**cucurr-ī**	**curs-um**	*run*
Compounds as				
accurr-ō	**-ere**	**accucurr-ī or accurr-ī**	**accurs-um**	*run to*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
dēcut-iō	-ere	dēcuss-ī	dēcuss-um	*shake off*
dēfend-ō	**-ere**	**dēfend-ī**	**dēfens-um**	*defend*
dēfetisc-or	-ī	dēfess-us sum		*grow weary*
dēl-eō	**-ēre**	**dēlēv-ī**	**dēlēt-um**	*abolish*
dēm-ō	-ere	demps-ī	dempt-um	*take off*
dīc-ō (§ 200)	**-ere**	**dix-ī**	**dict-um**	*say*
dilu-ō	-ere	dilu-ī	dilūt-um	*wash out*
disc-ō	**-ere**	**didic-ī**	——	*learn*
Comp. as addisc-ō	-ere	addidic-ī	——	*learn besides*
discut-iō	-ere	discuss-ī	discuss-um	*shatter*
distingu-ō	-ere	distinx-ī	distinct-um	*distinguish*
dīvid-ō	**-ere**	**dīvīs-ī**	**dīvīs-um**	*divide*
d-ō (§ 512)	**-are**	**ded-ī**	**dat-um**	*give*
Comp. as **ēd-ō** *	**-ere**	**ēdid-ī**	**ēdit-um**	*give out*
Except				
circumd-ō	**-are**	**circumded-ī**	**circumdat-um**	*put round*
doc-eō	**-ēre**	**docu-ī**	**doct-um**	*teach*
dom-ō	-āre	domu-ī	domit-um	*tame*
dūc-ō (§ 200)	**-ere**	**dux-ī**	**duct-um**	*lead*
ed-ō (§ 510)	**-ere**	**ēd-ī**	**ēs-um**	*eat*
elic-iō	-ere	ēlicu-ī	ēlicit-um	*lure forth*
em-ō	**-ere**	**ēm-ī**	**empt-um**	*buy*
Compounds				
as **adim-ō**	**-ere**	**adēm-ī**	**adempt-um**	*take away*
Except **coem-ō**	**-ere**	**coēm-ī**	**coempt-um**	*buy up*
ēnic-ō	-āre	ēnicu-ī	ēnect-um	*wear to death*
eō (§ 504)	**īre**	**īv-ī** or **i-ī**	**it-um**	*go*
excūd-ō	-ere	excūd-ī	excūs-um	*hammer out*
excut-iō	-ere	excuss-ī	excuss-um	*shake out*
expergisc-or	-ī	experrect-us sum		*awake oneself*
exper-ior	**-īrī**	**expert-us sum**		*try*
expl-ēō	-ēre	explēv-ī	explēt-um	*fill up*
explōd-ō	-ere	explōs-ī	explōs-um	*hiss off*
exstingu-ō	-ere	exstinx-ī	exstinct-um	*extinguish*
exu-ō	-ere	exu-ī	exūt-um	*strip off*

* Some of these are compounds of **dō**, *I give*, others of a verb **-dō**, *I put*, of which the simple form is not in use. No distinction is here attempted, as it is in many cases impossible to ascertain from which simple verb the compound is formed.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
facess-ō	-ere	facess-ī	facessīt-um	*accomplish*
fac-iō (§ 200)	**-ere**	**fēc-ī**	**fact-um**	*make, do*
Comp. as				
satisfac-iō	**-ere**	**satisfēc-ī**	**satisfact um**	*satisfy*
,, with preps. as				
affic-iō	**-ere**	**affēc-ī**	**affect-um**	*affect*
fall-ō	**-ere**	**fefell-ī**	**fals-um**	*deceive*
Comp.: refell-ō	-ere	refell-ī	——	*disprove*
farc-iō	-īre	fars-ī	fart-um	*stuff*
Compounds as				
refarc-iō	-īre	refars-ī	refert-um	*stuff*
fat-eor	**-ērī**	**fass-us sum**		*acknowledge*
Compounds as				
confit-eor	**-ērī**	**confess-us sum**		*confess*
fav-eō	-ēre	fāv-ī	faut-um	*be favourable*
fer-iō	-īre	(īc-ī) / (percuss-ī)	(ict-um) / (percuss-um)	*strike*
ferō (§ 502)	**ferre**	**(tul-ī)**	**(lāt-um)**	*bear*
Comp. with				
ab: aufer-ō	**-re**	**abstul-ī**	**ablāt-um**	*bear away*
ad: affer-ō	**-re**	**attul-ī**	**allāt-um**	*bring*
cum: confer-ō	**-re**	**contul-ī**	**collāt-um**	*bring together*
dis-: differ-ō	**-re**	**distul-ī**	**dīlāt-um**	*separate*
ex: effer-ō	**-re**	**extul-ī**	**ēlāt-um**	*bring out*
in: infer-ō	**-re**	**intul-ī**	**illāt-um**	*bring in*
ob: offer-ō	**-re**	**obtul-ī**	**oblāt-um**	*offer*
re-: refer-ō	**-re**	**rettul-ī**	**relāt-um**	*bear back*
rē: rēfer-t	**-re**	**rētul-it**	——	*concern*
sub: suffer-ō	**-re**	**sustul-ī**	**sublāt-um**	*endure*
Other preps. unchanged, as in				
dēfer-ō	**-re**	**dētul-ī**	**dēlātum**	*bear down*
ferv-eō	-ēre	(ferbu-ī) / (ferv-ī)	——	*be boiling*
fīd-ō	**-ere**	**fīs-us sum**		*have confidence*
fīg-ō	**-ere**	**fix-ī**	**fix-um**	*fix*
find-ō	**-ere**	**fid-ī**	**fiss-um**	*cleave*
fing-ō	**-ere**	**finx-ī**	**fict-um**	*form*
fīō (§ 508)	**fierī**	**(fact-us sum)**		*become*
fl-eō	**-ēre**	**flēv ī**	**flēt-um**	*weep*
flect-ō	**-ere**	**flex-ī**	**flex-um**	*bend*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
flu-ō	**-ere**	**flux-ī**	**flux-um**	*flow*
fod-iō	-ere	fōd-ī	foss-um	*dig*
fov-eō	**-ēre**	fōv-ī	fōt-um	*cherish*
frang-ō	-ere	**frēg-ī**	**fract-um**	*break*
Compounds as **confring-ō**	**-ere**	**confrēg-ī**	**confract-um**	*break*
frem-ō	-ere	fremu-ī	fremit-um	*roar*
fric-ō	-āre	fricu-ī	{frict-um *or* fricāt-um}	*rub*
frig-eō	-ēre	frix-ī	——	*be cold*
fru-or	**-ī**	**fruct-us sum**		*enjoy oneself*
fug-iō	**-ere**	**fūg-ī**	**fugit-um**	*flee*
fulc-iō	-īre	fuls-ī	fult-um	*prop*
fulg-eō	-ēre	fuls-ī	——	*gleam*
fund-ō	-ere	**fūd-ī**	**fūs-um**	*pour*
fung-or	**-ī**	**funct-us sum**		*busy oneself*
gaud-eō	**-ēre**	**gāvīs-us sum**		*rejoice*
gem-ō	-ere	gemu-ī	gemit-um	*groan*
ger-ō	**-ere**	**gess-ī**	**gest-um**	*carry*
gign-ō	-ere	genu-ī	**genit-um**	*produce*
grad-ior	**-ī**	**gress-us sum**		*step*
Compounds as **aggred-ior**	**-ī**	**aggress-us sum**		*attack*
haer-eō	**-ēre**	**haes-ī**	**haes-um**	*stick*
haur-iō	**-īre**	**haus-ī**	**haust-um**	*drain*
iac-iō	-ere	**iēc-ī**	**iact-um**	*throw*
Compounds as **abic-iō** *	**-ere**	**abiēc-ī**	**abiect-um**	*throw away*
ignosc-ō	**-ere**	**ignōv-ī**	**ignōt-um**	*overlook*
illic-iō	-ere	illex-ī	illect-um	*entice*
imbu-ō	-ere	imbu-ī	imbūt-um	*steep*
impl-eō	-ēre	implēv-ī	implēt-um	*fill*
incend-ō	**-ere**	**incend-ī**	**incens-um**	*set on fire*
incess-ō	-ere	incessīv-ī	——	*assault*
incumb-ō	**-ere**	**incubu-ī**	**incubit-um**	*lean*
incut-iō	-ere	incuss-ī	incuss-um	*strike into*
indulg-eō	**-ēre**	**induls-ī**	——	*be indulgent*

* In compounds of **iaciō** the consonantal **i** is omitted in tenses formed from the present base, but the syllable of the prefix preceding the **i** is nevertheless counted long by position.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
indu-ō	**-ere**	**indu-ī**	**indūt-um**	*put on*
inflīg-ō	-ere	inflix-ī	inflict-um	*strike on*
īrasc-or	**-ī**	**īrāt-us sum**		*get angry*
iub-eō	**-ēre**	**iuss-ī**	**iuss-um**	*command*
iung-ō	**-ere**	**iunx-ī**	**iunct-um**	*join*
iuv-ō	**-āre**	**iūv-ī**	**iūt-um**	*help, delight*
lāb-or	**-ī**	**laps-us sum**		*slide*
lacess-ō	-ere	lacessīv-ī	lacessīt-um	*provoke*
laed-ō	**-ere**	**laes-ī**	**laes-um**	*hurt*
Compounds as				
collid-ō	-ere	collīs-ī	collīs-um	*clash*
lav-ō	-āre	lāv-ī (perf.) / (part.)	lavāt-um / laut-us / lōt-us	*wash*
leg-ō	**-ere**	**lēg-ī**	**lect-um**	*pick, read*
Compounds as				
collig-ō	**-ere**	**collēg-ī**	**collect-um**	*collect*
But e remains in				
perleg-ō	**-ere**	**perlēg-ī**	**perlect-um**	*read through*
releg-ō	**-ere**	**relēg-ī**	**relect-um**	*again go over*
Perf. differs in				
dīligō	**-ere**	**dīlex-ī**	**dīlect-um**	*love*
intelleg-ō	**-ere**	**intellex-ī**	**intellect-um**	*understand*
negleg-ō	**-ere**	**neglex-ī**	**neglect-um**	*neglect*
lin-ō	-ere	lēv-ī	lit-um	*besmear*
N.B.—Comp.:				
oblin-ō	-ere	oblēv-ī	oblit-um	*besmear*
linqu-ō	-ere	līqu-ī	——	*leave*
Compounds as				
relinqu-ō	**-ere**	**relīqu-ī**	**relict-um**	*leave*
loqu-or	**-ī**	**locūt-us sum**		*speak*
lūc-eō	-ēre	lux-ī	——	*shine*
lūd-ō	**-ere**	**lūs-ī**	**lūs-um**	*play*
lūg-eō	-ēre	lux-ī	luct-um	*mourn for*
lu-ō	-ere	lu-ī	——	*pay*
mālō (§ 501)	**malle**	**mālu-ī**	——	*will rather*
mand-ō	-ere	mand-ī	mans-um	*chew*
man-eō	**-ēre**	**mans-ī**	**mans-um**	*remain*
merg-ō	-ere	mers-ī	mers-um	*dip*
mēt-ior	**-īrī**	**mens-us sum**		*measure*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
met-ō	-ere	——	mess-um	*reap*
metu-ō	**-ere**	**metu-ī**	——	*fear*
mic-ō	-āre	micu-ī	——	*vibrate*
minu-ō	-ere	minu-ī	minūt-um	*lessen*
misc-eō	**-ēre**	**miscu-ī**	**mixt-um**	*mix*
mitt-ō	**-ere**	**mīs-ī**	**miss-um**	*send*
mord-eō	**-ēre**	**momord ī**	**mors-um**	*bite*
mor-ior	**-ī**	**mortu-us sum**		*die*
mov-eō	**-ēre**	**mōv-ī**	**mōt-um**	*set in motion*
mulc-eō	-ēre	muls-ī	muls-um	*caress*
mulg-eō	-ēre	muls-ī	mulct-um / muls-um	*milk*
nancisc-or	-ī	nact-us sum		*obtain*
nasc-or	**-ī**	**nāt-us sum**		*be born*
nect-ō	-ere	nex-ī	nex-um	*bind*
n-eō	-ēre	nēv-ī	nēt-um	*spin*
nequ-eō (like queō, § 507)	-īre	nequīv-ī *or* nequi-ī	nequit-um	*be unable*
ning-it *or* ningu-it	-ere	ninx-it	——	*snow*
nīt-or	**-ī**	**nīs-us sum**, *I endeavoured* / **nix-us sum**, *I leaned*		*endeavour*, *lean*
nōlō (§ 501)	**nolle**	**nōlu-ī**	——	*be unwilling*
nosc-ō	**-ere**	**nōv-ī**	**nōt um**	*get to know*
Comp. (**noscō** has lost an initial **g**) :				
agnosc-ō	**-ere**	**agnōv-ī**	**agnit-um**	*recognise*
cognosc-ō	**-ere**	**cognōv-ī**	**cognit-um**	*ascertain*
ignosc-ō	**-ere**	**ignōv-ī**	**ignōt-um**	*overlook*
nūb-ō	-ere	nups-ī	nupt-um	*put on the bridal veil*, i.e. *be married*
oblīvisc-or	**-ī**	**oblīt-us sum**		*forget*
obsolesc-ō	-ere	obsolēv-ī	obsolēt-um	*decay*
occul-ō	-ere	occulu-ī	occult-um	*hide*
occumb-ō	-ere	occubu-ī	occubit-um	*sink*
offend-ō	-ere	offend-ī	offens-um	*stumble*
oper-iō	**-īre**	**operu-ī**	**opert-um**	*cover*
opper-ior	**-īrī**	**oppert-us** / **opperīt-us**	**sum**	*wait*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ord-ior	-īrī	**ors-us sum**		*begin*
or-ior	-īrī	**ort-us sum**		*rise*
pacisc-or	-ī	pact-us sum		*bargain*
pand-ō	-ere	**pand-ī**	**pass-um**	*spread open*
pang-ō	-ere	**pĕg-ī** or **pepig-ī**	**pact-um**	*fasten*
Compound:				
coming ō	-ere	**compĕg-ī**	**compact-um**	*join together*
parc-ō	-ere	**peperc-ī**	(pars-ūrus)	*be sparing*
par-iō	-ere	**peper-ī**	**part-um**	*produce*
Compounds:				
comper-iō	-īre	**comper-ī**	**compert-um**	*ascertain*
reper-iō	-īre	**repper-ī**	**repert-um**	*find*
pasc-ō	-ere	pāv-ī	past-um	*pasture*
pat-ior	-ī	**pass-us sum**		*suffer*
Compound:				
perpet-ior	-ī	perpess-us sum		*endure*
pav-eō	ēre	pāv-ī	——	*tremble*
pellic-iō	-ere	pellex-ī	pellect-um	*entice*
pell-ō	-ere	**pepul-ī**	**puls-um**	*drive*
pend-eō	-ēre	**pepend-ī**	**pens-um**	*be suspended*
pend-ō	-ere	**pepend-ī**	- ——	*weight out, pay*
percell-ō	-ere	percul-ī	perculs-um	*overturn*
percut-iō	-ere	percuss-ī	percuss-um	*strike through*
perd-ō	-ere	**perdid-ī**	**perdit-um**	*destroy*
perg-ō	-ere	**perrex ī**	perrect-um	*continue*
pet-ō	-ere	**petīv-ī** or **peti-ī**	**petīt-um**	*seek*
ping-ō	-ere	**pinx-ī**	**pict-um**	*paint*
plang-ō	-ere	planx-ī	planct-um	*beat*
plaud-ō	-ere	plaus-ī	plaus-um	*clap*
Comp., explōd-ō	-ere	explōs-ī	explōs-um	*hiss off*
plic-ō	-āre	**plicāv-ī** / **plicu-ī**	**plicāt-um** / **plicit-um**	*fold*
plu-it	-ere	plu-it *or* plūv-it	——	*rain*
pollu-ō	-ere	pollu-ī	pollūt-um	*defile*
pōn-ō	-ere	**posu-ī**	**posit-um**	*place*
posc-ō	-ere	**poposc-ī**	——	*demand*
Compounds as				
dēposc-ō	-ere	dēpoposc-ī	——	*demand*
possid-eō	-ēre	**possēd-ī**	**possess-um**	*possess*
possum (§ 499)	posse	**potu ī**	——	*be able*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
pōt-ō (§ 412)	-āre	pōtāv-ī	{pōt-um *or* pōtāt-um}	*drink*
prand-eō (§ 412)	-ēre	prand-ī	prans-um	*lunch*
prehend-ō	-ere	prehend-ī	prehens-um	*seize*
prem-ō	**ere**	**press-ī**	**press-um**	*press*
Compounds as				
comprim-ō	**-ere**	**compress-ī**	**compress-um**	*restrain*
prōcumb-ō	-ere	prōcubu-ī	prōcubit-um	*bend down*
proficisc-or	**-ī**	**profect-us sum**		*set out*
prōm-ō	**-ere**	**promps-ī**	**prompt-um**	*bring out*
pung-ō	-ere	pupug-ī	punct-um	*prick*
Compounds as				
compung-ō	-ere	compunx-ī	compunct-um	*sting*
quaer-ō	**-ere**	**quaesīv-ī**	**quaesīt-um**	*seek*
Compounds as				
conquīr-ō	**-ere**	**conquīsīv-ī**	**conquīsīt-um**	*seek out*
quat-iō	**-ere**	——	**quass-um**	*shake, agitate*
Compounds as				
concut-iō	**-ere**	**concuss-ī**	**concuss-um**	*shake, agitate*
qu-eō (§ 507)	-īre	quīv-ī or qui-ī	quit-um	*be able*
quer-or	-ī	quest-us sum		*complain*
quiesc-ō	-ere	quiēv-ī	quiēt-um	*rest*
rād-ō	-ere	rās-ī	rās-um	*scrape*
rap-iō	**-ere**	**rapu-ī**	**rapt-um**	*seize*
Compounds as				
abrip-iō	**-ere**	**abripu-ī**	**abrept-um**	*carry off*
recumb-ō	-ere	recubu-ī	recubit-um	*recline*
rēfer-t	**-re**	**rētul-it**	——	*concern*
reg-ō	**-ere**	**rex-ī**	**rect-um**	*rule*
Compounds as				
corrig-ō	**-ere**	**correx-ī**	**correct-um**	*correct*
Except **perg-ō**	**-ere**	**perrex-ī**	**perrect-um**	*continue*
surg-ō	**-ere**	**surrex-ī**	**surrect-um**	*rise*
r-eor	**-ērī**	**rat-us sum**		*think*
rēp-ō	-ere	reps-ī	rept-um	*creep*
reper-iō	**-īre**	**repper-ī**	**repert-um**	*find*
repl-eō	**-ēre**	**replēv-ī**	**replēt-um**	*refill*
restingu-ō	-ere	restinx-ī	restinct-um	*extinguish*
rīd-eō	**-ēre**	**rīsī**	**rīs-um**	*laugh*
rōd-ō	-ere	rōs-ī	rōs-um	*gnaw*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
rump-ō	-ere	**rūp-ī**	**rupt-um**	*break*
ru-ō	-ere	**ru-ī**	**rut-um**	*rush down*
Comp. as **dīru-ō**	-ere	**dīru-ī**	**dīrut-um**	*demolish*
saep-iō	-īre	saeps-ī	saept-um	*fence in*
sal-iō	-īre	salu-ī	salt-um	*leap*
Compounds as				
dēsil-iō	-īre	dēsilu-ī	dēsult-um	*leap down*
sanc-iō	-īre	sanx-ī	{ sanct-um *or* sancīt-um }	*ratify*
sap-iō	-ere	sapīv-ī	——	*have taste, kn*
sarc-iō	-īre	sars-ī	sart-um	*patch*
scalp-ō	-ere	scalps-ī	scalpt-um	*carve*
cand-ō	-ere	**scand-ī**	**scans-um**	*climb*
Compounds as				
ascend-ō	-ere	**ascend-ī**	**ascens-um**	*climb up*
scind-ō	-ere	**scid-ī**	**sciss-um**	*rend*
scisc-ō	-ere	scīv-ī	scīt-um	*enact*
scrīb-ō	-ere	**scrips-ī**	**script-um**	*write*
sculp-ō	-ere	sculps-ī	sculpt-um	*carve*
sec-ō	-āre	**secu-ī**	**sect-um**	*cut*
sed-eō	-ēre	**sēd-ī**	**sess-um**	*sit*
Compounds as				
assid-eō	-ēre	**assēd-ī**	**assess-um**	*sit by*
Except				
circumsed-eō	-ēre	circumsēd ī	circumsess-um	*besiege*
supersed-eō	-ēre	supersēd-ī	supersess-um	*forbear*
ent-iō	-īre	**sens-ī**	**sens-um**	*feel*
epel-iō	-īre	**sepelīv-ī**	**sepult-um**	*bury*
equ-or	-ī	**secūt-us sum**		*follow*
ser-ō	-ere	**sēv-ī**	**sat-um**	*sow*
Comp. as **inser-ō**	-ere	**insēv-ī**	**insit-um**	*ingraft*
ser-ō	-ere	——	**sert-um**	*join*
Comp. as **conser-ō**	-ere	**conseru-ī**	**consert-um**	*join*
serp-ō	-ere	serps-ī	serpt-um	*crawl*
sīd-ō	-ere	**sīd-ī**	——	*settle down*
Compounds as				
consīd-ō	-ere	**consēd-ī**	**consess-um**	*settle down*
sin-ō	-ere	**sīv-ī**	**sit-um**	*allow*
sist-ō	-ere	**stit-ī**	**stat-um**	*make to stand*
Compounds as				
consist-ō	-ere	**constit-ī**	**constit-um**	*stand still*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Except				
circumsist-ō	-ere	circumstet-ī	——	*stand around*
sol-eō	**-ēre**	**solit-us sum**		*be accustomed*
solv-ō	-ere	solv-ī	**solūt-um**	*loose*
son-ō	-āre	sonu-ī	**sonit-um**	*sound*
sparg-ō	**-ere**	**spars-ī**	**spars-um**	*scatter*
Compounds as				
asperg-ō	-ere	aspers-ī	aspers-um	*sprinkle*
spec-iō (in old Lat. only)	-ere	spex-ī	——	*look*
Compounds as				
aspic-iō	**-ere**	**aspex-ī**	**aspect-um**	*look at*
spern-ō	**-ere**	**sprēv-ī**	**sprēt-um**	*despise*
spond-eō	**-ēre**	**spopond-ī**	**spons-um**	*promise*
statu-ō	-ere	statu-ī	**statūt-um**	*settle*
Compounds as				
constitu-ō	-ere	**constitu-ī**	**constitūt-um**	*settle*
stern-ō	**-ere**	**strāv-ī**	**strāt-um**	*spread*
st-ō	-āre	**stet-ī**	**stat-um**	*stand*
Compounds (few having sup.) as				
praest-ō	-āre	praestit-ī	praestāt-um / praestit-um	*excel*
Except				
circumst-ō	-āre	**circumstet-ī**	——	*stand around*
strep-o	-ere	strepu-ī	——	*resound*
strīd-eō / strīd-ō	-ēre / -ere	strīd-ī	——	*creak*
string-ō	-ere	strinx-ī	strict-um	*strip*
stru-ō	-ere	strux-ī	struct-um	*pile*
suād-eō	**-ēre**	**suās-ī**	**suās-um**	*recommend*
succend-ō	-ere	succend-ī	succens-um	*kindle below*
succumb-ō	-ere	succubu-ī	succubit-um	*submit*
uesc-ō (§ 412)	**-ere**	**suēv-ī**	**suēt-um**	*become accustomed*
sūg-ō	-ere	sux-ī	suct-um	*suck*
um	**esse**	**fu-ī**	——	*be*
So comp. except				
absum	**abesse**	**āfu-ī** (§ 500)	——	*be absent*
possum	**posse**	**potu-ī** (§ 499)	——	*be able*
prōsum	**prōdesse**	**prōfu-ī** (§ 500)	——	*be beneficial*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
sūm-ō	**-ere**	**sumps-ī**	**sumpt-um**	*take up*
su-ō	-ere	su-ī	sūt-um	*stitch*
suppl-eō	-ēre	supplēv-ī	supplēt-um	*fill up*
surg-ō	**-ere**	**surrex-ī**	**surrect-um**	*arise*
taed-et	-ēre	(pertaesum est)		*weary*
tang-ō	**-ere**	**tetig-ī**	**tact-um**	*touch*
Compounds as **atting-ō**	**-ere**	**attig-ī**	**attact-um**	*touch*
teg-ō	**-ere**	**tex-ī**	**tect-um**	*cover*
temn-ō	**-ere**	**temps-ī**	**tempt-um**	*despise*
tend-ō	**-ere**	**tetend-ī**	**tent-um**	*stretch*
ten-eō	**-ēre**	**tenu-ī**	**tent-um**	*hold*
Compounds as **retin-eō**	**-ēre**	**retinu-ī**	**retent-um**	*hold back*
terg-eō	-ēre	ters-ī	ters-um	*wipe*
ter-ō	**-ere**	**trīv-ī**	**trīt-um**	*rub*
tex-ō	**-ere**	**texu-ī**	**text-um**	*weave*
ting-ō *or* tingu-ō	-ere	tinx-ī	tinct-um	*steep*
toll-ō	**-ere**	**(sustul-ī)**	**(sublāt-um)**	*raise*
tond-eō	-ēre	totond-ī	tons-um	*clip*
ton-ō	-āre	tonu-ī	tonit-um	*thunder*
torqu-eō	**-ēre**	**tors-ī**	**tort-um**	*twist*
torr-eō	-ēre	torru-ī	tost-um	*scorch*
trah-ō	**-ere**	**trax-ī**	**tract-um**	*draw*
trem-ō	-ere	tremu-ī	——	*tremble*
tribu-ō	-ere	tribu-ī	tribūt-um	*assign*
trud-ō	-ere	trūs-ī	trūs-um	*thrust*
tund-ō	-ere	tutud-ī	tuns-um / tūs-um	*beat*
ulcisc-or	**-ī**	**ult-us sum**		*take vengeance on, avenge*
ung-ō *or* ungu-ō	-ere	unx-ī	unct-um	*anoint*
urg-eō	-ēre	urs-ī	——	*press*
ūr-ō	**-ere**	**uss-ī**	**ust-um**	*burn, inflame*
ūt-or	**-ī**	**ūs-us sum**		*make use*
vād-ō	**-ere**	——	——	*go*
Comp. as **ēvād-ō**	**-ere**	**ēvās-ī**	**ēvās-um**	*go forth*
veh-ō	**-ere**	**vex-ī**	**vect-um**	*carry*
vell-ō	-ere	vell-ī	vuls-um	*pluck*
vend-ō	**-ere**	**vendid-ī**	**vendit-um**	*sell*
vēn-eō (§ 505)	**-īre**	**vēni-ī**	**vēnit-um**	*go on sale*

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ven-iō	**-īre**	**vēn-ī**	**vent-um**	*come*
verr-ō	-ere	verr-ī	vers-um	*sweep*
vert-ō	**-ere**	**vert-ī**	**vers-um**	*turn*
vet-ō	**-āre**	**vetu-ī**	**vetit-um**	*forbid*
vid-eō	**-ēre**	**vīd-ī**	**vīs-um**	*see*
vinc-iō	**-īre**	**vinx-ī**	**vinct-um**	*bind*
vinc-ō	**-ere**	**vīc-ī**	**vict-um**	*conquer*
vīs-ō	-ere	vīs-ī	——	*visit*
vīv-ō	**-ere**	**vix-ī**	**vict-um**	*live*
volō (§ 501)	**velle**	**volu-ī**	——	*will*
Comp. : **mālō**	**malle**	**mālu-ī**	——	*will rather*
nōlō	**nolle**	**nōlu-ī**	——	*be unwilling*
volv-ō	**-ere**	**volv-ī**	**volūt-um**	*roll*
vom-ō	-ere	vomu-ī	vomit-um	*vomit*
vov-eō	**-ēre**	**vōv-ī**	**vōt-um**	*vow*

NOTE.—A few verbs have no perfect or supine, and are used only in tenses formed from the present base, *e.g.* **langueō**, *I am faint*. Neither these, nor the defective verbs given in §§ 515-9, are included in the above list.

Irregular Verbs.

I.—Possum and other Compounds of Sum.

499. **Possum**, *I am able, I can* (consisting of the base of the adjective **pot-is**, *able*, + **sum**), is thus conjugated:—

Principal Parts: **possum, posse, potu-ī.**

Present Participle (used as adjective only): **potens** (gen. **potent-is**), *powerful.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (*I am able.*)

pos-sum	pos-sumus
pot-es	pot-estis
pot-est	pos-sunt

Imperfect. (*I was able*)

pot-eram	pot-erāmus
pot-erās	pot-erātis
pot-erat	pot-erant

Future. (*I shall be able*)

pot-erō	pot-erimus
pot-eris	pot-eritis
pot-erit	pot-erunt

Perfect. (*I was* or *have been able.*)

potu-ī, etc.

Pluperfect. (*I had been able.*)

potu-eram, etc.

Future-Perfect. (*I shall have been able.*)

potu-erō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (*I should be able.*)

pos-sim	pos-sīmus
pos-sīs	pos-sītis
pos-sit	pos-sint

Imperfect. (*I should be able.*)

pos-sem	pos-sēmus
pos-sēs	pos-sētis
pos-set	pos-sent

Perfect.

potu-erim, etc.

Pluperfect. (*I should have been able.*)

potu-issem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

None.

INFINITIVE.

Present: **posse**, *to be able.*
Perfect: **potu-isse**, *to have been able.*

Obs. **Possum** has no supine or other parts which are formed from the supine base of verbs.

500. Compounds of **Sum.**

The following are conjugated like **sum**:—

Present Indic.	Present Infin.	Perfect.	
ab-sum	**ab-esse**	**āfu-ī**	*am absent*
ad-sum	**ad-esse**	**affu-ī**	*am present*
dē-sum	**dē-esse**	**dēfu-ī**	*am wanting*
in-sum	**in-esse**	**infu-ī**	*am in*
inter-sum	**inter-esse**	**interfu-ī**	*am in the midst*
ob-sum	**ob-esse**	**obfu-ī**	*am harmful*
prae-sum	**prae-esse**	**praefu-ī**	*am in command*
prō-sum	**prōd-esse**	**prōfu-ī**	*am beneficial*
sub-sum	**sub-esse**	——	*am under*
super-sum	**super-esse**	**superfu-ī**	*am left*

II. Volō, Nōlō, and Mālō.

501. Principal Parts:—

volō, velle, volu-ī, *I will, am willing.*

nōlō (**ne-**, *not*, + **volō**), **nolle, nōlu-ī,** *I will not, am unwilling.*

mālō (**mag-**, as in **magis** *more*, + **volō**), **malle, mālu-ī,** *I am more willing, prefer.*

Present Participle.		
volens (gen. **volent-is**), *willing.*	**nōlens** (gen. **nōlent-is**), *unwilling.*	*None.*

	INDICATIVE MOOD.		
Present	(*I am willing*) **volō** **vīs** **vult** **volumus** **vultis** **volunt**	(*I am unwilling*) **nōlō** **nōn vīs** **nōn vult** **nōlumus** **nōn vultis** **nōlunt**	(*I prefer*) **mālō** **māvīs** **māvult** **mālumus** **māvultis** **mālunt**
Imperfect	(*I was willing*) **volēbam** **volēbās** **volēbat** **volēbāmus** **volēbātis** **volēbant**	(*I was unwilling*) **nōlēbam** **nōlēbās** **nōlēbat** **nōlēbāmus** **nōlēbātis** **nōlēbant**	(*I was preferring*) **mālēbam** **mālēbās** **mālēbat** **mālēbāmus** **mālēbātis** **mālēbant**
Future	(*I shall be willing*) **volam** **volēs** **volet** **volēmus** **volētis** **volent**	(*I shall be unwilling*) (**nōlam**) **nōlēs** **nōlet** (**nōlēmus**) (**nōlētis**) (**nōlent**)	(*I shall prefer*) (**mālam**) (**mālēs**) (**mālet**) (**mālēmus**) (**mālētis**) (**mālent**)
Perfect	(*I was* or *have been willing*) **volu-ī**, etc.	(*I was* or *have been unwilling*) **nōlu-ī**	(*I preferred* or *have preferred*) **mālu-ī**, etc.
Pluperfect	(*I had been willing*) **volu-eram**, etc.	(*I had been unwilling*) **nōlu-eram**, etc.	(*I had preferred*) **mālu-eram**, etc.
Future-Perfect	(*I shall have been willing*) **volu-erō**, etc.	(*I shall have been unwilling*) **nōlu-erō**, etc.	(*I shall have preferred*) **mālu-erō**, etc.

	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
	(*I should be willing*)	(*I should be unwilling*)	(*I should prefer*)
PRESENT	**velim** **velīs** **velit** **velīmus** **velītis** **velint**	**nōlim** **nōlīs** **nōlit** **nōlīmus** **nōlītis** **nōlint**	**mālim** **mālīs** **mālit** **mālīmus** **mālītis** **mālint**
	(*I should be willing*)	(*I should be unwilling*)	(*I should prefer*)
IMPERFECT	**vellem** **vellēs** **vellet** **vellēmus** **vellētis** **vellent**	**nollem** **nollēs** **nollet** **nollēmus** **nollētis** **nollent**	**mallem** **mallēs** **mallet** **mallēmus** **mallētis** **mallent**
PERFECT	**volu-erim**, etc.	**nōlu-erim**, etc.	**mālu-erim**, etc.
PLUPERFECT	(*I should have been willing*) **volu-issem**, etc.	(*I should have been unwilling*) **nōlu-issem**, etc.	(*I should have preferred*) **mālu-issem**, etc.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT	*None*	(*Be unwilling*) **nōlī** **nōlīte**	*None*
FUTURE	*None*	(*Thou shalt be unwilling*) **nōlītō** **nōlītō** **nōlītōte** **nōluntō**	*None*
	INFINITIVE.		
PRESENT	**velle**, *to be willing*	**nolle**, *to be unwilling*	**malle**, *to prefer*
PERFECT	**volu-isse**, *to have been willing*	**nōlu-isse**, *to have been unwilling*	**mālu-isse**, *to have preferred*

Obs. **Volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō** have no supine or other parts which are formed from the supine base of verbs; nor have they any gerund.

NOTE 1.—**Vult, vultis** are sometimes spelt **volt, voltis.**

NOTE 2.—**Sī vis,** *if thou wilt,* is sometimes contracted to **sīs.**

III. Fero and its Compounds.

502. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fer-ō, fer-re, tul-ī, lāt-um,** *I bear*

BASES: **fer-** (present); **tul-** (perfect); **lāt-** (supine).

Obs. The perfect and supine bases of this verb are in no way connected with its present base, but are akin to **tollō**, *I raise*. The supine (**tlātum**) has lost an initial **t**.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT: **fer-ens** (gen. **ferent-is**), *bearing*

FUTURE: **lāt-ūrus, lāt-ūra, lāt ūrum**, *about to bear*

PERFECT: **lāt-us, lāt-a, lāt-um**, *borne* or *having been borne*

GERUNDIVE: **fer-endus, fer-enda, fer-endum**, *fit to be borne*

INDICATIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT. (*I bear.*)	
fer-ō	**fer-imus**
fer-s	**fer-tis**
fer-t	**fer-unt**
IMPERFECT. (*I was bearing.*)	
fer-ēbam	**fer-ēbāmus**
fer-ēbās	**fer-ēbātis**
fer ēbat	**fer-ēbant**
FUTURE. (*I shall bear.*)	
fer-am	**fer-ēmus**
fer-ēs	**fer-ētis**
fer-et	**fer-ent**
PERFECT. (*I bore* or *have borne.*)	
tul-ī, etc.	
PLUPERFECT (*I had borne.*)	
tul-eram, etc.	
FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have borne.*)	
tul erō, etc.	

INDICATIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT. (*I am borne.*)	
fer-or	**fer-imur**
fer-ris	**fer-iminī**
fer-tur	**fer-untur**
IMPERFECT. (*I was being borne.*)	
fer-ēbar	**fer-ēbāmur**
fer-ēbāris *or* **-ēbāre**	**fer-ēbāminī**
fer-ēbātur	**fer-ēbantur**
FUTURE. (*I shall be borne.*)	
fer-ar	**fer-ēmur**
fer-ēris *or* **fer-ēre**	**fer-ēminī**
fer-ētur	**fer-entur**
PERFECT. (*I was* or *have been borne.*)	
lāt-us sum, etc.	
PLUPERFECT. (*I had been borne.*)	
lāt-us eram, etc.	
FUTURE-PERFECT. *I shall have been borne.*)	
lāt-us erō, etc.	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT. (*I should bear.*)	
fer-am	**fer-āmus**
fer-ās	**fer-ātis**
fer-at	**fer ant**
IMPERFECT. (*I should be bearing.*)	
fer-rem	**fer-rēmus**
fer-rēs	**fer-rētis**
fer-ret	**fer-rent**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT. (*I should be borne.*)	
fer-ar	**fer-āmur**
fer-āris *or* **fer-āre**	**fer-āminī**
fer ātur	**fer-antur**
IMPERFECT. (*I should be borne.*)	
fer-rer	**fer-rēmur**
fer-rēris *or* **fer-rēre**	**fer-rēminī**
fer-rētur	**fer-rentur**

ACTIVE VOICE.

SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

PERFECT.

tul-erim, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have borne.*)

tul-issem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*Bear.*)

fer **fer-te**

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must bear.*)

fer-tō **fer-tōte**
fer-tō **fer-untō**

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFIN. PRES. : **fer-re**, *to bear*
,, PERF. : **tul-isse**, *to have borne*
,, FUT. : **lātūr-us esse**, *to be about to bear*
GERUND : **fer-endum**, *bearing*, etc.
SUPINE : **lāt-um**, *to bear;* **lāt-ū**, *in bearing*

PASSIVE VOICE.

SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued.*)

PERFECT.

lāt-us sim, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have been borne.*)

lāt-us essem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*Be borne.*)

fer-re **fer-iminī**

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must be borne.*)

fer-tor
fer-tor **fer-untor**

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFIN. PRES : **fer-rī**, *to be borne*
,, PERF. : **lāt-us esse**, *to have been borne*
,, FUT. : **lāt-um īrī**, *to be about to be borne*

503. COMPOUNDS.

The following list shows the principal parts of the compounds of **ferō**; they are conjugated like the simple verb both in the active and in the passive :—

Compounded with					
ab :	**aufer-ō**	**-re**	**abstul-ī**	**ablāt-um**	*bear away*
ad :	**affer-ō**	**-re**	**attul-ī**	**allāt-um**	*bring*
cum :	**confer-ō**	**-re**	**contul-ī**	**collāt-um**	*bring together*
dis- :	**differ-ō**	**-re**	**distul-ī**	**dilāt-um**	*separate*
ex :	**effer-ō**	**-re**	**extul-ī**	**ēlāt-um**	*bring out*
in :	**infer-ō**	**-re**	**intul-ī**	**illāt-um**	*bring in*
ob :	**offer-ō**	**-re**	**obtul-ī**	**oblāt-um**	*offer*
re- :	**refer-ō**	**-re**	**retul-ī**	**relāt-um**	*bear back*
rē :	**rēfer-t** (§ 385)	**-re**	**rētul-it**	——	*concern*
sub :	**suffer-ō**	**-re**	**sustul-ī**	**sublāt-um**	*endure*
Other preps. unchanged as in **dēfer-ō**		**-re**	**dētul-ī**	**dēlāt-um**	*bear down*

IV. Eō and its Compounds.

504. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **eō, īre, īv-ī, it-um,** *I go.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: **iens** (gen. **eunt-is**), *going.*
FUTURE: **it-ūrus, it-ūra, it-ūrum,** *about to go.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I go.*)

eō	**īmus**
īs	**ītis**
it	**eunt**

IMPERFECT. (*I was going.*)

ībam	**ībāmus**
ībās	**ībātis**
ībat	**ībant**

FUTURE. (*I shall go.*)

ībō	**ībimus**
ībis	**ībitis**
ībit	**ībunt**

PERFECT. (*I went* or *have gone.*)

īvī *or* **iī** **īvimus** *or* **iimus**
īvistī (iistī) *or* **istī** **īvistis (iistis)** *or* **istis**
īvit, iit (*or* **it**) { **īvērunt** *or* **iērunt**; **īvēre** *or* **iēre**

PLUPERFECT. (*I had gone.*)
īv-eram *or* **i-eram,** etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have gone.*)
īv-erō *or* **i-erō,** etc.

Obs. In the simple verb (but not in the compounds) the forms with **v** are more usual in tenses formed from the perfect base. The second **i** of **iit** is long; cp. **petiit.** The forms included in brackets ( ) are comparatively rare.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should go.*)

eam	**eāmus**
eās	**eātis**
eat	**eant**

IMPERFECT. (*I should be going.*)

īrem	**īrēmus**
īrēs	**īrētis**
īret	**īrent**

PERFECT.
īv-erim *or* **i-erim,** etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have gone.*)
īv-issem (i-issem) *or* **issem,** etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Go.*)

ī	**īte**

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt* or *must go.*)

ītō	**ītōte**
ītō	**euntō**

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **īre,** *to go*
PERFECT: **īvisse (iisse)** *or* **isse,** *to have gone*
FUTURE: **itūr-us esse,** *to be about to go*

GERUND.

Nom. **eundum,** *going,* etc.

SUPINE.

Acc. **it-um,** *to go*

PASSIVE VOICE (IMPERSONAL ONLY).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT: **ītur**
IMPERFECT: **ībātur**
FUTURE: **ībitur**

So also the other tenses; *e.g.* Perfect, **itum est.**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT: **eātur**
IMPERFECT: **īrētur**

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **īrī**

505. COMPOUNDS.

The following are conjugated like **eō**; in the tenses formed from the perfect base the forms without **v** are more usual:—

ab-eō	abi-ī	abit-um	*go away*
*ad-eō	adi-ī	adit-um	*approach*
co-eō	coi-ī	coit-um	*come together*
*in-eō	ini-ī	init-um	*enter*
inter-eō	interi-ī	interit-um	*vanish*
intro-eō	introi ī	introit-um	*go in*
*ob-eō	obi-ī	obit-um	*traverse, die*
per-eō	peri-ī	perit-um	*perish*
prae-eō	praei-ī	praeit-um	*precede*
prōd-eō	prōdi-ī	prōdit-um	*go forth*
praeter-eō	praeteri-ī	praeterit um	*go past*
red eō	redi ī	redit-um	*go back*
*sub-eō	subi-ī	subit-um	*go up to, endure*
*trans-eō	transi-ī	transit-um	*go across*
vēn-eō	vēni-ī	vēnit-um	*go on sale*

NOTE.—**Ambiō**, *I go around*, is a regular verb of the 4th conj.

506. The compounds marked (*) in the above list may, when they have a transitive meaning, be conjugated in the passive in all three persons as follows:—

PARTICIPLES. [*approached.*

PERFECT: **adit-us, adit-a, adit-um**, *approached* or *having been*
GERUNDIVE: **ad-eundus, ad-eunda, ad-eundum**, *fit to be approached.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am approached.*)

ad eor	**ad-īmur**
ad-īris	**ad-īminī**
ad-ītur	**ad-euntur**

IMPERF.: **ad-ībar, ad-ībāris**, etc.
FUTURE: **ad-ībor, ad-īberis**, etc.
PERFECT: **adit-us sum**, etc.
PLUPERF.: **adit-us eram**, etc.
FUT.-PF.: **adit-us erō**, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT: **ad-ear, ad-eāris**, etc.
IMPERF.: **ad īrer, ad-īrēris**, etc.
PERFECT: **adit-us sim**, etc.
PLUPERF.: **adit-us essem**, etc.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **ad-īrī**, *to be approached*
PERFECT: **adit-us esse**, *to have been approached*

Queō AND **Nequeō.**

507. PRINCIPAL PARTS:—

qu-eō, qu-īre, quīv-ī, quit-um, *I can.*
nequ-eō, nequ-īre, nequīv-ī, nequit-um, *I cannot.*

These two verbs are conjugated exactly like **eō**, except that they have no imperative or gerund.

NOTE.—In tenses from the perfect base the forms with **v** and those without **v** are used indifferently, except that the latter do not occur in the first person (singular or plural) of the perfect indicative.

V. Fīō and its Compounds.

508. **Fīō**, *I become, am made,* takes the place of the passive of **faciō**, *I make,* in tenses formed from the present base. The other tenses of **fīō** are supplied by the passive voice of **faciō**, of which the supine base is **fact-**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fīō, fierī, fact-us sum.**

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT: **fact-us, fact-a, fact-um,** *having become.* GERUNDIVE: **faciend-us, -a, -um,** *fit to become.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT. (*I become.*)		PRESENT. (*I should become.*)	
fīō	——	**fīam**	**fīāmus**
fīs	——	**fīās**	**fīātis**
fit	**fīunt**	**fīat**	**fīant**
IMPERFECT. (*I was becoming.*)		IMPERFECT. (*I should become.*)	
fīēbam	**fīēbāmus**	**fierem**	**fierēmus**
fīēbās	**fīēbātis**	**fierēs**	**fierētis**
fīēbat	**fīēbant**	**fieret**	**fierent**
FUTURE. (*I shall become.*)		PERFECT: **fact-us sim,** etc	
fīam	**fīēmus**	PLUPERF.: **fact-us essem,** etc.	
fīēs	**fīētis**		
fīet	**fient**		
PERFECT: **fact-us sum,** etc.			
PLUPERF.: **fact-us eram,** etc.			
FUT.-PERF.: **fact-us erō,** etc.			

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Become.*) **fī** **fīte**

FUTURE. *None.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **fierī,** *to become.* PERFECT: **fact-us esse,** *to have become.*
FUTURE: **factum īrī,** *to be about to become.*

Obs. Except in the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive, **fīō** follows the fourth conjugation; it has, however, **ī** (long) in all parts except **fit, fierī,** and the imperfect subjunctive.

509. COMPOUNDS.

Compounds of **faciō** with a preposition are regularly conjugated in the passive; *e.g.* **afficiō,** *I affect* (compounded of the preposition **ad,** *to,* and **faciō**), has passive **afficior.**

Other compounds of **faciō** employ **fīō** as their passive in those parts which are formed from the present base; *e.g.* **calefaciō,** *I make hot,* has passive **calefīō.**

NOTE.—**Conficiō,** *I accomplish,* sometimes has passive **confīō** instead of the regular and more usual form, **conficior.**

Dēfīō is occasionally found, and has the same meaning as **dēficiō,** viz. *I fail, come to an end.*

VI. Edo and its Compounds.

510. The tenses given below are the only ones in which **edō** is irregular.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ed-ō, ed-ere** or **esse, ēd-ī, ēs-um,** *I eat.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I eat.*)

ed-ō	**ed-imus**
ed-is *or* **ēs**	**ed-itis** *or* **estis**
ed-it *or* **est**	**ed-unt**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should eat.*)

ed-am *or* **ed-im**	**edāmus** *or* **ed-īmus**
ed-ās *or* **ed-īs**	**ed-ātis** *or* **ed-itis**
ed at *or* **ed-it**	**ed-ant** *or* **ed-int**

SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

IMPERFECT. (*I should be eating.*)

ed-erem *or* **essem**	**ed-erēmus** *or* **essēmus**
ed-erēs *or* **essēs**	**ed-erētis** *or* **essētis**
ed-eret *or* **esset**	**ed-erent** *or* **essent**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Eat.*)

ed-e *or* **ēs**	**ed-ite** *or* **este**

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt eat.*)

ed-itō *or* **estō**	**ed-itōte** *or* **estōte**
ed-itō *or* **estō**	**ed-untō**

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **ed-ere** *or* **esse,** *to eat.*

Obs. It should be noticed that, in all parts of the verb in which **sum,** *I am,* has forms beginning with the letters **es, edō** has forms exactly similar, excepting that in the second person singular of the present indicative and imperative **sum** has **es,** whereas **edō** has **ēs.**

PASSIVE VOICE.

Two irregular forms are occasionally found in the passive voice of **edō,** viz. **estur** (for **editur,** 3rd sing pres. indic.), and **essētur** (for **ederētur,** 3rd sing. imperf. subj.).

511. COMPOUNDS.

Two compounds of **edō** occasionally follow the irregular conjugation of the simple verb, viz. **comedō,** *I eat up,* and **exedō,** *I devour.*

VII. Dō and its Compound Circumdō.

512. Dō (perfect **dedī**) follows the first conjugation, but has **a** (short) instead of **ā** after **d,** in parts formed from the present or supine base (*e.g.* **damus, datus**), except in the second person singular of the present indicative and imperative active, **dās, dā.**

513. In addition to the regular form, **dō** has an old present subjunctive **duim, duīs, duit; duint.** This occurs also in some of the compounds of **dō.**

514. Circumdō is conjugated like **dō;** the other compounds belong to the third conjugation.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

The following verbs are defective, that is to say only the parts given below are in use.

515. Āiō, *I say.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE: **āiens** (gen. **āient-is**), *saying.*
INDICATIVE PRESENT: **āiō** (*I say*), **ais, ait**; **āiunt.**
,, IMPERFECT: **āiēbam** (*I was saying*), etc. (complete).
,, PERFECT: **ait**, *he said.*
SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT: **āiat**, *he would say.*

516. Inquam, *I say.*

INDICATIVE PRESENT: **inquam, inquis, inquit**; **inquimus, inquiunt.**
,, IMPERF.: **inquiēbat**, *he was saying.*
,, FUTURE: **inquiēs** (*thou wilt say*), **inquiet.**
,, PERFECT: **inquiī** (*I said* or *have said*), **inquistī, inquit.**

517. Fārī, *to say.* (The simple verb is only used in poetry.)

PARTICIPLE PRESENT: **fantem** (acc.), **fantī** (dat.), *saying.*
,, PERFECT: **fāt-us, fāta**, *having said.*
,, GERUNDIVE: **fand-us, -a, -um**, *fit to be said.*
INDICATIVE PRESENT: **fātur**, *he says.*
,, FUTURE: **fābor** (*I shall say*), **fābitur.**
,, PERFECT: **fāt-us est**, *he said* or *has said.*
,, PLUPERFECT: **fāt-us eram** (*I had said*), **fāt-us erat.**
IMPERATIVE PRESENT: **fāre**, *say.* INFIN. PRESENT: **fārī**, *to say.*
GERUND: **fandī, fandō** (*saying*). SUPINE: **fātū**, *in saying.*

Some other parts (present, imperfect, and future indicative) of the compounds of **fārī** occur.

518. The following have no present base in use:—

coep-ī, *I began*; **memin-ī**, *I remember*; **ōd-ī**, *I hate.*

They are regularly conjugated in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses, which (in the case of **meminī** and **ōdī**) are translated respectively as present, imperfect, and future. Some other parts are in use:—

From **coepī**: Perf. part. pass., **coept-us, -a, -um**, and tenses formed by it with **sum.**
,, **meminī**: Imperative, **mementō** (*remember*), **mementōte.**
,, **ōdī**: Future part., **ōsūr-us, -a, -um**, *about to hate.*

519. The following are isolated forms:—

(1) **Infit**, *he begins* (*to speak*).
(2) **Quaesō**, *I entreat*; **quaesumus** (used parenthetically like English *pray*).
(3) **Avē** *or* **avētō**, *hail!*: **avēte.** Infinitive, **avēre**, *to cry "hail."*
(4) **Salvē**, *hail!*; **salvēte.** Ind. fut., **salvēbis.** Infin., **salvēre.**
(5) **Cedo**, *give* (imperative).

520.

	Demonstrative.	Relative.	Interrogative.	Indefinite.
Place where.	**hīc**, *here* **istīc**, *near you* **illīc**, *there* **ibi**, *there* **ibīdem**, *in the same place*	**ubi**, *where* **ubicumque**, *wherever*	**ubi**, *where?* **ubinam**, *where, pray?*	**ubīque**, *everywhere* **utrobīque**, *in both places* **ubivīs**, *where you will* **alicubi** } *somewhere* **uspiam** } **usquam** (with neg.), *anywhere* **nusquam**, *nowhere* **alibī**, *elsewhere*
Place whither.	**hūc**, *hither* **istūc**, *to where you are* **illūc**, *thither* **eō**, *thither* **eōdem**, *to the same place*	**quō**, *whither* **quōcumque** } *whithersoever* **quōquō** }	**quō**, *whither?* **quōnam**, *whither, pray?*	**utrōque**, *to both places* **quōlibet**, *whither you please* **quōvīs**, *whither you will* **aliquō**, *to some place* **quōquam** (with neg.), *to any place* **aliō**, *to another place*
Place whence.	**hinc**, *hence* [*arc* **istinc**, *from where you* **illinc**, *thence* **inde**, *thence* [*place* **indidem**, *from the same*	**unde**, *whence*	**unde**, *whence?*	**undique**, *from all sides* **utrimque**, *from both sides* **alicunde**, *from somewhere* **aliunde**, *from elsewhere*
Way.	**hāc**, *this way* **illā**, *that way* **eā**, *that way* **eādem**, *the same way*	**quā**, *which way* or *where* **quācumque**, *whichever way*	**quā**, *which way?* or [*where?*	**aliquā**, *some way* or *somewhere*
Time.	**nunc**, *now* **tum, tunc**, *then* **ōlim**, *at that time*	**cum** (or **quum**), *when* **quandōque** } *whenever* **quandōcumque** } **ubi**, *when*	**quandō**, *when?*	**quandōque** } **aliquandō** } *at some time* **umquam** (with neg.), *ever* **numquam**, *never* **aliās**, *at another time*
Degree, etc.	**adeō, ita**, *so* } **sīc**, *thus* } **tam**, *so* **totiēs**, *so often*	{ **ut** or **utī**, *as* } { **utcumque**, *however* } **quam**, *as, than* **quotiēs**, *as often as*	**ut** or **utī**, *how?* **quam**, *how?* **quotiēs**, *how often?*	{ **utique**, *in any case* { **aliter**, *otherwise* **quamlibet** } *however* **quamvīs** } (with adj. or adv.)

PREPOSITIONS.

521. I. Prepositions used with Substantives in the Accusative only.

ad, *to*
adversum or **adversus**, *opposite, towards*
ante, *before*
apud, *with* (a person), *at the house of*
circā, **circum**, *around*
circiter, *about* (of number)
cis, **citrā**, *this side of*
contrā, *against*
ergā, *towards* (a person)
extrā, *outside*
infrā, *below*
inter, *between, among*
intrā, *within*
iuxtā, *close by*
ob, *because of*
penes, *in the power of*
per, *through*
pōne, *behind*
post, *after*
praeter, *beyond*
prope, *near*
propter, *near, on account of*
secundum, *following on*
suprā, *above*
trans, *across*
ultrā, *the other side of*

522. II. Prepositions used with Substantives in the Ablative only.

ā (before a consonant), **ab** (before a vowel or h), **abs** (only with **tē**, *thee*) *from, by*
cōram, *in the presence of*
cum, *with*
dē, *down from, concerning*
ē *or* **ex**, *out of*
palam, *in the presence of*
prae, *in front of*; with neg. *on account of*
prō, *before, instead of*
procul, *far from*
sine, *without*
tenus (placed after its substantive), *as far as*

523. III. Prepositions used with Substantives in the Accusative or Ablative.

clam (rarely with abl.), *without the knowledge of*
in { with acc., *into*; ,, abl., *in*
sub { with acc. (denoting motion *up to from beneath*), *up to*; with abl. (denoting rest *under*), *below*
super (with abl. rare and mostly poetic), *over*
subter (with abl. in poetry only), *under*

PART III.—SUMMARY OF SYNTAX.

524. TABLE OF CASE-USAGES.

Accusative (§§ 313-31).

External	(§ 23. Object of Transitive Verb:	**dīvitiās despiciō.**
	(§ 55. Object of Factitive Verb;	**tē facimus deam.**
	(§ 24. Goal of Verb of Motion—with preposition:	**in Galliam contendō.**
	§ 316. Goal of Verb of Motion—without preposition (only town, small island, **domus**, **rūs**, or supine):	**Rōmam contendō**; **dormītum ībō.**
Internal	§ 328. Cognate Object of Intransitive Verb:	**longam īre viam.**
	§ 327. Object of Verb (of *asking* or *teaching*) with External Object:	**ōtium dīvōs rogō.**
	§ 329. Extent of Action:	**ego illud tibi assentior.**
	§ 330. Part affected (poetic):	**equus tremit artūs.**
	§ 331. Adverbial (n. adj., poetic):	**acerba tuēris**, *you look sour.*
	§ 222. Extent of Space:	**Caesar mille passūs prōcessit.** [est.
	§ 223. Extent of Time.	**Caesar quinque diēs commorātus**

Dative (§§ 345-55).

Indirect Object.	§ 346. Indirect Object Proper (with Verbs):	**virtūtī operam datō**; **captīvīs parcam**; **captīvīs parcētur.**
	§ 348. With Adjectives and Adverbs:	**grātus eram tibi.**
	§ 349. Advantage or Disadvantage:	**dūcit avō turmās.**
	§ 350. Ethic:	**quid mihī Celsus agit?**
	§ 352. Possessive:	**hōc multīs erat in ōre.**
	With **sum** (= *to have*):	**sunt nōbīs mītia pōma.**
	§ 353. Agent—with gerund, gerundive, or adj. in **-bilis** (normal):	**haec Caesarī erant agenda.**
	Agent—with perf., pluperf., or fut. perf. (occasional):	**cui haec nōn sunt audīta?**
	Agent—with pres., imperf., or fut. (poetic and rare):	**nōn cernitur ullī.**
	§ 354. Purpose:	**diēs colloquiō dictus est.**
Predicative.	§ 355. Predicate of the Subject (with dative of indirect object):	**haec mihi sunt cūrae.**
	Predicate of the Object (with dative of indirect object):	**equitātum auxiliō Caesarī mittunt.**

Locative (§§ 357-61).

Place Where.	§ 358. Town or small island, 1st or 2nd decl. sing.:	**Rōmae**, **Corinthī**, **Tarentī habitābam.**
	The words **domī**, **humī**, **rūrī**, **bellī**, **mīlitiae**, **animī.**	
	Time When. § 359. **Lūcī**, **vesperī.**	
Gen. or Loc.	Value. § 360. **Tantī**, **quantī**, **magnī**, etc.:	**virtūs magnī habeātur.**
	Price. § 361. **Tantī**, **quantī**:	**quantī emptum?**

Ablative (§§ 364-81).

Local.

§ 367. Place where– with preposition : **Caesar in Galliā erat.**
§ 366. ,, ,, without ,, in prose only in case of—
(*a*) town or small island, 1st or 2nd declension plural or 3rd declension : **Athēnīs, Thūriīs, Tībure, Gādibus habitābam.**
(*b*) substantives with **medius** or **tōtus** : **carcer mediā urbe aedificātur.**
(*c*) **terrā marīque, dextrā, laevā,** **locō, parte, regiōne.**
§ 368. Respect : **tōtā rē errastī.**
§ 224. Time when : **hōrā decimā pervēnī.**
§ 225. ,, within which : **Agamemnōn vix decem annīs urbem ūnam cēpit.**

Instrumental.

§ 371. Instrument : **Gallia Oceanō continētur.**
§ 373. Road : **ībam viā sacrā.**
§ 375. Price : **parvō emptum.**
§ 374. Measure or amount of Difference : **proelium paucīs ante diēbus erat factum.**
§ 67. Cause : **fāme et sitī morior.**
§ 376. Manner—with preposition : **cum celeritāte vēnī.**
,, with attribute : **summā celeritāte vēnī.**
,, without preposition or attribute : certain words only.
§ 377. Description (with attribute): **Britannī capillō sunt prōmissō.**
§ 135. Attendant Circumstances : **Caesar expositō exercitū ad hostēs contendit.**

Ablative Proper.

§ 379. Place whence motion takes place : **ab urbe rediī.**
with preposition :
without ,, (only town, small island, or **domō, humō, rūre**) : **Rōmā rediī ; domō proficiscar.**
§ 380. Separation : **Caesar cōpiās castrīs ēdūcit.**
§ 380. Origin : **Aenēās nātus est deā.**
§ 68. Agent (the source of action)—with preposition : **Clytaemnestra ā fīliō occīsa est.**
§ 381. Standard of comparison : **sōl est terrā māior.**

Genitive (§§ 332-41).

Attributive.

§ 25. Possessor or Author : **Diomēdis equōs cernō.**
§ 334. Subjective : **Rōmānōrum adventum exspectō.**
§ 335. Material : **formīcae populant farris acervum.**
§ 336. Quality (with attribute) : **magnī ponderis saxa collocō.**
§ 338. Partitive or Divided Whole: **hōrum fortissimī sunt Belgae.**

Predicative. § 58. Possessor : **hominis est errāre.**
§ 336. Quality : **tuae litterae maximī sunt ponderis**

Objective. § 339. With verbs : **mē timōris arguunt.**
§§ 340, 341. ,, adjectives : **Gallia est plēna cīvium.**
§ 340. ,, substantives : **vincet amor patriae.**

525. TABLE OF SUBJUNCTIVE USAGES.

I.—Subjunctive in Principal Sentences.

		Negative.
(A.) HYPOTHETICAL, *i.e.* in apodosis of Conditional Sentences:	see opposite page.	nōn.
§ 256. Potential:	**velim mihi ignoscās.**	nōn.
(B.) JUSSIVE.		
§ 161. Optative, *i.e.* expressing a wish:	**valeant cīvēs meī.**	nē.
§ 149. Command or Prohibition (1st pl. or 3rd person):	**amēmus patriam.**	nē.
Command or Prohibition, 2nd sing. indefinite (rare):	**istō bonō ūtāre dum adsit, cum absit nē requīrās.**	nē.
§ 163. Colloquial Prohibition, 2nd person (rare in prose):	**nē pertimescās.** / **tū nē quaesieris.**	nē.
Concessive:	**nē sint in senectūte vīrēs.**	nē.
§ 150. Deliberative or Dubitative:	**quid agam?**	nōn.

II.—Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses,

(C.) § 237. SEMI-DEPENDENT COMMAND:	**velim mihi ignoscās.**	—
§ 236. DEPENDENT COMMAND:	**tē ōrō ut huic ignoscās.**	nē.
(D.) FINAL, *i.e.* expressing Purpose.		
§ 230. With final conjunction:	**edō ut vīvam.**	nē.
§ 240. ,, ,, ,,	**adiuvā mē quō id fīat facilius.**	nē.
§ 241. ,, ,, ,,	**hiems prohibuit quōminus venīrem.**	—
§ 233. ,, ,, ,, after verbs of *fearing*:	**vereor nē veniant hostēs.**	nē nōn or ut.
§ 267. With temporal ,,	**exspectā dum veniam.**	—
§ 239. ,, relative pronoun:	**lēgātōs mittit quī pācem petant.**	nē.
§ 238. ,, adverb of place:	**locum petit unde hostem invādat.**	nē.
(E.) CONSECUTIVE, *i.e.* expressing Consequence or Result.		
§ 202. With **ut**:	**ita stultus est ut quidvīs crēdat.**	nōn.
	accidit ut esset lūna plēna.	nōn.
§ 242. ,, **quīn**:	**nēmō est quīn hōc crēdat.**	—
§ 203. ,, relative pronoun*:	**quis tam praeceps est quī neget?**	nōn.
§ 204. ,, ,, ,,	**sunt quī divitiās nōn habeant.**	nōn.

* Or with relative adverb of place (§ 283).

Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses (*continued*).

(F.) CONDITIONAL, *i.e.* in protasis of Conditional Sentences.

		Negative.
§ 252. With Subjunctive in apodosis :	sī hōc crēdās, errēs.	nisi or sī nōn.
§ 249. ,, ,, ,,	sī hōc crēderēs, errārēs.	
,, ,, ,,	sī hōc crēdidissēs, errāvissēs.	
§ 257. With sī = *to see if* :	sī hostēs adīrent exspectābāmus.	—
§ 285. ,, quasi, velut sī, etc. :	illum horreō velut sī adsit.	nōn.

(G.) CIRCUMSTANTIAL, *i.e.* in Concessive, Causal, and Temporal Clauses.

§ 271. Concessive, with quamvīs, hunc, quamvīs sit stultus, amō.		nōn.
licet, ut, cum (*although*) :	ut dēsint vīrēs, voluntās adest.	nōn.
§ 275. Concessive, with quī* :	tū nōn adfuistī, quī illum diem solitus essēs obīre.	nōn.
§ 276. Causal, with cum (*since*) :	cum mē dēfendere nequeam, ad tē veniō	nōn.
§ 281. ,, ,, quī* :	tū, quī nihil prōvīderis, trepidās.	nōn.
§ 261. Temporal, historic tense with cum (occurrence in principal sentence being closely connected) :	Gȳgēs, cum terra discessisset, descendit in illum hiātum.	nōn.

(H.) REPORTED OR OBLIQUE.

§ 189. (a) Dependent (*i.e.* Reported) Question :	quaerō quid Marcus agat.
§ 290. Reported Description :	Caesar obsidēs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit.
§ 291. ,, Condition :	templum dēvōvit sī hostēs fūdisset.
§ 278. ,, Cause :	Sōcratēs accūsātus est quod iūventūtem corrumperet.
§ 393. (b) In a clause dependent on a dependent subjunctive :	huic imperat quās possit adeat cīvitātēs.
§ 393. (c) In a clause dependent on an accusative and infinitive phrase :	vīdī senātum, sine quō cīvitās stāre nōn posset, sublātum.
§ 420. In a dependent clause in oratio obliqua :	see examples in §§ 423-6.

* Or with a relative adverb of place (§ 283).

526. MOODS AND TENSES IN ORATIO OBLIQUA AFTER A HISTORIC TENSE.

Principal Sentences.	Oratio Recta	Oratio Obliqua.
Statements:	Indic. present	Infinitive present
	,, imperfect ,, perfect, plupf.	,, perfect
	,, future ,, fut-perf. (act.)	,, future
	,, ,, (passive)	Perfect participle with **fore**
Apodosis of Conditional Sentences (Active):	Subj. present ,, imperfect	Future participle alone or with **esse**
	,, impf. or plupf.	Fut. participle with **fuisse**
Apodosis of Conditional Sentences (Passive):	,, present ,, imperfect	**fore** (or **futūrum esse**) **ut** with imperf. subj.
	,, impf. or plupf.	**futūrum fuisse ut** with imperf. subj.
Commands:	Imperative Subjunctive present or **nōlī** with inf.	Subjunctive imperfect
Dependent Clauses:	Indic. pres., imperf., fut. Subj. pres., imperf.	Subjunctive imperfect
	Indic. perf., pluperf., fut.-perf. Subj. perf., pluperf.	Subjunctive pluperfect

WORD ORDER AND IDIOM.

527. Owing to the use of inflections in Latin the order of the words in a sentence admits of considerable variations without any radical change in the meaning. Thus, instead of **Rōmulus Remum occīdit** (*Romulus slew Remus*), we may write **Remum occīdit Rōmulus**; whereas in English by changing the order of the words to "Remus slew Romulus" we invert the meaning.

528. The following are the rules which govern the arrangement of words in a Latin sentence where the order is not affected (as is very commonly the case) by considerations of euphony or emphasis.

(*a*) The **subject** stands first.

This does not apply to the infinitive used as subject.

Gallī sē omnēs ā Dīte prognātōs praedicant	*the Gauls assert that they are all descendants of Pluto*
dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī	*to die for one's country is sweet and befitting*
haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit	*to remember these things will some day afford delight*

(*b*) A finite **verb** stands **at the end** of its sentence or clause, and other predicative words immediately precede it.

(*c*) The **object** is placed between the subject and the predicate, an indirect object usually preceding a direct object.

Caesar iīs auxilium suum pollicitus est	*Caesar promised them his help*

529. Interrogative and relative words, conjunctions and other words of connection or transition, are placed **at the beginning** of the sentence or clause which they intro-

duce, except enclitics (-ne, -que, -ve), autem, enim, quidem, quoque, and (usually) igitur, tamen, vēro.

quid struis aut quā spē Libycīs teris ōtia terrīs ?	*what art thou devising, or with what hope art thou spending thy leisure in Libyan lands?*
num omnibus moriendum est ?	*surely we must not all die?*
estne omnibus moriendum ?	*must we all die?*

530. An attribute, whether consisting of an ordinary adjective, an attributive genitive, a substantive in apposition, or a phrase, usually follows the substantive to which it refers, but a demonstrative or an adjective of quantity or number precedes its substantive.

multōs ā rectā ratiōne nātūra vitiōsa dētorquet	*many are turned aside from rectitude by their corrupt nature*
plūrimī Rōmānī periērunt	*very many Romans perished*

531. An adverb or adverbial phrase immediately precedes the word it qualifies.

amīcitiam ēius publicē prīvātimque petēbant	*they were seeking his friendship both in public and in private*
ēruptiōnem pluribus portīs facere summā vī cōnābantur	*they attempted with their utmost force to make a sally from several gates*
vir est ēloquentiae valdē studiōsus	*he is a man most devoted to oratory*

532. A preposition precedes its case, except tenus, versus, and the enclitic cum (§ 88). An attribute may intervene.

senātus duovirōs ad eam aedem prō amplitūdine populī Rōmānī faciendam ccreārī iussit	*the Senate ordered a commission of two to be appointed for building that temple in accordance with the dignity of the Roman people*

533. In complex sentences the subordinate clause, unless it denotes a consequence, is frequently but by no means always put at or near the beginning of the principal sentence, *e.g.*

Titūrius, quī nihil anteā prāvidisset, trepidāre	*Titurius grew alarmed, for he had made no preparations beforehand*
ut dēsint vīrēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās	*though strength be lacking, yet willingness is praiseworthy*
Hannibal equitibus praecēpit ut adorīrentur impeditum agmen	*Hannibal ordered his cavalry to attack the encumbered line*
mōrātī melius erimus cum didicerimus quae nātūra dēsīderet	*we shall be better in character when we have learnt what nature requires*
ita vixī ut nōn frustrā mē nātum existimem	*I have so lived that I consider I was not born in vain*

534. A word is frequently, for the sake of **emphasis**, put in some prominent position—*i.e.* either first or last in the sentence. The subject is, if emphatic, placed at the end; the verb, if emphatic, at the beginning. Either of these positions emphasises any other word.

metuēbant servī, verēbantur līberī	*he was feared by his slaves, reverenced by his children*
meā operā Tarentum recēpistī	*it was through me that you recovered Tarentum*

Obs. Here the normal order would be **Tarentum operā meā recēpistī**, a possessive adjective usually following its substantive.

535. The obvious differences between Latin and English lie in their respective grammatical forms and syntactical usages. Each language has, of course, also its characteristic idioms and expressions. In the translation of English into Latin and *vice versa* it must be borne in mind—

(1) That the exact meaning of an English word depends upon its context, e.g. *he went into the country* (**rūs**), *he died for his country* (**patria**), *he ravaged the enemy's country* (**fīnēs, agrī**), *he ruled the country well* (**rēspublica, cīvitās**), *he was beloved by his country* (**cīvēs**). Conversely **imperium, regnum, potestās, potentia,** though they may all be translated by the English word *power*, are not synonymous, *i.e.* they conveyed different ideas of "power" to a Roman mind.

(2) That many English words differ in meaning from the Latin words from which they are derived; e.g. *acts*

must be translated by **facta**, not **acta** (*records*); *famous* by **clārus, illustris**, not **fāmōsus** (*notorious*); *honest* by **probus**, not **honestus** (*honourable*); *nation* by **gens**, not **nātiō** (*a tribe*); *office* by **magistrātus, honōrēs**, not **officium** (*duty*); *receive* by **accipere, excipere**, not **recipere** (*take back*).

(3) That, whereas abstract expressions and ideas abound in English, Latin is matter-of-fact and concrete; *e.g.* we say *to ascend the throne, to receive the crown*, the Latin equivalent for which is **regnum excipere. Solium ascendere** means *to climb the steps of the throne* and **corōnam accipere** *to receive a wreath or garland.* Compare also these Latin phrases with their English equivalents :—

rēs bene gesta	*a success* (in war), *a brilliant exploit*
rēs Rōmānae	*Roman history*
rēs dīvīnae	*religious exercises, divine service*
novīs rēbus studēre	*to have revolutionary ideas*
vestem induere	*to dress oneself*
rēīpublicae dēesse	*to take no part in politics*
id quod ūtile est	*expediency*

536. It is necessary to take especial care in the translation of English prepositions and particles, for which there are many Latin equivalents. Thus *without* can be rendered as follows :—

there is sin within and without the walls of Troy	**Īliacōs intrā mūrōs peccātur et extrā**
I have finished it without trouble	**id sine molestiā confēcī**
the line had been drawn up without any fixed order	**nullō certō ordine aciēs instructa erat**
wild animals are without reason and speech	**ferae sunt ratiōnis et ōrātiōnis expertēs**
nothing has been done without my knowing it	**nihil mē insciente est factum**
many praise a speech without understanding it	**multī ōrātiōnem laudant neque intellegunt**
my estates give me great delight without encumbering me with debt	**praedia mē valdē dēlectant, nec mē aere aliēnō obruunt**
hardly a day passes without his calling at my house	**diēs fere nullus est quīn hīc domum meam ventitet**

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

NOTE.—The following are the chief abbreviations used in the vocabularies:—

m.	masculine.	pron.	pronoun.
f.	feminine.	vb.	verb.
n.	neuter.	adv.	adverb.
c.	common.	prep.	preposition.
sing.	singular.	conj.	conjunction.
pl.	plural.	poss.	possessive.
comp.	compound.	dem.	demonstrative.
sb.	substantive.	rel.	relative.
adj.	adjective.	interr.	interrogative.

Words marked * cannot come first in the sentence.

ā, ab, abs, *prep. with abl.*, from, by.

abdūcō, -duxī, -ductum, 3, to lead away (§ 200).

abeō, -iī, -itum, -īre, to go away.

abiciō, -iēcī, -iectum, 3, to throw down *or* away.

abiungō, -iunxī, -iunctum, 3 (ab and iungo), to unyoke, to unharness.

absolvō, -solvī, -solūtum, 3 (ab and solvo), to acquit.

absterreō, 2, to frighten away.

absum, āfuī, abesse, to be away, to be distant.

accēdō, -cessī, -cessum, 3 (ad and cēdo), to approach, to be added.

accidō, -cidī, 3 (ad and cado), to happen.

accingō, -cinxī, -cinctum, 3, to gird to *or* on.

accipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3, to take, to receive.

accommodō, 1, to put on.

accūsō, 1, to accuse, to blame.

ācer, -cris, -cre, sharp, vigorous.

acerbus, -a, -um, bitter, painful.

aciēs, -ēī, *f.*, line of battle, battle.

ācriter, *adv.*, sharply.

ad, *prep. with acc.*, towards, to; about (*with numerals*).

addūcō, -duxī, -ductum, 3, to bring; **adductus,** influenced.

adeō, *adv.*, so.

adeō, -iī, -itum, -īre, to come to, to approach (§ 504).

adhūc, *adv.*, hitherto, till now.

adiungō, -iunxī, -iunctum, 3, to join, to yoke.

administrō, 1, to direct.

admīrātiō, *f.*, admiration.

admīror, 1, *dep.*, to admire, to be astonished at.
adorior, **-ortus**, 4, *dep.*, to attack.
adventus, **-ūs**, *m.*, an arrival.
adversārius, **-iī**, *m.*, adversary, enemy.
adversus, **-a**, **-um**, *p. adj.*, opposite; **res adversae**, misfortune.
adversus, *prep.*, towards, against.
aeger, **-gra**, **-grum**, sick, ill.
aegrē, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly.
aequitās, **-ātis**, *f.*, fairness, justice.
aequor, **-oris**, *n.*, the flat surface of the sea, the sea.
aequus, **-a**, **-um**, equal, advantageous; **aequum**, **-ī**, *n.*, level ground, fairness.
āēr, **āeris**, *m.*, the air.
aes, **aeris**, *n.*, copper; **aes aliēnum**, debt.
aestimō, 1, to appraise, to value.
aetās, **-ātis**, *f.*, age.
aeternus, **-a**, **-um**, immortal, lasting.
aevum, **-ī**, *n.*, time of life, age.
afficiō, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, 3 (**ad** and **facio**), to influence, to affect.
ager, **agrī**, *m.*, a field
agger, **-eris**, *m.*, rampart.
aggredior, **-gressus**, 3, *dep.* (**ad** and **gradior**), to approach, to attack.
agitō, 1, to drive, to harass.
agmen, **-inis**, *n.*, army on march in column.
agnoscō, **agnōvī**, **agnitum**, 3 (**ad** and **gnoscō**, *i.e.* **noscō**), to perceive, to acknowledge.
agnus, **-ī**, *m.*, a lamb.
agō, **ēgī**, **actum**, 3, to drive, to lead, to plead.
āiō, *def. vb.*, to say.
algor, **-ōris**, *m.*, cold, frost.
aliēnō, 1, to estrange, to turn.
aliquamdiū, *adv.*, for a considerable time.
aliquantum, **-ī**, *n.*, good deal.
aliquis, **aliqua**, **aliquid**, someone, something.
aliquot, some, several.
alius, **-a**, **-ud**, another, other.
alloquor, **-locūtus**, 3, *dep.*, to address.
alter, **-tera**, **-terum**, one of two, the other, the second.
altus, **-a**, **-um**, high, deep.
amārus, **-a**, **-um**, bitter.
ambāgēs, *abl.* **-e**, *f.*, subterfuge, shifts.
ambiguus, **-a**, **-um**, doubtful, changing.
ambitus, **-ūs**, *m.*, bribery.
ambo, **-ae**, **-o**, both.
ambulō, 1, to walk.
āmentia, **-ae**, *f.*, madness.
amīcus, **-ī**, *m.*, a friend.
āmittō, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, 3, to let go, to lose.
amnis, **-is**, *m.*, stream, river.
amplus, **-a**, **-um**, large, great.
an, or, whether.
Aniensis, **-e**, belonging to the Anio.
anima, **-ae**, *f.*, the soul, life.
animadvertō, **-vertī**, **-versum**, 3 (**animum adverto**), to attend to, to perceive, to punish.
animus, **-ī**, *m.*, soul, heart.
annus, **-ī**, *m.*, year.
ante, *prep. & adv.*, before.
anteā, *adv.*, before.
anus, **-ūs**, *f.*, old woman.
aperiō, **-peruī**, **-pertum**, 4, to open.
apertus, **-a**, **-um**, open; **latus**, left exposed.
apex, **-icis**, *m.*, the top, head.
appellō, 1, to address, to name, to call.
appetens, **-entis**, desirous of, avaricious.
appetō (**ad-peto**), **-īvī** and **iī**, **-ītum**, 3, to desire, to seek.

appōnō (ad-pōno), **-posuī, -positum**, 3, to place near, to put on.
aptus, -a, -um, equipped, suitable.
apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, near, before.
aqua, -ae, *f.*, water.
arātor, -ōris, *m.*, ploughman.
arātrum, -ī, *n.*, plough.
arbitrium, -ī, *n.*, judgment, advice.
arbitror, 1, *dep.*, to think.
arbor, -oris, *f.*, a tree.
arcessō, -īvī, -ītum, 3, to summon.
ardens, -entis, glowing, fiery, eager.
ardeō, arsī, arsum, 2, to burn.
ardor, -ōris, *m.*, heat, ardour.
argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver, money.
arma, -ōrum, *n.*, weapons, arms.
arrīdeō (ad-rīdeo), **-rīsī, -rīsum**, 2, to laugh at.
arripiō, -ripuī, -reptum, 3 (ad and rapio), to lay hold of, to snatch.
ars, -tis, *f.*, art, theory, skill.
arx, -cis, *f.*, citadel.
asper, -era, -erum, rough.
aspiciō, -spexī, -spectum, 3, to look.
assequor, -cūtus, 3, *dep.*, to come up to, to attain.
astō, -stitī, 1, to stand by.
at, *conj.*, but, moreover.
Atlās, -antis, *m.*, a mythical king and giant, Atlas.
atque, or **āc**, and, and also.
atquī, *conj.*, notwithstanding, indeed.
atrox, -ōcis, horrible.
attendō (ad and tendo), **-tendī, -tentum**, 3, to attend to.
attentus (ad-tentus), -a, -um, attentive.
attingō, -tigī, -tactum, 3 (ad and tango), to touch, to arrive at, to border upon.
audācia, -ae, *f.*, courage, boldness.
audax, -ācis, *adj.*, daring, courageous.
audeō, ausus, 2, to dare.
audiō, 4, to hear.
auferō, abstulī, ablātum, auferre (ab and fero), to carry away, to remove.
aufugiō, -fūgī, 3 (ab and fugio), to flee away.
aura, -ae, *f.*, air.
aureus, -a, -um, golden.
aurīga, -ae, *c.*, charioteer, driver.
aut, *conj.*, or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or.
autem, *conj.*, but.
auxilior, 1, to help, to assist.
auxilium, -ī, help, aid, assistance; *pl.*, auxiliary troops.
avārus, -a, -um, greedy, avaricious.
avidus, -a, -um, greedy, eager.
avis, -is, *f.*, a bird.
āvius, -a, -um, untrodden, wandering.
avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather.

baculum, -ī, *n.*, **baculus, -ī**, *m.*, a stick.
barba, -ae, *f.*, beard.
bellum, -ī, *n.*, war.
bēs, bessis, *m.*, two-thirds.
bibō, bibī, bibitum, 3, to drink.
blandīmentum, -ī, *n.*, flattery; inducement.
bonus, -a, -um, good.
bōs, bovis, *c.*, ox, cow.
brevis, -e, short.
brevitās, -ātis, *f.*, shortness.

cadō, cecidī, cāsum, 3, to fall.
caedēs, -is, *f.*, slaughter.
caedō, cecīdī, caesum, 3, to cut down, to kill.
caelestis, -e, heavenly, divine.
caelum, -ī, *n.*, the heavens.
calcō, 1, to tread upon.
calidus, -a, -um, warm, hot

callis, -is, *m.*, track, footpath.
campus, -ī, *m.*, plain, the Campus Martius at Rome.
candescō, 3, to begin to shine.
cānescō, 3, to become white.
cānī, -ōrum, *m.*, grey hair.
canis, -is, *c.*, a dog.
cānitiēs, -em, -ē, *f.*, grey hair.
cantō, 1, to sing, to play.
cantus, -ūs, *m.*, song.
capessō, -īvi or **-ii, -ītum,** 3, to take eagerly.
capiō, cēpī, captum, 3, to take, to seize.
cāritās, -ātis, *f.*, affection, esteem.
carō, carnis, *f.*, flesh.
carpō, -psī, -ptum, 3, to pluck.
castīgō, 1, to punish.
castra, -ōrum, *n.*, a camp.
cāsus, -ūs, *m.*, fall, accident.
cauda, -ae, *f.*, tail.
causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, lawsuit.
cēlō, 1, to hide, to conceal (*with acc. of the thing and person*).
censeō, -suī, -sum, 2, to give an opinion, to estimate.
centuria, -ae, *f.*, company of about 100 soldiers.
centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion.
cernō, crēvī, crētum, 3, to distinguish.
certāmen, -inis, *n.*, contest, fight.
certō, 1, to struggle, to vie.
certus, -a, -um, certain, definite, fixed.
cervix, -īcis, *f.*, the neck.
cēterus, -a, -um, the other.
ciciō, cīvī, citum, 2, to move, to shake, to utter.
cinis, -eris, *m.*, ashes.
circumdō, -dedī, -datum, 1, to surround.
circumferō, -tulī, -lātum, -ferre, to turn in all directions, to carry round.
circumfundō, -fūdī, -fūsum, 3, (*in pass.*) to surround, to flock round.
circumspiciō, -spexī, -spectum, 3, to look round at.
circumveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, to surround.
citō, 1, to summon.
citrā, *adv. & prep.*, on this side.
cīvis, -is, *c.*, a citizen.
cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*, citizenship, a state.
clam, secretly.
clāmitō, to cry loudly.
clāmō, 1, to shout, to proclaim aloud.
clēmentia, -ae, *f.*, mercy.
coepī, coeptum, 3, to have begun.
cognōmen, -inis, *n.*, a surname.
cognoscō, -gnōvī, -gnitum, 3, to perceive, to see, to recognise.
cōgō, coēgī, coactum, 3, to collect, to compel.
cohortor, 1, *dep.*, to encourage.
collocō, 1, to station.
colloquium, -iī, *n.*, conference.
collum, -ī, *n.*, neck.
color, -ōris, *m.*, colour, hue.
coma, -ae, *f.*, the hair.
combūrō, -bussī, -bustum, 3, to burn up.
comitia, -ōrum, *n.*, an assembly, elections.
commemorō, 1, to mention, to relate.
committō, -misī, -missum, 3, to begin.
commodē, *adv.*, properly.
comparō, 1, to get ready, to raise.
competītor, -ōris, *m.*, competitor, rival.
complexus, -ūs, *m.*, embrace.
complōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, weeping.
comprimō, -pressī, -pressum, 3 (**cum** and **premo**), to squeeze together, to hold back, to subdue.
cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*, attempt.
concavus, -a, -um, hollow.
concilium, -iī, *n.*, an assembly, a meeting.

concipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 (cum and capio), to catch fire, to fancy, to imagine.
concors, -dis, *adj.*, harmonious.
concurrō, -currī (rarely -cucurrī), -cursum, 3, to come together, to engage.
concutiō, -cussī, -cussum, 3, to shake violently.
condemnō, 1, to condemn.
condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, condition, stipulation, terms.
conferō, contuli, collātum, conferre, to bring together, to join, to engage.
confidentia, -ae, *f.*, confidence.
confīdō, -fīsus sum, 3, to trust.
confiteor, -fessus, 2, *dep.*, to confess, to acknowledge.
congerō, -gessī, -gestum, 3, to collect, to heap together.
conglobō, 1, to mass, to crowd.
congredior, -gressus, 3, to engage.
coniciō, -iēcī, -iectum, 3, to cast, to throw.
coniungō, -iunxī, -iunctum, 3, to join together.
coniux, -iugis, *c.*, wife, husband.
conscius, -a, -um, cognisant, conscious.
consīdō, -sēdī, -sessum, 3, to sit down, to encamp.
consilium, -ī, *n.*, counsel, foresight, plan.
consistō, -stitī, 3, to stop, to halt.
conspiciō, -spexī, -spectum, 3, to descry.
constantia, -ae, *f.*, perseverance.
constituō, -stituī, -stitūtum, 3, to draw up, to station, to appoint.
constō, -stitī, -stātūrus, 1, to stand still, to stand firm, to continue, to be well-known.
consuescō, -suēvī, -suētum, 3, to accustom, (*in perf.*) I am accustomed.
consul, -sulis, *m.*, consul.
consūmō, -sumpsī, -sumptum, 3, to spend, to employ, to destroy.
contendō, -tendī, -tentum, 3, to strive, to hasten.
contentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, striving, contest.
continuō, *adv.*, immediately, at once.
continuō, 1, to prolong.
contrā, *adv.*, opposite, against.
contumācia, -ae, *f.*, stubbornness, obstinacy.
convallis, -is, *f.*, valley, defile.
conveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, to come together, to meet, to agree with, (*impers.*) to be agreed.
convertō, -vertī, -versum, 3, to turn round, to direct towards, to change.
convīvium, -iī, *n.*, feast, banquet.
cōpia, -ae, *f.*, (*pl.*) troops, forces.
cōram, *adv.*, in presence of.
cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing of an army.
corpus, -poris, *n.*, body.
corripiō, -ripuī, -reptum, 3, to carry off.
corruō, -ruī, 3, to fall together.
corvus, -ī, *m.*, raven.
costa, -ae, *f.*, rib.
cremō, 1, to burn.
creō, 1, to create, to produce, to elect.
crīmen, -inis, *n.*, complaint, crime.
crīminātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, charge.
crīminor, 1, *dep.*, to accuse.
crīnis, -is, *m.*, the hair.
cruentus, -a, -um, stained with blood.
cruor, -ōris, *m.*, blood.
cum, *conj.*, whenever, since, when, as, although.
cum, *prep. with abl.*, with.
cunctī, -ae, -a, all, the whole.
cunctor, 1, *dep.*, to delay.

cupiditās, -ātis, *f.*, eager, desire.
cupidus, -a, -um, wistful, eager.
cupiō, -īvī or **-iī, -ītum,** 3, to desire, to long for, to wish for.
currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot, car.
cursus, -ūs, *m.*, running.
custōdia, -ae, *f.*, watching, watch, sentinels.

damnum, -ī, *n.*, loss, injury.
dē, *prep. with abl.*, from, about.
dēcernō, crēvī, -crētum, 3, to decide, to resolve.
dēcipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 (**de** and **capio**), to deceive.
decor, -ōris, *m.*, beauty.
decōrus, -a, -um, fitting, seemly.
dēcurrō, -currī (more rarely **-cucurrī**), **-cursum,** 3, to run down.
decus, -oris, *n.*, beauty, ornament, honour.
dēcutiō, -cussī, -cussum, 3 (**de** and **quatio**), to knock off.
dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender.
dēdūcō, -duxī, -ductum, 3, to bring down, to escort.
dēferō, -tulī, -lātum, -ferre (**de** and **fero**), to bring down, to charge.
dēfīgō, -fixī, -fixum, 3 (**dē** and **figo**), to fix, to fasten.
dēfleō, -flēvī, -flētum, 2, to bewail, to weep for.
dēgredior, -gressus, 3 (**de** and **gradior**), to march down.
deinceps, *adv.*, successively.
deinde, *adv.*, thereupon, then.
dēlābor, -lapsus, 3, *dep.*, to fall down.
dēlectus, -ūs, *m.*, levy.
dēlīberō, 1, to consider.
dēligō, -lēgī, -lectum, 3 (**de** and **lego**), to pick, to choose.
dēmittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3, to send down, to lose heart.
dēnique, *adv.*, at last; **tum denique,** then indeed.
dens, dentis, *m.*, tooth.
dēpōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3, to lay down, to lay as a wager.
dērīdeō, -rīsī, -rīsum, 2, to laugh at, to mock.
deserō, -seruī, -sertum, 3, to abandon.
dēsipiō, -sipuī, 3, to be foolish, to be silly.
dēsistō, -stitī, -stitum, 3, to leave off, to cease.
despērō, 1, to despair, to give up.
despondeō, -spondī, -sponsum, 2, to betroth.
destinō, 1, to fix, to determine.
dēsum, -fuī, -esse, to be wanting.
dētrahō, -traxī, -tractum, 3, to take away.
dēveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, to come to, to reach.
dēvexus, -a, -um, sinking.
dēvincō, -vīcī, -victum, 3 (**de** and **vinco**), to conquer thoroughly, to subjugate.
dēvorō, 1, to devour, to consume.
dēvoveō, -vōvī, -vōtum, 2, to consecrate, devote.
dīcō, dixī, dictum, 3, to say, to tell.
dīdūcō, -duxī, -ductum, 3 (**dis** and **duco**), to stretch out.
differō, distulī, dīlātum, differre (**dis** and **fero**), to spread, to postpone, to scatter.
difficilis, -e, difficult, critical.
dignitās, -ātis, *f.*, rank, honour.
dīlābor, -lapsus, 3, *dep.* (**dis** and **labor**), to fall to pieces, to slip away.
dīmicātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, struggle.
dīmicō, -āvī or **-uī, -ātum,** 1 (**dis** and **mico**), to fight.
dīmittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3 (**dis** and **mitto**), to send forth, to let go.
dīrus, -a, -um, fearful.
discessus, -ūs, *m.*, departure.
disciplīna, -ae, *f.*, training.
discō, didicī, 3, to learn.

disiciō, -iēcī, -iectum. 3 (dis and iacio), to throw down, to disperse.
dispar, -paris, unlike.
dissentiō, -sensī, -sensum, 4, to differ.
dissimulātor, -ōris, *m.*, dissembler.
diū, *adv.*, a long time, a long while.
diūtinus, -a, -um, lasting a long time, long.
dīversus, -a, -um, different, opposite.
dīvīnus, -a, -um, divine.
documentum, -ī, *n.*, example, proof.
dolus, -ī, *m.*, fraud.
dominātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, despotism.
domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, household, home.
dubius, -a, -um, doubtful, uncertain ; **sine dubio**, without doubt.
dūcō, duxī, ductum, 3, to lead, to build, to put off.
dūrō, 1, to become hard.
dūrus, -a, -um, hard, strong, stern.
dux, ducis, *c.*, leader.

ēdūcō, -duxī, -ductum, 3, to draw out, to lead out.
efficax, -ācis, effective.
effugium, -iī, *n.*, flight, way of escape.
effundō, -fūdī, -fūsum, 3 (ex and fundo), to pour out, to let go ; **effuso cursu**, at full speed.
ēgredior, -gressus, 3, *dep.*, to disembark.
ēiciō, -iēcī, -iectum, 3, to drive away ; **se eicere**, to rush forth.
ēlectrum, -ī, *n.*, amber.
ēligō, -lēgī, -lectum, 3, to choose, to select.
ēloquium, -iī, *n.*, eloquence
ēmergō, -mersī, -mersum (ex and mergo), 3, *intrans.*, to come forth, to extricate oneself.
ēmineō, 2, to stand out.
ēmittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3 (ex and mitto), to send out.
emō, ēmī, emptum, 3, to buy.
ēn, *interj.*, lo ! behold !
enim, *conj.*, for.
epulae, -ārum, f., banquet, feast
epulor, 1, *dep.*, to feast.
ergō, *adv.*, therefore.
ēripiō, -ripuī, -reptum, 3, to snatch away, to take away.
ērudiō, 4, to instruct, to teach.
ērumpō, -rūpī, -ruptum, 3, to break out, to rush forth.
etiam, *conj.*, also, still.
ēventus, -ūs, *m.*, issue, result.
ex, *prep. with abl.*, from or out of.
excēdō, -cessī, -cessum, 3, to go away, to go from.
excellens, -entis, high, remarkable.
excellō, -celluī, -celsum, 3, to excel.
excelsus, -a, -um, high, illustrious.
excipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 (ex and capio), to catch, to welcome.
exclāmō, 1, to shout.
excolō, -coluī, -cultum, 3 (ex and colo), to tend carefully.
excutiō, -cussī, -cussum, 3 (ex and quatio), to shake out, to drive away.
exerceō, 2, to make use of.
exercitātus, -a, -um, practised.
exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army.
exiguus, -a, -um, small, little.
exorior, -ortus, -orīrī, 4, *dep.*, to arise.
experior, -pertus, 4, *dep.*, to try, to know by experience.
expers, -pertis, not sharing in.
expōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3, to put on land, to disembark, to explain.

expugnō, 1, to take by storm.
exsanguis, -e, bloodless, lifeless.
exspectō, 1, to look for, to expect.
exspēs, *adj.*, hopeless.
exspīrō, 1, to die.
exsul, -sulis, *c.*, an exile.
exterreō, 2, to frighten, to startle suddenly.
extollō, extulī, ēlatum, 3, to raise up, to exalt, to praise.

facinus, -oris, *n.*, bad deed, crime.
faciō, fēcī, factum, 3, to make, to perform.
factum, -ī, *n.*, deed.
falsus, a, -um, false.
famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger.
fateor, fassus, 2, *dep.*, to confess, to admit.
faveō, fāvī, fautum, 2, to favour, to help.
fax, facis, *f.*, torch.
fēnus (faenus), -oris, *n.*, interest of money.
ferō, tulī, lātum, ferre, to bear, to endure, to bring, to report, to lead.
ferox, -ōcis, courageous.
ferreus, -a, -um, iron.
fessus, -a, -um, weary, tired.
festus, -a, -um, festive.
fidēs, -ēi, *f.*, trust, faithfulness, word of honour, protection.
fīgō, fixi, fixum, 3, to fasten, to thrust.
fīlius, -iī, *m.*, son.
fingō, finxī, fictum, 3, to form, to imagine, to invent; **fingere vultum**, to put on a brave look.
flammō, 1, to blaze, to burn.
flāvus, -a, -um, golden, yellow.
flēbiliter, *adv.*, tearfully.
flectō, flexī, flexum, 3, to change, to turn round.
fleō, flēvī, flētum, 2, to weep.
floccus, -ī, *m.*, lock of wool; **non flocci facere**, to think nothing of.
fluctus, -ūs, *m.*, wave, billow.
foedus, -eris, *n.*, league, agreement.
forma, -ae, *f.*, form, beauty.
Formiānum, -ī, *n.*, an estate near Formiae.
fors, *f.*, luck.
fortis, -e, strong, brave.
fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fate, fortune.
frangō, frēgī, fractum, 3, to break, to dash to pieces.
frāter, -tris, *m.*, a brother.
fraus, fraudis, *f.*, deceit, injury, crime.
fremō, -uī, -itum, 3, to roar, to complain.
fretum, -ī, *n.*, strait, channel.
frūmentārius, -a, -um, relating to corn; **res frumentaria**, the supply of corn.
frustrā, *adv.*, in vain.
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight.
fugiō, fūgī, fugitum, 3, to flee, to run away.
fugō, 1, to put to flight.
fulciō, fulsī, fultum, 4, to prop up, to support.
fūmō, 1, to steam.
funda, -ae, *f.*, a sling.
fundus, -ī, *m.*, farm.
fungor, functus, 3, *dep.*, to perform.
furor, -ōris, *m.*, madness, rage
furtim, *adv.*, secretly.

galea, -ae, *f.*, helmet.
gaudeō, gāvīsus sum, 2, to rejoice.
gaudium, -iī, *n.*, joy.
gemitus, -ūs, *m.*, sigh, groan.
gena, -ae, *f.*, cheek, eyes.
genus, -eris, *n.*, descent, offspring, kind.
gerō, gessī, gestum, 3, to carry; **bellum gerere**, to wage war.

gignō, genuī, genitum, 3, to bear, to bring forth.
glaciēs, -ēī, *f.*, ice.
grandis, -e, great, large.
gravitās, -ātis, *f.*, weight, seriousness.

habeō, -ui, -itum, 2, to have, to hold, to maintain.
habilis, -e, easily managed, handy.
heu, *interj.*, oh ! alas !
hinc, *adv.*, hence.
hodiē, *adv.*, to-day.
homō, -inis, *m.*, human being, man.
honestās, -ātis, *f.*, respectability.
honestus, -a, -um, honourable.
honor, -ōris, m., honour.
hōra, -ae, *f.*, season, hour.
horreō, 2, to bristle, to stand on end.
horridus, -a, -um, rough, shuddering.
hortor, 1, *dep.*, to encourage
hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden.
hostis, -is, *c.*, enemy.
hūc, *adv.*, hither.
humerus, -ī, *m.*, shoulder.

ibi, *adv.*, there, at that place.
igitur, *adv.*, therefore, then.
ignārus, -a, -um, ignorant, inexperienced.
ignāvus, -a, -um, idle, cowardly.
ignis, -is, *m.*, fire.
ignōminia, -ae, *f.*, disgrace.
ignōtus, -a, -um, unknown.
illīc, *adv.*, there.
illūdō, -lūsī, -lūsum, 3 (in and ludo), to mock, to laugh at.
immānis, -e, enormous, fierce.
immātūrus, -a, -um, untimely.
immensus, -a, -um, immense.
immineō, 2, to overhang, to threaten.
immisceō, -miscuī, -mixtum or **-mistum**, 2 (in and misceo), to mingle with.
immoderātus, -a, -um, endless, unbridled.
impar, -paris, unequal, no match.
impediō, 4, to hinder, to prevent.
impellō, -pulī, -pulsum, 3 (in and pello), to push forward, to incite.
imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, commander-in-chief.
imperium, -iī, *n.*, mastery, command, the government.
imperō, 1, to order, to command, to rule over.
impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack.
impius, -a, -um, impious, wicked.
impōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3, to place in, to put upon.
in, *prep. with acc.*, into; *with abl.*, in.
incēdō, -cessī, -cessum, 3, to walk, to enter.
incendō, -cendī, -censum, 3, to set fire to, to burn.
incertum, -ī, *n.*, uncertainty.
incertus, -a, -um, doubtful.
incipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 (in and capio), to begin, to commence.
incitō, 1, to urge on; **se incitare**, to hasten, to rouse oneself.
incognitus, -a, -um, unknown.
incolumis, -e, uninjured, safe and sound.
increpō, -ui (-āvi), -itum (-ātum), 1, to upbraid, to rebuke.
incutiō, -cussī, -cussum, 3, to strike, to dash, to hurl.
indicō, 1, to declare, to reveal, to show.
induō, -duī, -dūtum, 3, to put on.
inedia, -ae, *f.*, fasting.
ineō, -iī (-īvī), -itum, -īre, to enter, to begin.
inermis, -e, unarmed.
iners, -ertis, inactive, sluggish.
infāmia, -ae, *f.*, dishonour, disgrace.

infectus, -a, -um, undone; **infectā re**, without having accomplished the business.
infensus, -a, um, hostile, enraged.
inferō, **intulī**, **illātum**, inferre, to bring in; **bellum inferre**, to make war.
infestus, -a, -um, hostile.
infimus, -a, -um, the lowest.
informis, -e, horrible, hideous.
ingenium, -ī, *n.*, temperament, talent.
ingerō, -gessī, -gestum, 3, to put upon, to aim.
ingredior, -gressus, 3 (**in** and **gradior**), to enter.
inīquitās, -ātis, *f.*, difficulty.
inīquus, -a, -um, unfavourable, unfair.
inops, -opis, poor, weak, helpless.
inquam, *def. vb.*, I say.
insāniō, 4, to rave, to be mad.
in-sequor, -secūtus, 3, *dep.*, to follow after, to pursue.
inserō, -sēvī, -situm, 3, to implant.
insidiae, -ārum, *f.*, ambush, trap.
insidiātor, -ōris, *m.*, lurker.
insigne, -is, *n.*, token; *pl.*, badges.
insignis, -e, remarkable, extraordinary.
insitus, -a, -um, *partic. of* **inserō**, -sevī, -situm, 3.
insomnis, -e, sleepless.
instabilis, -e, tottering, unsteady.
instituō, -uī, -ūtum, 3 (**in** and **statuo**), to draw up in order, to build, to determine.
institūtum, -ī, *n.*, custom, institution.
instruō, -struxī, -structum, 3, to furnish, to draw up.
insuper *adv.*, overhead, in addition.
integer, -gra, -grum, whole, unharmed.
intendō, -tendī, -tentum, 3, to stretch out, to move towards.
inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among, amid.
Interamnātēs, -ium, *m.*, the people of Interamna.
intercēdō, -cessī, -cessum, 3, to come between, to interpose.
interclūdō, -clūsī, -clūsum, 3 (**inter** and **claudo**), to block up, to cut off.
interiectus, -a, -um, thrown between; **anno interiecto**, after the interval of a year.
interimō, -ēmī, -emptum, 3, to kill.
intermittō, -misī, -missum, 3, to give up, to neglect.
interpōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3, to insert, to allow an interval to elapse.
interrogō, 1, to ask.
interrumpō, -rūpī, -ruptum, 3, to break asunder.
intervallum, -ī, *n.*, interval, distance.
intestīnus, -a, -um, inward, civil.
intueor, 2, to consider.
invādō, -vāsī, -vāsum, 3, to go in, to attack.
invalidus, -a, -um, weak, feeble.
inveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, to find, to meet with.
invidia, -ae, *f.*, jealousy, ill-will.
invītus, -a, -um, against one's will.
invius, -a, -um, impassable.
ipse, -a, -um, self; *with numerals*, just; of one's own accord.
īra, -ae, *f.*, wrath, anger.
irrumpō, -rūpī, -ruptum, 3 (**in** and **rumpo**), to rush in.
is, **ea**, **id**, he, she, it.
iste, **ista**, **istud**, *pron.*, this *or* that person.
ita, *adv.*, so, thus.
iter, **itineris**, *n.*, a journey, a march.
iterum, *adv.*, again.

iaceō, -cuī, -citūrus, 2, to lie, to be slain.
iaciō, iēcī, iactum, 3, to throw, to cast.
iam, *adv.*, now, already.
iūdicō, 1, to decide, to esteem.
iūrō, 1, to swear.
iūs, iūris, *n.*, law, justice.
iuvencus, -ī, *m.*, a young bullock.

lābor, lapsus, 3, *dep.*, to fall down, to slip.
labor, -ōris, *m.*, work, hardship.
lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear.
lacrimō, 1, to shed tears.
laetitia, -ae, *f.*, joy, delight.
laetus, -a, -um, joyful, glad.
langueō, -guī, 2, to be faint, to weary.
lapsō, 1, to totter.
largior, 4, *dep.*, to bestow liberally.
latus, -eris, *n.*, the side, flank.
laus, laudis, *f.*, praise; **laudes**, praiseworthy qualities.
lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, ambassador, lieutenant, deputy.
legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion.
legō, lēgī, lectum, 3, to pick, to coast along, to read.
lentus, -a, -um, pliant, slow.
lētum, -ī, *n.*, death.
levis, -e, light, insignificant, fickle.
libenter, *adv.*, willingly, with pleasure.
līber, -era, -erum, free.
Līber, -erī, *m.*, Bacchus.
līberālitās, -ātis, *f.*, liberality, generosity.
lībertās, -ātis, *f.*, freedom.
libet, -buit or **-bitum est**, 2, it pleases, it is agreeable.
libīdō (lubīdō), -inis, *f.* (**libet**), violent desire, longing, wantonness.
lībra, -ae, *f.*, pound.

licet, -cuit or **-citum est**, 2, it is allowed.
liquidus, -a, -um, flowing, clear.
lītera (littera), -ae, *f.*, letter of the alphabet; *pl.* **litterae**, written records, letter, epistle, literature.
locus, -ī, *m.*, a place.
loquor, locūtus, 3, *dep.*, to speak.
lucrum, -ī, *n.*, gain.
lūdibrium, -iī, *n.*, sport, jest.
lūgeō, luxī, luctum, 2, to lament.
lūmen, -inis, *n.*, light, the eye.

maereō, 2, to be sad, to be mournful.
magis, *adv.*, more.
magnificus, -a, -um, glorious, dignified.
magnus, -a, -um, large, great; **maiores**, ancestors.
māiestās, -ātis, *f.*, dignity, majesty.
mālō, māluī, malle, to choose rather, to prefer.
mālum, -ī, *n.*, an apple.
malus, -a, -um, bad.
mandātum, -ī, *n.*, order, message.
maneō, mansī, mansum, 2, to remain.
manifestus, -a, -um, clear, visible.
manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand.
Mars, Martis, *m.*, Mars, the god of war.
Massicus, -ī, *m.*, mountain in Campania famous for its wine.
māter, mātris, *f.*, a mother.
mātrimōnium, -iī, *n.*, marriage; **in matrimonium ducere**, to marry.
mātūrō, 1, to hasten.
mediocriter, *adv.*, slightly.
memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory, recollection.
mendācium, -iī, *n.*, lie, lying.
mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, reward, pay.

mercor, 1, *dep.*, to buy.
mereō, 2; **mereor**, 2, *dep.*, to earn, to be worthy of; **mereri de**, to deserve of.
meritum, -ī, *n.*, service, reward.
metus, -ūs, *m.*, fear, dread.
meus, -a, -um, *my, mine.*
mīles, -itis, *c.*, a soldier.
mīlitāris, -e, relating to a soldier or to war, military.
minax, -ācis, overhanging, threatening.
minuō, -uī, -ūtum, 3, to lessen, to diminish.
mīrus, -a, -um, wonderful.
misceō, miscuī, **mixtum** and (later) **mistum**, 2, to mix, to mingle.
misericordia, -ae, *f.*, pity, mercy.
mittō, mīsī, missum, 3, to send, to let go.
moderātiō, -ōnis, f., moderation, forbearance.
modicus, -a, -um, not very large, ordinary.
moenia, -ium, *n.*, walls.
mōlēs, -is, *f.*, a dam, mole.
molestus, -a, -um, annoying, irksome.
mollis, -e, soft, pleasant.
mōmentum, -ī, *n.*, moment of time, minute.
monstrō, 1, to show, to point out.
morior, mortuus sum, moritūrus, 3, *dep.*, to die.
moror, 1, *dep.*, to linger, to tarry.
mors, mortis, *f.*, death.
mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom; **mores**, *pl.*, character, morals.
moveō, mōvī, mōtum, 2, to move, to affect.
mox, *adv.*, soon.
mūcrō, -ōnis, *m.*, sword's point, sword.
mulier, -eris, *f.*, a woman.
multitūdō, inis, *f.*, multitude.
multus, -a, -um, much; *pl* many.
mundus, -ī, *m.*, world, universe.
mūnificē, *adv.*, bountifully.
mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification.
mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty, a gift.
mūsica, -ae, *f.*, music.

nam, *conj.*, for.
nascor, nātus, 3, *dep.*, to be born.
nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature.
nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor.
nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, vessel; **navis longa**, a man-of-war; **navis oneraria**, a transport.
necessārius, -a, -um, necessary; *subst. m. & f.*, relation.
necessitās, -ātis, *f.*, need, hardship.
necō, 1, to kill.
nefās, *n. indecl.*, a sin.
negligō, -lexī, -lectum, 3, to neglect.
negōtium, -ii, *n.*, business.
nemus, -oris, *n.*, wood, grove.
nēquāquam, *adv.*, by no means.
nēquitia, -ae, *f.*, wickedness.
nesciō, 4, not to know.
nihil, *contr.* **nīl**, *n. indecl.*, nothing.
nihilum, -ī, *n.*, nothing; **nihilominus**, nevertheless.
nōbilis, -e, well-known, celebrated, noble.
nōbilitās, -ātis, *f.*, fame, noble birth.
noceō, 2, to hurt, to harm.
nōlō, nōluī, nolle, to be unwilling, not to wish.
nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name.
nōn, *adv.*, not.
nonne, *interrog. adv.*, do . . . not?
nonnullus, -a, -um, some, several.
nōnus, -a, -um, ninth.
noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours.
novus, -a, -um, new, fresh, young.

nox, noctis, *f.*, night.
nūdō, 1, to strip.
nūdus, -a, -um, naked, unclothed.
nūmen, -inis, *n.*, divine will.
numerus, -ī, *m.*, full number.
nuntiō, 1, to announce.
nuntius, -iī, *m.*, messenger, message.
nūper, nūperrimē, *adv.*, lately.
nuptiālis, -e, relating to a marriage.

obeō, -īvī and **-iī, -itum, -īre,** to go against, to die, to perform.
oblinō, -lēvī, -litum, 3, to smear, to besmear, to pollute.
obruō, -ruī, -rutum, *fut. partic.* **-ruitūrus,** 3, to cover, to bury.
obsideō, -sēdī, -sessum, 2, to besiege.
obsignō, 1, to sign and seal.
obstinātē, *adv.*, resolutely, persistently.
obstō, -stitī, -stātum, 1, to hinder, to be inconsistent.
obversor, 1, *dep.*, to be before.
obvius, -a, -um, meeting.
occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, opportunity.
occidō, -cidī, -cāsum, 3 (**ob** and **cadō**), to fall, to set, to die.
occīdō, -cīdī, -cīsum, 3 (**ob** and **caedō**), to kill, to slay.
occumbō, -cubuī, -cubitum, 3 (**ob** and **cumbō**), to meet death, to die.
occupō, 1, to take possession of, to engage.
occurrō, -currī, -cursum, 3, to meet, to come up with.
offerō, obtulī, oblātum, offerre (**ob** and **ferō**), to present, to offer.
officium, -iī, *n.*, duty, allegiance.
omnis, -e, all.
opem, *f.*, power, help; *pl.* (**opēs, -um**), troops, riches.
opera, -ae, *f.*, exertion; **operam dare,** to work hard, to do one's best; *pl.*, workman.
opīmus, -a, -um, wealthy, splendid.
opīniō, -ōnis, *f.*, opinion.
oportet, -tuit, 2, *impers.*, it must be, it ought to be.
oppōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3 (**ob** and **pōno**), to place in the way.
opportūnus, -a, -um, suitable, exposed to.
opprimō, -pressī, -pressum, 3, to crush, to smother, to surprise.
optō, 1, to desire.
opus, -eris, *n.*, work, labour, entrenchment.
orbis, -is, *m.*, circle; **orbis terrarum,** the world.
orbus, -a, -um, bereft.
ordō, -inis, *m.*, rank, company, arrangement.
orior, ortus, *fut. part.* **oritūrus,** 4, *dep.*, to rise, to spring from, to begin.
ōrō, 1, to beg, to pray.
ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth, face
os, ossis, *n.*, bone.
ostendō, -tendī, -tentum, 3, to show, to display.
ostentō, 1, to display, to show off.
ovis, -is, *f.*, a sheep.

palam, *adv.*, openly.
palūdāmentum, -ī, *n.*, military cloak.
papāver, -eris, *n.*, poppy.
pār, paris, equal, like.
parcō, peperci and **parsī, parsum,** 3, to spare, to cease.
parens, -entis, *c.*, parent.
pāreō, 2, to obey.
pariō, peperī, partum, *fut. part.* **paritūrus,** 3, to get, to acquire.
parō, 1, to prepare, to make ready, to provide.

pars, partis, *f.*, part; **pars . . . pars,** some . . . others.
partim, *adv.*, partly.
parvus, -a, -um, little, small.
passim, *adv.*, here and there.
pateō, -uī, 2, to lie open, to be clear.
pater, -tris, *m.*, father.
patior, passus, 3, *dep.*, to suffer, to allow.
paucī, -ae, -a, few, little.
paulātim, *adv.*, gradually, little by little.
pavitō, 1, to tremble, to quake.
pavor, -ōris, *m.*, panic, excitement.
peccō, 1, to sin.
pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money.
pellō, pepulī, pulsum, 3, to strike, to drive out.
penna, -ae, *f.*, feather.
pensus, -a, -um, *part. adj.* (*lit.* weighed); **nihil pensi habere,** to be indifferent about.
per, *prep. with acc.*, through, during, on account of.
percellō, -culī, -culsum, 3, to overturn, to dispirit.
pereō, -iī and **-īvī, -itum, -īre,** to pass away, to perish, to die.
perfugiō, -fūgī, -fugitum, 3, to take refuge.
perīculum, -ī, *n.*, danger, peril.
permisceō, -miscuī, -mixtum, 2, to mix.
permoveō, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2, to excite, to persuade, to affect.
permulceō, -mulsī, -mulsum, 2, to stroke, to soothe.
perpetuus, -a, -um, continual; **in perpetuum,** for ever.
perscrībō, -scripsī, -scriptum, 3, to write fully.
persevērō, 1, to persist.
persolvō, -solvī, -solūtum, 3, to pay.
persōna, -ae, *f.*, character.
perturbō, 1, to disturb greatly.
perūrō, -ussī, -ustum, 3 (**per** and **ūro**), to burn up.
perveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, to arrive at, to reach.
petō, -īvī and **-iī, -ītum,** 3, to attack, to aim at, to make for, to ask, to become a candidate.
plācābilis, -e, easy to be appeased, forgiving.
placeō, 2, to please (*with dat.*).
placidē, *adv.*, quietly, calmly.
placidus, -a, -um, gentle.
plangor, -ōris, *m.*, beating of the breast, lamentation.
plebs, plēbis, *f.*, the people.
plērīque, -raeque, -raque, very many.
plūs, plūris, *n.*, more.
poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty.
Poenus, -a, -um, Carthaginian.
pōmum, -ī, *n.*, fruit.
pōnō, posuī, positum, 3, to put, to place, to lay, to erect.
pons, pontis, *m.*, bridge.
pontus, -ī, *m.*, the deep sea.
populus, -ī, *m.*, the people.
portō, 1, to bear, to carry.
poscō, poposcī, 3, to ask.
possum, potuī, posse (**potis** and **sum**), to be able, to have influence.
posteā, afterwards.
posterī, -ōrum, *m.*, posterity.
postulātum, -ī, *n.*, demand, request.
postulō, 1, to demand, to beg, to request.
potior, 4, *dep.*, to get, to get possession, *with abl. & gen.*
prae, *adv. & prep.*, before, in front.
praeceps, -cipitis, headlong, dangerous, steep.
praecipiō, -cepī, -ceptum, 3, to anticipate, to command.
praecipitō, 1, to cast down.
praecipuē, *adv.*, especially, chiefly.

praeda, -ae, *f.*, plunder, booty.
praeditus, -a, -um, endowed.
praemium, -ii, *n.*, reward.
praescrībō, -scripsī, -scriptum, 3, to prescribe.
praesens, -entis, present, at hand.
praesertim, *adv.*, especially, chiefly.
praesidium, -ii, *n.*, guard, patrol, protection, support.
praestō, -stitī, -stitum and -stātum, -stātūrus, 1, to surpass, to excel, to guarantee.
praetereā, further.
praetermittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3, to let pass.
prātum, -ī, *n.*, a meadow.
precēs, precum, *f.*, entreaties.
precor, 1, *dep.*, to beg, to entreat, to pray.
pretium, -ii, *n.*, value, price.
prīdiē, *adv.*, on the day before.
prīmō, *adv.*, at first.
prīmōrēs, -um, *m.*, the most illustrious.
princeps, -cipis, *c.*, chief.
prior, -us, former.
priscus, -a, -um, ancient.
prō, *prep. with abl.*, in front of, for, in behalf of.
probō, 1, to approve, to be satisfied with.
prōcēdō, -cessī, -cessum, 3, to go forth, to advance.
prōcidō, -cidī (pro and cado), 3, to fall forward.
procul, *adv.*, far away.
prōcurrō, -currī and -cucurrī, -cursum, 3, to rush forward, to charge.
prōficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, 3, to gain ground, to help.
profūsus, -a, -um, *p. adj.*, extravagant.
prōmissum, -ī, *n.*, a promise.
prōmittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3, to promise.
prōpōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3, to put forth, to display.
propter, *adv.*, near; *prep. with acc.*, on account of.
prōsequor, -cūtus, 3, *dep.*, to follow.
prōtinus, *adv.*, straightway.
prōvideō, -vīdī, -vīsum, 2, to foresee, to provide for.
prōvocō, 1, to challenge.
prūdens, -entis, foreseeing, wise, sagacious.
pūbēs, -eris, adult.
publicus, -a, -um, belonging to the people, public.
puella, -ae, *f.*, maiden.
puellāris, -e, girlish.
puer, -ī, *m.*, boy, lad.
pugnō, 1, to fight.
pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust.
purpureus, -a, -um, purple, bright.
putō, 1, to consider, to suppose.

quaerō, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 3, to seek, to investigate.
quam, how.
quandō, *adv. & conj.*, when.
quantus, -a, -um, how great.
quasi, *adv.*, as if.
quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what, that.
quia, *conj.*, because.
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever.
quidem, *conj.*, indeed, even.
quidquid, *adv.*, how much soever.
quiēs, -ētis, *f.*, rest, sleep.
quiescō, -ēvī, -ētum, 3, to rest, to keep quiet.
Quirītēs, -ium and -um, *m.*, citizens of Rome.
quisque, quaeque, quidque, each, everyone.
quisquis, quidquid, whoever.
quondam, *adv.*, once.
quoniam, *conj.*, since.

rapīna, -ae, *f.*, robbery, pillage.
rapiō, rapuī, **raptum**, 3, to snatch, to drag away.

rătiō, -ōnis, *f.*, reckoning, plan, manner, reason.
ratis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat.
ratus, -a, -um, *p.*, from **reor.**
Reātīnī, -ōrum, *m.*, the people of Reate.
recens, -entis, recent.
reciperō, 1, to regain.
recipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 (**re** and **capio**), to take back; **se recipere,** to withdraw.
rector, -ōris, *m.*, guide, leader, steersman, ruler.
rectus, -a, -um, *p. adj.*, right, correct.
recurrō, -currī, -cursum, 3, to run back.
reddō, -didī, -ditum, 3, to give back, to repay, to make.
redeō, -iī and **-īvī, -itum, -īre,** to go back, to return.
referō, -tulī, -lātum, -ferre, to carry back, to report.
rēgius, -a, -um, royal; **rēgia, -ae,** *f.*, palace.
relātus, -ūs, *m.*, narrative, recital.
rēligiō, -ōnis, *f.*, conscience; *pl.*, religious observances.
relinquō, -līquī, -lictum, 3, to leave behind, to abandon.
reliquus, -a, -um, remaining.
remaneō, -mansī, -mansum, 2, to remain behind.
rēmex, -migis, *m.*, a rower.
remissus, -a, -um, *p. adj.*, inactive.
remittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3, to send back, to throw back, to relax.
remōtus, -a, -um, distant, free from.
remulceō, -mulsi, -mulsum, 2, to stroke back.
renuntiō, 1, to bring back word, to refuse.
reor, ratus, 2, *dep.*, to think, to suppose.
repellō, repulī (reppulī), -pulsum, 3, to drive back.
repente, *adv.*, suddenly.
repentīnus, -a, -um, sudden.
repetō, -īvī and **-iī, -ītum,** 3, to strive after again, to ask back.
repōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3, to place back, to lay by.
repudiō, 1, to refuse, to disdain.
rēs, rēī, *f.*, thing, circumstance.
resistō, -stitī, 3, to remain.
respiciō, -spexī, -spectum, 3, to look back.
respondeō, -spondī, -sponsum, 2, to answer.
restō, -stitī, 1, to remain.
revertō, -vertī, -versum, to turn back (*trans.*); **revertor, -versus,** 3, *dep.*, to return.
revinciō, -vinxī, -vinctum, 4, to tie behind.
revocō, 1, to call back.
rīdeō, rīsī, rīsum, 2, to laugh.
rogō, 1, to ask, to enquire.
rogus, -ī, *m.*, funeral pile.
rostrum, -ī, *n.*, beak; **rostra,** tribune in the forum.
ruō, ruī, rutum, 3, to rush, to sink.
rusticus, -a, -um, rural, rustic.

sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred, holy.
saltō, 1, to dance.
salveō, 2, to be well, to greet.
sānē, *adv.*, really, indeed.
scālae, -ārum, *f.*, scaling-ladders.
scelerātus, -a, -um, polluted, infamous.
scienter, *adv.*, skilfully.
scientia, -ae, *f.*, knowledge.
scīlicet, *adv.* (contr. from **scīre licet**), undoubtedly, forsooth.
scindō, scidī, scissum, 3, to break, to divide.
sciō, 4, to know.
scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*, staff.
scrībō, scripsī, scriptum, 3, to write.
scriptūra, -ae, *f.*, writing.
Scythicus, -a, -um, Scythian.
sēcessiō, -ōnis, *f.*, a going on one side.

sector, 1, *dep.*, to follow eagerly.
secundus, -a, -um, second, successful.
secus, *adv.*, otherwise; **non (haud) secus**, just as.
sed, *conj.*, but, yet; in the phrases **non modo . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also.
sēdēs, **-is**, *f.*, seat, place of settlement, home.
segnis, **-e**, slothful, cowardly.
semper, *adv.*, always, at all times.
senectūs, **-ūtis**, *f.*, old age.
senex, **senis**, *m.*, old man.
sentiō, **sensī**, **sensum**, 4, to feel, to perceive.
sepeliō, **-pelīvī** and **-pelii**, **-pultum**, 4, to bury.
sequor, **secūtus**, 3, *dep.*, to follow.
sērus, -a, -um, late.
servīlis, **-e**, servile, of slaves.
servitium, **-iī**, *n.*, servitude.
servitūs, **-ūtis**, *f.*, slavery.
servō, 1, to keep, to save, to watch.
servus, **-ī**, *m.*, slave, servant.
seu = **sīve** (*q.v.*).
sī, *conj.*, if.
sīc, so, thus.
sīdus, **-eris**, *n.*, constellation.
signum, **-ī**, *n.*, standard, signal.
similis, **-e**, like, similar.
simplex, **-plicis**, simple.
simul, *adv.*, at the same time.
simulātor, **-ōris**, *m.*, an imitator.
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.
singulāris, **-e**, single.
singulī, **-ae**, **-a**, one each.
sinō, **sīvī**, **situm**, 3, to permit, to allow.
sīve . . . sīve, whether . . . or.
soleō, **solitus sum**, 2, to be accustomed, to be wont.
sōlitūdō, **-inis**, *f.*, loneliness.
sōlus, **-a**, **-um**, alone, only.
solvō, **solvī**, **solūtum**, 3, to loosen, to unbind, to relax.
sonitus, **-ūs**, *m.*, noise.
sonus, **-ī**, *m.*, noise, sound.
sors, **sortis**, *f.*, lot, fate, fortune, capital.
spatium, **-iī**, *n.*, distance.
speciōsus, **-a**, **-um**, splendid, plausible.
spectāculum, **-ī**, *n.*, sight, show.
spectō, 1, to look on.
spernō, **sprēvī**, **sprētum**, 3, to despise, to scorn.
spēs, **-ēī**, *f.*, hope.
splendor, **-ōris**, *m.*, brilliance, lustre.
spolia, **-ōrum**, *n. pl.*, arms taken from an enemy, booty.
spoliō, 1, to strip.
spondeō, **spopondī**, **sponsum**, 2, to pledge oneself; **sponsus**, **-ī**, *m.*, the betrothed.
statim, *adv.*, immediately, at once.
statuō, **-uī**, **-ūtum**, 3, to set up, to resolve.
sternō, **strāvī**, **strātum**, 3, to lay down, to throw down.
stirps, **stirpis**, *f.*, stem of a tree, family, offspring.
strēnuē, *adv.*, briskly, promptly.
strēnuus, -a, -um, prompt, active.
stringō, **strinxī**, **strictum**, 3, to strip off, to draw (a weapon).
struō, **strūxī**, **structum**, 3, to build, to contrive.
studium, **-iī**, *n.*, zeal, desire.
stultitia, **-ae**, *f.*, folly, stupidity
stupeō, **-uī**, 2, to be stunned, to be amazed.
stupor, **-ōris**, *m.*, insensibility.
sub, *prep. with abl. and acc.*; *with abl.*, under; *with acc.*, up to, (*of time*) about.
subdolus, -a, -um, crafty, cunning.
subiciō, **-iēcī**, **-iectum**, 3 (**sub** and **iacio**), to put under, to subdue.
subiectus, **-a**, **-um**, *p. adj.*, near, adjacent.
sublevō, 1, to lift up, to diminish.
subsidium, **-iī**, *n.*, reserves, help.

subsīdō, -sēdī and **-sīdī, -sessum**, 3, to sink down.
succēdō, -cessī, -cessum, 3, to mount, to advance, to follow, to succeed.
successus, -ūs, *m.*, approach.
succurrō, -currī, -cursum, 3 (**sub** and **curro**), to run under, to aid.
suffodiō, -fōdī, -fossum, 3 (**sub** and **fodio**), to undermine, to stab from below.
sum, fui, esse (*irr. vb.*), to be, to exist.
super, *adv.*, over.
superbia, -ae, *f.*, pride.
superbus, -a, -um, proud.
superior, -ōris, higher, former.
superō, 1, to conquer, to overcome, to surpass.
supersum, -fuī, -esse, to be left, to remain.
suprā, *adv.*, above.
suscipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3, to take up, to support, to undertake.
suspensus, -a, -um, uncertain, anxious.
suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.*, suspicion.
suspicor, 1, *dep.*, to suspect, to conjecture.
sustentō, 1, to support, to hold out.
sustineō, -tinuī, -tentum, 2, to restrain, to sustain.
suus, -a, -um, his, her (etc.) own.

taceō, 2, to be silent.
tacitus, -a, -um, silent.
tālis, -e, such.
tamen, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless, still.
tamquam, *adv.*, as if.
tandem, *adv.*, at length, at last; *in interr.*, pray.
tangō, tetigī, tactum, 3, to touch.
tardō, 1, to delay.
Tartarus, -ī, *m.*, *pl.* **Tartara, -ōrum**, *n.*, the infernal regions.
tegimentum, -ī, *n.*, covering.
tellūs, -ūris, *f.*, earth, land.
tēlum, -ī, *n.*, missile, weapon.
temerē, *adv.*, accidentally, rashly.
tempus, -oris, *n.*, time, the temple on the forehead.
tentō, 1, to try, to attack, to tempt.
tergum, -ī, *n.*, back.
terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land.
testāmentum, -ī, *n.*, will.
tībia, -ae, *f.*, pipe, flute.
tollō, sustulī, sublātum, 3, to raise, to elevate.
torpeō, 2, to be stiff, to be torpid.
torquēs, -is, *m.*, collar, necklace.
totiēs, *adv.*, so many times.
trādō, -didī, -ditum, 3, to give up to hand over.
trahō, traxī, tractum, 3, to draw.
tranquillus, -a, -um, tranquil, calm.
transeō, -iī, -itum, -īre, to go over to, to pass through.
transfīgō, -fixī, -fixum, 3, to pierce.
trepidātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, anxiety, alarm.
trepidus, -a, -um, anxious, alarmed.
tribūnal, -ālis, *n.*, raised platform (for magistrates).
tribūnicius, -a, -um, of tribunes.
tribuō, -uī, -ūtum, 3, to bestow, to concede.
trigeminus, -a, -um, triple, threefold.
tristis, -e, sad, melancholy, gloomy.
trucīdō, 1, to massacre.
tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet.
tueor, tuitus and **tūtus**, 2, *dep.*, to look at, to protect, to guard.
tum, *adv.*, thereupon.
tumidus, -a, -um, swollen, boiling.
tumultus, -ūs, *m.*, noise, confusion, insurrection.

tumulus, -ī, *m.*, mound.
tunc, *adv.*, then.
turba, -ae, *f.*, crowd.
turbidus, -a, -um, disquieted, excited.
turbō, 1, to disturb.
turbō, -inis, *m.*, eddy, whirlwind.
turpis, -e, disgraceful, dishonourable.
tuus, -a -um, thy, thine.

ūber, -eris, rich, abounding in.
ubi, *where, when.*
ultor, -ōris, *m.*, avenger.
ultrō, *adv.*, of one's own accord.
umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever.
unde, *adv.*, whence.
ūniversus, -a, -um, combined, all together.
urbs, -bis, *f.*, town, city.
urgeō, ursī, 2, to drive, to beset, to hem in, to ply hard.
ūrō, ussī, ustum, 3, to burn.
usque, *adv.*, as far as.
ūsus, -ūs, *m.*, practice, experience.
ut, *adv. & conj.*, when, as, that, so that, etc.
uter, utra, utrum, which of two.
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each of two.*
uterus, -ī, *m.*, belly.
utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides.
utrum, *adv.*, whether.
uxor, -ōris, *f.*, a wife.

vallum, -ī, *n.*, mound, stockade.
varius, -a, -um, changeable, many-sided.
vastus, -a, -um, vast, horrible.
velut, just as.
vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, wild-beast hunt.
venerābundus, -a, -um, reverent, respectful.
venia, -ae, *f.*, pardon, forgiveness.
veniō, venī, ventum, 4, to come.
ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind.
verber, -eris, *n.*, blow.
verbōsus, -a, -um, wordy.
vereor, 2, *dep.*, to fear, to revere.
vērō, *adv.*, in truth, in fact.
versō, 1, to turn about often, to plan out.
vertō, vertī, versum, 3, to turn, to rout.
vestīgium, -iī, *n.*, foot-mark.
veterānus, -a, -um, old.
vexillum, -ī, *n.*, standard.
videō, vīdī, vīsum, 2, to see.
vigeō, 2, to be vigorous, to thrive.
vigil, -ilis, wakeful, watchful.
vigilia, -ae, *f.*, wakefulness, watch.
vinciō, vinxī, vinctum, 4, to bind.
vincō, vīcī, victum, 3, to conquer, to master.
vindicta, -ae, *f.*, vengeance, punishment.
violentus, -a, -um, furious, impetuous.
virgō, -inis, *f.*, maiden.
viridis, -e, green, young.
virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*, virtue, goodness, bravery.
vīs, *pl.* **vīres**, -ium, *f.*, force, strength.
viscera, -um, *n.*, entrails.
vīsō, -sī, -sum, 3, to look at.
vītō, 1, to avoid, to shun.
vivō, vixī, victum, 3, to live.
vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living.
volō, voluī, velle, to be willing, to wish.
volō, 1, to fly.
volucer, volucris, volucre, flying.
volucris, -is, *f.*, a bird.
voluntās, -ātis, *f.*, wish.
volvō, volvī, volūtum, 3, to roll.
vōmer, -eris, *m.*, a ploughshare.
vomō, -uī, -itum, 3, to vomit.
vox, vōcis, *f.*, voice.
vulpēs, -is, *f.*, fox.
vultus, -ūs, *m.*, countenance, look.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

abandon, dēlinquō, -līquī, -lictum, 3; dēsistō, -stitī, -stitum, 3; ōmittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3.
abdicate, abdicō, 1.
able, to be, possum, potuī, posse; valeō, 2.
abode, *see* **house**.
about, *adv.*, circā; (*of number*) ferē, circiter; *prep.*, circā, circum; dē *with abl.* (*concerning*).
above, *adv.*, suprā; *prep.*, super, *with acc. or abl.*
absent, absens, -ntis.
abundance, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
accept, accipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3.
accident, cāsus, -ūs, ēventus, -ūs, *m.*
accompany, sē adiungere, comitor, 1, *dep.*
accomplish, conficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, 3; perficiō, -fēci, -fectum, 3.
accord, of one's . . . own, sponte (*abl. with* meā, etc.), ultrō.
accordance, in — with, ex.
account, on — of, propter.
accusation, crīmen, -inis, *n.*
accuse, accūsō, 1.
accustomed, be, soleō, solitus, 2.
acquit, absolvō, -solvī, -solūtum, 3.
across, trans, per.
act, *v.*, agō, ēgī, actum, 3; faciō, fēcī, factum, 3.
act, *n.*, factum, -ī, *n.*
admire, mīror, 1, *dep.*
admit, admittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3; confiteor, confessus, 2, *dep.*
adopt, ineō, -iī, -itum, -īre; capiō, cēpī, captum, 3 (*with* consilium).
advance, prōgredior, prōgressus, 3, *dep.*
advance-guard, prīmum agmen, -inis, *n.*
advantage, commodum, -ī, *n.*, bonum, -ī, *n.*
advantageous, ūtilis, -e; **be —**, ūsuī esse.
advise, consilium dō, dedī, datum, 1; suādeō, suāsī, suāsum, 2.
affect, (com)moveō, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2.
afflict, afficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, 3; vexō, 1.
afraid, *adj.*, timidus, -a, -um, pavidus, -a, -um, trepidus, -a, -um; *vb.*, **to be —**, timeō, 2; metuō, metuī, 3.
after, *prep.*, post; *conj.*, postquam; *adv.*, **afterwards**, post, posteā, deinde.
again, iterum, rursus.
against, adversus, contrā.
age, aetās, -ātis, *f.*
ago, abhinc.
agree, consentiō, -sensī, -sensum, 4.
agriculture, agrī cultūra, -ae, *f.*
aid, *n.*, auxilium, -iī, *n.*

aid, *vb.*, auxilior, 1, *dep.*, adiuvō, -iūvī, -iūtum, 1.
all, omnis, -e, totus, -a, -um; **not at —**, minimē.
allegiance, fidēs, -ēī, *f.*
alliance, foedus, -eris, *n.*
allot, sortior, 4.
allow, sinō, sīvī, sītum, 3; patior, passus, 3, *dep.*, permittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3.
ally, socius, -iī, *m.*
almost, ferē, fermē.
alone, sōlus, -a, -um, ūnus, -a, -um.
already, iam, iamprīdem.
also, etiam, quoque.
altar, āra, -ae, *f.*
although, tametsī, quamquam, etsī, licet, quamvīs.
altogether, omnīnō.
always, semper.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
ambition, laudis studium (-ī, *n.*), cupīdō (-inis, *f.*) honōris.
ambush, insidiae, -ārum, *f.*
among, inter.
ancestors, māiōrēs, -um, *m.*
anchor, ancora, -ae, *f.*; **lie at —**, consistō (-stitī, 3) in ancorīs.
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um.
and, et, que (*enclit.*).
anger, īra, īrae, *f.*
angry, īrātus, -a, -um; **to be —**, irascor, īrātus, 3, *dep.*
animal, animal, -ālis, *n.*; **wild —**, fera, -ae, *f.*
annoy, vexō, 1.
another, alius, -a, -um.
answer, respondeō, -spondī, -sponsum, 2.
any, cp. § 210.
appease, plācō, 1.
apple, mālum, -ī, *n.*
appoint, constituō, -stituī, -stitutum, 3; diem dīcō, dixī, dictum, 3.
approach, *vb.*, appropinquō, 1; *n.*, adventus, -ūs, aditus, -ūs, *m.*
approve, (com)probō, 1.
argue, disputō, 1.
arise, *see* **rise.**
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n.*; tēla, -ōrum, *n.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, m.
around, circā, circum.
arouse, (ē somnō) excitō, 1.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive, adveniō, perveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, 4.
art, ars, artis, *f.*
artisan, opifex, -icis, *m.*
as, — **quickly as possible**, quam celerrimē; — **far as I know**, quod sciam; *of time*, ubi, ut; — **often —**, quotiēs; **as if**, tamquam; **as yet**, adhūc.
be ashamed, pudet (mē alicūius rēī).
ashes, cinis, -eris, *m.*
ask, (*tr.*) rogō, 1; quaerō, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 3; scisciscitor, 1, *dep.*; ōrō, 1; petō, petīvī *and* petiī, petītum, 3; poscō, popōscī, 3; flagitō, 1.
assemble, cōgō, -ēgī, -actum, 3; convocō, 1.
assist, auxilium ferō (*dep.*), tulī, lātum, ferre; subveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, 4; *see* **help.**
at, *of place*, ad, apud; *of time*, *during*, inter.
attack, *n.*, impetus, -ūs, *m.*; **attack**, *vb.*, aggredior, aggressus, 3, *dep.*; adorior, adortus, 4, *dep.*
attempt, see **try.**
attract, alliciō, -lexī, -lectum, 3.
authority, auctoritās, -ātis, *f.*; dignitās, -ātis, f.
avenge, vindicō, 1; ulciscor, ultus, 3, *dep.*
avoid, vītō, 1.

back, tergum, -ī, *n.*
bad, malus, -a, -um; prāvus, -a, -um.

[illegible], sarcinae, -ārum, *f.*; impedimenta, -ōrum, *n.*

banish, aquā et ignī interdīcō, -dixī, -dictum, 3 (*with the dative*); (ex)pellō, -pulī, -pulsum, 3.

bank, rīpa, -ae, *f.*

banquet, epulae, -ārum, *f.*

barbarian, barbarus, -a, -um.

bath, balneum, -ī, *n.*; *pl.*, balneae, -ārum, *f.*

bathe, lavor, 1, *dep.*

battle, proelium, -iī, *n.*; certāmen, -inis, *n.*

beat, caedō, cecīdī, caesum, 3; verberō, 1; **be beaten**, vāpulō, 1.

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

because, quod, quia; *see* §§ 277, 278.

become, fiō, factus, fierī.

bee, apis, -is, *f.*

before, *adv.*, prius, ante; *prep.*, (*in presence of*) cōram, *with abl.*, (*in front of*) ante, *with accus.*; *conj.*, antequam, priusquam.

beg, ōrō, 1; rogō, 1.

begin, incipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 (*with infin.*); ordior, orsus, 4, *dep.* (*with acc.*); **began**, coepī, -isse.

beginning, initium, -iī, *n.*; prīmus, -a, -um (see § 342).

behind, *adv.*, ā tergō; *prep.*, post, *with acc.*

believe, crēdō, crēdidī, crēditum, 3.

below, *adv.*, infrā; *prep.*, sub.

benefit, beneficium, -iī, *n.*

besiege, obsideō, -sēdī, -sessum, 2.

betray, prōdō, -didī, -ditum, 3.

better, melior, -us.

between, inter, *with acc.*

beyond, *adv.*, ultrā; *prep.*, trans.

bid, *see* **command**.

bind, vinciō, vinxī, vinctum, 4.

bird, avis, -is, *f.*, āles, -itis, *m.* & *f.*

bite, mordeō, momordī, morsum, 2.

black, āter, -tra, -trum, niger, -gra, -grum.

blame, reprehendō, -prehendī, -prehensum, 3; culpō, 1.

blockade, obsideō, -sēdī, -sessum, 2.

blood, sanguis, -inis, *m.*

bloody, cruentus, -a, -um.

blue, caeruleus, -a, -um.

boast, glōrior, 1, *dep.*

body, corpus, -oris, *n.*

bold, audax, -ācis (*adv.* audacter).

boldness, audācia, -ae, *f.*

book, liber, -brī, *m.*

born, **be**, nascor, nātus, 3, *dep.*

boy, puer, -rī, *m.*

branch, rāmus, -ī, *m.*

brave, fortis, -e, ācer, -cris, -cre.

bread, pānis, -is, *m.*

break, frangō, frēgī, fractum, 3; (*treaty, etc.*) violō, 1; — **up a camp**, castra moveō, mōvī, mōtum, 2; — **a promise**, fidem fallō, fefellī, falsum, 3.

breathe, spīrō, 1.

bridge, pons, pontis, *m.*

bring, afferō, attulī, allātum, afferre; — **back**, referō, rettulī, relātum, referre; reportō, 1.

broad, lātus, -a, -um.

brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*

build, aedificō, 1; construō, -struxī, -structum, 3.

burn, *tr.*, incendō, -cendī, -censum, 3; combūrō, -ussī, -ustum, 3.

bury, sepeliō, -pelīvī *or* -pelīī, -pultum, 4.

but, *autem, sed.

buy, emō, ēmī, emptum, 3.

by, *prep.*, (*of place*) ad; (*of time*) *use abl.*; (*of agent*) ā, ab; — **chance**, forte; — **reason of**, propter *with acc.*

call, clāmō, 1 ; vocō, 1 ; ēvocō, 1.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
candidate, candidātus, -ī, *m.*
captive, captus, -ī, *m.*, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
care, *n.*, cūra, -ae, *f.*, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*, sollicitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
care for, cūrō, 1 ; colō, coluī, cultum, 3.
carry, portō, 1 ; ferō, tulī, lātum, ferre.
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*, auctor, -ōris, *c.*
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, equitēs, -um, *m.*
certain, certus, -a, -um ; **know for certain**, prō explōrātō habeō, 2.
change, *tr.*, mūtō, 1.
chariot, currus, -ūs, *m.*
children, līberī, -ōrum, *m.*
citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *c.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
clear, manifestus, -a, -um ; **it is —**, appāret, 2.
clearly, plānē.
climb, ascendō, -scendī, -scensum, 3.
cloud, nūbēs, -is, *f.*
cold, frīgidus, -a, -um.
colleague, collēga, -ae, *m.*
collect, *tr.*, conferō, contulī, collātum, conferre ; *intr.*, conveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, 4.
colour, color, -ōris, *m.*
come, veniō, vēnī, ventum, 4 ; **— often**, ventitō, 1.
command, *n.*, imperium, -ī, *n.*, iussum, -ī, *n.*, mandātum, -ī, *n.*
command, *vb.*, iubeō, iussī, iussum, 2 ; imperō, 1.
common, commūnis, -e ; **— sense**, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*
commonwealth, rēs publica, rēī publicae, *f.*
companion, comes, -itis, *c.*
compare, comparō, 1 ; compōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3 ; conferō, -tulī, -lātum, ferre.
compel, cōgō, -ēgī, -actum, 3.
complain, queror, questus, 3, *dep.*
concede, concēdō, -cessī, -cessum, 3.
condemn, damnō, 1.
condition, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
conduct, mōrēs, -um, *m.*
confess, confiteor, -fessus, 2, *dep.*
confidence, fidēs, -ēī, *f.*, fīdūcia, -ae, *f.*
congratulate, grātulor, 1, *dep.*
connect, coniungō, -iunxī, -iunctum, 3.
conquer, vincō, vīcī, victum, 3 ; dēvincō, -vīcī, -victum, 3 ; superō, 1.
consent, *see* **agree.**
consider, dūcō, duxī, ductum, 3.
considerable, aliquantum, *with genit.*
consist, constō, -stitī, constātum, 1.
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
consul, consul, -ulis, *m.*
continual, perpetuus, -a, -um.
contrary, adversus, -a, -um, contrārius, -a, -um ; **— to**, contrā, *with acc.*
convenient, idōneus, -a, -um.
copper, aes, aeris, *n.*
corn, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
corpse, cadāver, -eris, *n.*
cost, *see* **buy** (*use pass.*).
country, (*opposed to town*) rūs, rūris, *n.* ; (*fatherland*) patria, -ae, *f.* ; (*land*) terra, -ae, *f.*
course, cursus, -ūs, *m.*
court, iūdicium, -iī, *n.*
cover, tegō, texī, tectum, 3 ; operiō, operuī, opertum, 4.
crime, facinus, -oris, *n.* ; scelus, -eris, *n.*
cross, transeō, -īvī *or* -iī, -itum, -īre.

crowd, turba, -ae, *f.*; multitūdō, -inis, *f.*
crown, corōna, -ae, *f.*
cruel, crūdēlis, -e, atrox, -ōcis.
cruelty, crūdēlitās, -ātis, *f.*
cry, *n.*, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
cry, *v.*, exclāmō, 1; clāmitō, 1.
cultivate, colō, coluī, cultum, 3.
cunning, callidus, -a, -um, perītus, -a, -um.
custom, consuētūdō, -inis, *f.*, mōs, mōris, *m.*, institūtum, -ī, *n.*
cut, secō, -uī, sectum, 1; — **to pieces**, trucīdō, 1.

danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um; a — **condition**, rēs dubiae, *f. pl.*
dawn, lux, lūcis, *f.*, aurōra, -ae, *f.*
day, diēs, -ēī, *c.* (*m. in pl.*); **before** —, ante lūcem; **at daybreak**, prīmā lūce.
dead, mortuus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
debt, nōmen, -inis, *n.*, aes aliēnum, aeris aliēnī, *n.*
deceive, fallō, fefellī, falsum, 3.
declare, profiteor, professus, 2, *dep.*
decree, *n.*, dēcrētum, -ī, *n.*, senātūs consultum, -ī, *n.*
decree, *vb.*, dēcernō, -crēvī, -crētum, 3.
deed, factum, -ī, *n.*
deep, altus, -a, -um, profundus, -a, -um.
defeat, *n.*, clādēs, -is, *f.*
defeat, *vb.*, *see* **conquer.**
defend, dēfendō, -fendī, -fensum, 3; tueor, tuitus *and* tūtus, 2, *dep.*
delay, moror, 1, *dep.*
deliberate, consulō, consuluī, consultum, 3; consilium ineō (-īvī *or* -iī, -itum, -īre) *or* capiō (cēpī, captum, 3).
delight, voluptās, -ātis, *f.*
deliver, *see* **speak.**
demand, *see* **ask.**
depart, abeō, -īvī *or* -iī, -itum, -īre; excedō, -cessī, -cessum, 3; discēdō, -cessī, -cessum, 3.
deprive, adimō, -ēmī, -emptum, 3.
descend, descendō, -scendī, -scensum, 3.
describe, expōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3.
deserve, mereor, 2, *dep.*; — **well of**, bene mereor dē (*with abl.*).
desire, *n.*, cupīditās, -ātis, *f.*
desire, *vb.*, cupiō, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītum, 3.
despair, despērō, 1.
despise, contemnō, -tempsī, -temptum, 3; spernō, sprēvī, sprētum, 3.
destroy, perdō, -didī, -ditum, 3; ēvertō, -vertī, -versum, 3; dēleō, dēlēvī, dēlētum, 2; exstinguō, -stinxī, -stinctum, 3.
determine, dēcernō, -crēvī, -crētum, 3; constituō, -stituī, -stitūtum, 3.
dictator, dictātor, -ōris, *m.*
die, morior, mortuus, 3, *dep.*; dēcēdō, -cessī, -cessum, 3; obeō, -īvī *or* -iī, -īre.
differ from, discrepō (1) cum, *with abl.*
difficult, difficilis, -e.
dine, cēnō, 1.
disaster, clādēs, -is, *f.*, cāsus, -ūs, *m.*
discuss, disputō, 1.
disembark, *tr.*, expōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3; *intr.*, (ē nāve) ēgredior, ēgressus, 3, *dep.*
disgrace, dēdecus, -oris, *n.*
disgraceful, turpis, -e.
dishonest, malus, -a, -um, improbus, -a, -um.
disloyal, perfidus, -a, -um.
dismiss, dīmittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3.

display, prōpōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3.
displease, displiceō, 2 (*with dat.*).
disposition, ingenium, -ī, *n.*
distant, be, distō, —, —, 1; absum, -fuī, -esse.
distinguish, dīiūdicō, 1.
distinguished, insignis, -e, clārus, -a, -um.
distribute, distribuō, -tribuī, -tribūtum, 3; partior, 4.
do, faciō, fēcī, factum, 3; agō, ēgī, actum, 3.
dog, canis, -is, *c.*
doorpost, postis, -is, *m.*
doubt, *n.*, dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*; **without —,** sine dubiō, haud dubiē.
doubt, *vb.*, dubitō, 1.
down from, dē, *with abl.*
draw, (*sword*) stringō, strinxī, strictum, 3; (*chariot*) vehō, vexī, vectum, 3; (*water*) hauriō, hausī, haustum, 4; trahō, traxī, tractum, 3.
dream, somnium, -iī, *n.*
drink, bibō, bibī, bibitum, 3.
drive, agō, ēgī, actum, 3; pellō, pepulī, pulsum, 3.
dry, siccus, -a, -um, āridus, -a, -um.
dust, pulvis, -eris, *m.*
dusty, pulverulentus, -a, -um.
duty, officium, -iī, *n.*
dwell in, habitō, 1; incolō, -coluī, -cultum, 3.

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque; (*of two*) uterque, utraque, utrumque; **on — side,** utrimque; **— other,** inter sē.
eager, cupidus, -a, -um, ācer, -cris, -cre.
eagle, aquila, -ae, *f.*
early, māne, prīmā lūce.
earth, (*soil*) terra, -ae, *f.*, solum, -ī, *n.*; (*the world*) orbis (-is, *m.*) terrārum, tellūs, -ūris, *f.*, terra, -ae, *f.*
east, oriens, -entis, *m.*
easy, facilis, -e.
eat, edō, ēdī, ēsum, 3; vescor, —, 3, *dep.* (*with abl*).
effect, *n.*, ēventus, -ūs, *m.*
effect, *vb.*, efficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, 3.
egg, ōvum, -ī, *n.*
either, *pron.*, utervīs, uterlibet (utra-, utrum-, -vīs *or* -libet); **either . . . or,** aut . . . aut, vel . . . vel.
election, comitia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
eloquence, dīcendī facultās, -ātis, *f.*, ēloquentia, -ae, *f.*
eloquent, ēloquens, -entis, dīcendī perītus, -a, -um.
embark, *tr.*, impōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3; *intr.*, nāvem conscendō, -scendī, -scensum, 3.
embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
employ, ūtor, ūsus, 3, *dep.* (*with abl.*); ūsurpō, 1.
encourage, cohortor, 1, *dep.*
end, fīnis, -is, *m.*
endeavour, *see* **try.**
endure, ferō, tulī, lātum, ferre; sustineō, -tinuī, -tentum, 2; tolerō, 1; patior, passus, 3, *dep.*
enemy, hostis, -is, *m.*; inimīcus, -ī, *m.*
enjoy, fruor, fructus, 3, *dep.* (*with abl.*); ūtor, ūsus, 3, *dep.* (*with abl.*).
enough, satis.
enter, ineō, -īvī *or* -iī, -itum, -īre; ingredior, -gressus, 3, *dep.*
enterprise, inceptum, -ī, *n.*, cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*
enthusiasm, (animī) ardor, -ōris, *m.*
envy, *n.*, invidia, -ae, *f.*
envy, *vb.*, invideō, -vīdī, -vīsum, 2.
equal, pār, paris; (*equal in age*) aequālis, -e.

equanimity, constantia, -ae, *f.* ; **with —**, aequō animō.
err, errō, 1.
escape, effugiō, -fūgī, -fugitum, 3 ; ēvādō, -vāsī, -vāsum, 3.
especially, praesertim, praecipuē.
esteem, opīniō, -ōnis, *f.*
even, etiam, vel ; **not —**, nē . . . quidem.
evening, vesper, -eris, *m.*, vespera, -ae, *f.*
event, rēs, rēī, *f.*
ever, semper, umquam, quandō.
every, quisque, quaeque, quidque, omnis, -e ; **everywhere**, ubīque.
excel, praestō, -stitī, -stitum *and* -stātum, 1.
except, praeter (*with acc.*), nisi (*after a neg.*).
exile, exsilium, -iī, *n.* ; **be in —**, exsulō, 1.
exist, exsistō, -stitī, -stitum, 3 ; sum, fuī, esse.
expect, spērō, 1.
experience, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
experienced, perītus, -a, -um.
explain, expōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3 ; interpretor, 1, *dep.*
extend, *tr.*, explicō, -plicuī, -plicitum, 1 ; *intr.*, pateō, 2.
extravagance, luxus, -ūs, *m.*
eye, oculus, -ī, *m.*

face, vultus, -ūs, *m.*, ōs, ōris, *n.*
faithless, perfidus, -a, -um.
fall, *n.*, cāsus, -ūs, *m.*, lapsus, -ūs, *m.*
fall, *vb.*, cadō, cecidī, cāsum, 3 ; dēlābor, dēlapsus, 3, *dep.*
false, falsus, -a, -um, mendax, -ācis.
fame, laus, laudis, *f.*, glōria, -ae, *f.*
family, familia, -ae, *f.*, gens, gentis, *f.*
far, procul, longē.
farm, ager, agrī, *m.*, praedium, -iī, *n.*
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
fasten, *see* **bind.**
fate, fātum, -ī, *n.*, sors, sortis, *f.*
father, pater, -tris, *m.*, parens, -entis, *m.*
favour, *n.*, grātia, -ae, *f.*
favour, *vb.*, faveō, fāvī, fautum, 2.
fear, *n.*, metus, -ūs, *m.*, timor, -ōris, *m.*, pavor, -ōris, *m.*
fear, *vb.*, metuō, metuī, 3 ; timeō, 2 ; vereor, 2.
fearful, dirus, -a, -um, terribilis, -e.
fearless, impavidus, -a, -um, intrepidus, -a, -um.
feel, sentiō, sensī, sensum, 4 ; percipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 ; intellegō, -lexī, -lectum, 3.
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fierce, ferox, -ōcis, saevus, -a, -um.
fierceness, ferōcia, -ae, *f.*
fight, *n.*, pugna, -ae, *f.*
fight, *vb.*, pugnō, 1 ; dīmicō, 1.
fill, compleō, -plēvī, -plētum, 2.
finally, dēnique, postrēmō.
find, inveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, 4 ; reperiō, repperī, repertum, 4.
fire, ignis, -is, *m.*
fish, *n.*, piscis, -is, *m.*
fish, *vb.*, piscor, 1, *dep.*
fit, aptus, -a, -um, idōneus, -a, -um.
fix, fīgō, fixī, fixum, 3.
flame, flamma, -ae, *f.*
flank, latus, -eris, *n.*
flatter, assentor, 1 (*with dat.*).
flee, fugiō, fūgī, fugitum, 3 ; confugiō (-fugiō, 3) ; fugam petō, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītum, 3 ; terga vertō, vertī, versum, 3.
fleet, classis, -is, *f.*
flight, fuga, -ae, *f.* ; **put to —**, fugō, 1.
flourish, flōreō, 2.

follow, sequor, secūtus, 3, *dep.*; insequor, -secūtus, 3, *dep.*; succēdō, successī, successum, 3.
food, cibus, -ī, *m.*
foolish, stultus, -a, -um, ineptus, -a, -um.
for, prō *with abl.* (*for the sake of*); *or use dat.*
forbid, vetō, vetuī, vetitum, 1; interdīcō, -dixī, -dictum, 3.
force, *n.*, vīs, *acc.* vim, *abl.* vī, *f.*
force, *vb.*, *see* **compel.**
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*
forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
forget, oblīviscor, -lītus, 3, *dep.* (*with gen.*).
forgive, ignoscō, -nōvī, -nōtum, 3 (*with dat.*); condonō, 1.
fortify, mūniō, 4.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
free, līber, -era, -erum.
freedom, libertās, -ātis, *f.*
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
from, ā, ab, ē, ex (*with abl.*).
fruit, fructus, -ūs, *m.*, pōmum, -ī, *n.*
fruitless, irritus, -a, -um.
fruitlessly, rē infectā.
full, plēnus, -a, -um.
funeral, fūnus, -eris, *n.*
furnish, instruō, -struxī, -structum, 3; ornō, 1; praebeō, 2.
further, ulterior, -us.

gain, consequor, -secūtus, 3, *dep.*; — **possession of**, potior, 4, *dep.* (*with abl.*); — over, conciliō, 1.
game, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
garden, hortus, -ī, *m.*
garrison, praesidium, -iī, *n.*
gate, iānua, -ae, *f.*, porta, -ae, *f.*
gather, legō, lēgī, lectum, 3; carpō, carpsī, carptum, 3.
general, *adj.*, commūnis, -e.
general, *n.*, dux, ducis, *m.*, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
get, adipiscor, adeptus, 3, *dep.*; nanciscor, nactus, 3, *dep.*; comparō, 1.
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
give, dō, dedī, datum, 1.
glad, laetus, -a, -um; **I am** —, gaudeō, gāvīsus, 2.
glide, lābor, lapsus, 3, *dep.*
glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*, honor, -ōris, *m.*
go, eō, īvī, itum, īre; — **out**, exeō, -īvī *or* -iī, -itum, -īre; ēgredior, ēgressus, 3, *dep.*
god, deus, -eī, *m.*
goddess, dea, -ae, *f.*
gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*
good, bonus, -a, -um; **goods**, bona, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
govern, temperō, 1; regō, 3.
gradually, gradātim.
grant, concēdō, -cessī, -cessum, 3.
grass, herba, -ae, *f.*
great, magnus, -a, -um; (*illustrious*) clārus, -a, -um, illustris, -e.
greatly, magnopere, valdē.
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um.
green, viridis, -e.
grief, aegritūdō, -inis, *f.*, sollicitūdō, -inis, *f.*, luctus, -ūs, *m.*
grieve, doleō, 2; piget, 2 (*see* § 94).
ground, humus, -ī, *f.*, solum, -ī, *n.*, terra, -ae, *f.*
grow, crescō, crēvī, crētum, 3.
guard, custōdiō, 4.
guide, dux, ducis, *m.*
guile, dolus, -ī, *m.*
guilty, noxius, -a, -um.

habit, consuētūdō, -inis, *f.*, mōs, mōris, *m.*
half, dīmidium, -iī, *n.*
halt, consistō, -stitī, -stitum, 3.
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*; **be at** —, adsum, -fuī, -esse.

happens, it, accidit, 3.
happiness, *say* "**happy life**" *or* "**to live happily.**"
happy, fēlix, -īcis, beātus, -a, -um.
harbour, portus, -ūs, *m.*
hard, dūrus, -a, -um, arduus, -a, -um.
hardly, vix, aegrē.
haste, trepidātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
hasten, contendō, -tendī, -tentum, 3; festīnō, 1; properō, 1.
hate, *n.*, odium, -ī, *n.*
hate, *vb.*, ōdī, ōdisse; **to be hated,** odiō sum, fuī, esse.
hateful, invīsus, -a, -um.
have, habeō, 2; (*hold*) teneō, tenuī, tentum, 2.
head, caput, -itis, *n.*
heal, *tr.*, sānō, 1; *intr.*, cōnsānescō, -sānuī, 3.
health, valētūdō, -inis, *f.*
heap, acervus, -ī, *m.*, cumulus, -ī, *m.*
hear, audiō, 4.
heart, cor, cordis, *n.*
hearth, focus, -ī, *m.*
heat, calor, -ōris, *m.*, aestus, -ūs, *m.*
heaven, caelum, -ī, *n.*; (*gods*) deī, deōrum, *m. pl.*
heavy, gravis, -e.
heed, cūrō, 1; (*obey*) pāreō, 2 (*with dat.*); **take —,** caveō, cāvī, cautum, 3.
height, altitūdō, -inis, *f.*
heir, hērēs, -ēdis, *c.*
help, auxilium, -ī, *n.*; *acc.* opem, *gen.* opis, *f.*
help, iuvō, iūvī, iūtum, 1 (*with acc.*); subveniō, -vēnī, -ventum (*with dat.*); succurrō, -currī, -cursum, 3 (*with dat.*).
hence, hinc.
herald, praecō, -ōnis, *m.*
herd, grex, gregis, *m.*
here, hīc.
hero, hērōs, -ōis, *m.*
hesitate, dubitō, 1 (*with infin.*).
hide, abdō, -didī, -ditum, 3; cēlō, 1.
high, altus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
hinder, impediō, 4; prohibeō, 2.
hindrance, impedīmentum, -ī, *n.*
hire, condūcō, -duxī, -ductum, 3.
his, suus, ēius, illīus (§ 87), *or leave untranslated* (§ 158).
hither, hūc.
hold, teneō, tenuī, tentum, 2; obtineō, -tinuī, -tentum, 2; sustineō, -tinuī, -tentum, 2.
holy, sacer, -cra, -crum.
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*; **at —,** domī.
honest, bonus, -a, -um, probus, -a, -um.
honour, *n.*, dignitās, -ātis, *f.*, honor, -ōris, *m.*
honour, *vb.*, colō, coluī, cultum, 3.
hope, *n.*, spēs, -ēī, *f.*
hope, *vb.*, spērō, 1.
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*; (*cavalry*) equitēs, -um, *m.*, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*
hot, calidus, -a, -um, ardens, -entis.
hound, canis, -is, *c.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.*, aedēs, -ium, *f. pl.*; **household,** familia, -ae, *f.*
how, *interrog. adv.*, quōmodo? **— many?** quot? **— few,** quotusquisque, quotaquaeque, quotumquidque; (*in exclamations*) quam.
human, hūmānus, -a, -um; *or use* hominum (*of men*).
hunger, famēs, -is, *f.*
hunt, vēnor, 1, *dep.*
hurry, *see* **hasten.**
hurt, laedō, laesī, laesum, 3 (*with acc.*); noceō, 2 (*with dat.*).

ice, glaciēs, -ēī, *f.*
ides, īdūs, -uum, *f. pl.*
idle, ignāvus, -a, -um, piger, -gra, -grum.
ignorance, imprūdentia, -ae, *f.*, inscientia, -ae, *f.*, ignōrantia, -ae, *f.*
ignorant of, to be, ignōrō, 1.
ill, aegor, -gra, -grum.
imitate, imitor, 1, *dep.*
immense, ingens, -entis ; infīnītus, -a, -um.
immortal, immortālis, -e.
impossible, *use* nōn possum, potuī, posse.
imprison, vincula iniciō, -iēcī, -iectum, 3.
imprisonment, custōdia, -ae, *f.*, vincula, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
impunity, with, impūne ; *or use adj.* inultus, -a, -um (*unavenged*).
in, in (*with abl.*), apud (*with acc.*).
increase, *tr.*, augeō, auxī, auctum, 2 ; *intr.*, crescō, crēvī, crētum, 3.
indeed, * quidem, vērō, rē vērā.
induce, indūcō, -duxī, -ductum, 3 ; impellō, -pulī, -pulsum, 3.
infantry, peditēs, -um, *m.*, peditātus, -ūs, *m.*
inflict wrong on, to, iniūriam faciō, fēcī, factum, 3 (*with dat.*) ; **inflict punishment**, poenā afficiō, -fēcī, -fectum (*with acc.*).
influence, *see* **persuade**.
inform, certiōrem faciō, fēcī, factum, 3 ; doceō, docuī, doctum, 2.
inhabit habitō (*with acc.*).
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *c.*
injure, *see* **hurt**.
injury, dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*, incommodum, -ī, *n.*, damnum, -ī, *n.*
inquire, *see* **ask**.
insane, insānus, -a, -um.
instruct, *see* **teach** ; be **instructed**, *see* **learn**.
insult, *n.*, iniūria, -ae, *f.*, contumēlia, -ae, *f.*
insult, *vb.*, contumēliam impōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3 (*with dat.*) ; be **insulted**, iniūriam accipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3.
intellect, mens, mentis, *f.*, ingenium, -iī, *n.*
intend, id agō (ēgī, actum, 3) ut (*with subj.*).
interest, (*zeal*) studium, -iī, *n.* ; (*interest on capital*) fēnus, -oris, *n.*
interpret, interpretor, 1, *dep.*
interval, intervallum, -ī, *n.* ; spatium, -iī, *n.*
into, in (*with acc.*).
invade, irruptiōnem (*or* incursiōnem) faciō, fēcī, factum, 3 ; invādō, -vāsī, -vāsum, 3.
invite, invītō, 1 ; vocō, 1.
iron, *adj.*, ferreus, -a, -um.
iron, *n.*, ferrum, -ī, *n.*
island, insula, -ae, *f.*
issue, exitus, -ūs, *m.*
Italian, Ītalicus, -a, -um.
ivory, ebur, -oris, *n.*

javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*, iaculum, -ī, *n.*
jealousy, aemulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
join, iungō, iunxī, iunctum, 3 ; colligō, -lēgī, -lectum, 3 ; — **battle**, proelium committō, -mīsī, -missum, 3.
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
joy, gaudium, -iī, *n.* ; laetitia, -ae, *f.*
joyful, laetus, -a, -um ; hilaris, -e.
judge, *n.*, iūdex, -icis, *m.*
judge, *vb.*, iūdicō, 1.
judgment, iūdicium, -iī, *n.*
jump, saliō, saluī, saltum, 4 ; insiliō, -siluī, -sultum, 4.
just, iustus, -a, -um ; — **as**, aequē (perinde) āc.
justice, iustitia, -ae, *f.*

keen, ācer, -cris, -cre.
keep, teneō, tenuī, tentum, 2; conservō, 1.
kill, occīdō, -cīdī, -cīsum, 3; interficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, 3; trucīdō, 1; — **oneself**, mortem consciscō, -scīvī *or* -scīī, scītum, 3 (*with dat.*).
kind, *adj.*, benignus, -a, -um, beneficus, -a, -um.
kind, *n.*, genus, -eris, *n.*
kindness, beneficium, -ii, *n.*
kindle, accendō, -cendī, -censum, 3; incendō, -cendī, -censum, 3.
king, rex, rēgis, *m.*
kingdom, regnum, -ī, *n.*
knight, eques, -itis, *m.*
know, sciō, scīvī, scītum, 3; nōvī, -isse (*perf.*); nōn ignōrō, 1; **I don't** —, nesciō, nescīvī *or* nescīī, nescītum, 3.
knowledge, scientia, -ae, *f.*
known, nōtus, -a, -um; **it is** —, constat, certum est.

labour, labor, -ōris, *m.*, opus, -eris, *n.*
lament, conqueror, -questus, 3, *dep.*; dēplōrō, 1.
land, *n.*, terra, -ae, *f.*, ager, agrī, *m.*, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
land, *vb.*, ē nāve ēgredior, ēgressus, 3, *dep.*
large, magnus, -a, -um.
last, ultimus, -a, -um, postrēmus, -a, -um; **at** —, tum dēmum, dēnique.
late, sērus, -a, -um.
Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um; **I know** —, Latīnē sciō, scīvī, scītum, 3.
laugh, rīdeō, rīsī, rīsum, 2.
law, lex, lēgis, *f.*
lay, pōnō, posuī, positum, 3; locō, 1; — **siege to**, obsideō, -sēdī, -sessum, 2; — **down a magistracy**, magistrātū abeō, -īvī *or* -iī, -itum, -īre, magistrātū me abdicō, 1.
lead, dūcō, duxī, ductum, 3; agō, ēgī, actum, 3.
leaf, frons, frondis, *f.*
learn, discō, didicī, 3; cognoscō, -nōvī, -nōtum, 3; certior fīō, factus sum, fierī.
learned, doctus, -a, -um, ērudītus, -a, -um.
least, *see* **little**; **at** —, saltem, certē.
leave, (*go away from*) discēdō, -cessī, -cessum, 3, ēgredior, ēgressus, 3, *dep.*; (*leave behind*) relinquō, reliquī, relictum, 3.
left, — **hand**, sinister, -tra, -trum, laevus, -a, -um.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
less, *see* **little**.
let, (*allow*) sinō, sīvī, situm, 3 (*with acc.*); permittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3 (*with dat.*); — **go**, dīmittō, -misī, -missum, 3.
letter, (*of alphabet*) littera, -ae, *f.*; (*epistle*) epistula, -ae, *f.*
level, aequus, -a, -um.
levy, mīlitēs conscribō, -scripsī, -scriptum, 3.
liberty, lībertās, -ātis, *f.*
lie, (*speak falsely*) mentior, 4, *dep.*; (*lie down*) iaceō, 2; **as far as lies in me**, prō vīribus meīs; — **hid**, lateō, 2.
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
light, *n.*, lūmen, -inis, *n.*, **lux**, lūcis, *f.*
light, *vb.*, lūceō, luxī, 2.
lightning, fulmen, -inis, *n.*, fulgur, -uris, *n.*
like, *adj.*, similis, -e.
like, *vb.*, amō, 1; dīligō, -lexī, -lectum, 3.
likely, **it is**, vērī simile est.
line (*of battle*), aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
lion, leō, -ōnis, *m.*
literature, litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
little, parvus, -a, -um; *compar.*, minor, -us; *superl.*, **minimus** -a, -um.
live, vīvō, vixī, victum, 3.

load, onus, -eris, *n.*
long, longus, -a, -um ; (*of hair*) prōmissus, -a, -um ; (*adv.*) diū ; — **ago,** prīdem, iamprīdem.
look, intueor, 2, *dep.* ; contemplor, 1, *dep.*
lose, āmittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3 ; perdō, -didī, -ditum, 3.
loss, damnum, -ī, *n.*
lot, sors, -tis, *f.*
loud, clārus, -a, -um, magnus, -a, -um.
love, *n.*, amor, -ōris, *m.*
love, *vb.*, amō, 1 ; dīligō, -lexī, -lectum, 3.

mad, insānus, -a, -um, dēmens, -entis.
magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
maintain, sustineō, -tinuī, -tentum, 2 ; retineō, -tinuī, -tentum, 2.
make, faciō, fēcī, factum, 3 ; creō, 1 ; (*render*) reddō, -didī, -ditum, 3.
man, (*opposed to beast*) homō, -inis, *m.* ; (*opposed to woman*) vir, virī, *m.* ; **young —,** adulescens, -entis, *m.*, iuvenis, -is, *m.* ; **old —,** senex, -is, *m.* ; **mankind,** hominēs, -um, *m. pl.*
manage, regō, rexī, rectum, 3 ; administrō, 1 ; gerō, gessī, gestum, 3.
manner, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, modus, -ī, *m.* ; **in the — of,** mōre, modō ; **manners,** mōrēs, mōrum, *m. pl.*
many, nultī, -ōrum, *m.*
march, *n.*, iter, itineris, *n.* ; **the troops on the —,** agmen, -inis, *n.* ; **make forced marches,** magnīs itineribus contendō, -tendī, -tentum, 3.
march, *vb.*, prōgredior, prōgressus, 3, *dep.* ; proficiscor, profectus, 3, *dep.*
mark of, it is the, est *with gen.*
marriage, mātrimōnium, -iī, *n.*, nuptiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
marry, (*of a man*) in mātrimōnium dūcō, duxī, ductum, 3 ; (*of a woman*) nūbō, nupsī, nuptum, 3 (*with dat.*).
marsh, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*
mass, mōlēs, -is, *f.*
massacre, *n.*, caedēs, -is, *f.*
massacre, *vb.*, trucīdō, 1.
master, dominus, -ī, *m.* ; magister, -trī, *m.*
matters, it, interest, rēfert (§ 385).
meadow, prātum, -ī, *n.*
means, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, facultās, -ātis, *f.*
mean, significō, 1 ; valeō, 2.
meaning, significātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
meet, congredior, congressus, 3, *dep.* ; conveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, 4 ; **to go to —,** obviam eō, īvī, itum, īre.
merciful, clēmens, -entis, mītis, -e.
mercy, misericordia, -ae, *f.*, venia, -ae, *f.*
message, nuntius, -iī, *m.*, mandātum, -ī, *n.*
messenger, nuntius, -iī, *m.*
method, *see* **manner.**
midday, merīdiēs, -ēī, *m.* ; (*adj.*) merīdiānus, -a, -um.
middle, medius, -a, -um.
mile, mille passūs ; **two,** *etc.*, **miles,** duo, etc., mīlia passuum.
mind, animus, -ī, *m.*, mens, mentis, *f.* ; **it comes into my —,** in mentem mihi venit.
miserable, miser, -ra, -rum, infēlix, -īcis.
misery, calāmitās, -ātis, *f.*, tristitia, -ae, *f.*
mistake, errō, 1 ; peccō, 1.
mix, temperō, 1 ; misceō, miscuī, mixtum, 2.
modest, pudens, -entis, verēcundus, -a, -um.
modesty, pudor, -ōris, *m.*

money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, argentum, -ī, *n.*
monument, monumentum, -ī, *n.*
more, plūrēs, -ium, plūs (plūris, *n.*) *with gen.* ; (*adv.*) magis, amplius.
morning, māne (*indect.*), *n.*
mortal, mortālis, -e.
mother, māter, -tris, *f.*
mound, tumulus, -ī, *m.*
mount, conscendō, -scendī, -scensum, 3.
mountain, mons, -tis, *m.*
mourn, *intr.*, lūgeō, luxī, luctum, 2 ; *tr.*, *see* **lament.**
mouth, ōs, ōris, *n.*
move, *tr.*, moveō, mōvī, mōtum, 2, commoveō, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2 ; *intr.*, moveor.
much, multus, -a, -um.
multitude, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*
murder, caedēs, -is, *f.*
murmur, murmur, -uris, *n.*
must, oportet, 2 (*with acc. & inf.*), debeō, 2 (*with inf.*) ; *or use gerund or gerundive.*
my, meus, -a, -um ; *often omitted.*

name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
nation, populus, -ī, *m.*, gens, -entis, *f.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*, ingenium, -ī, *n.*
near, *adj.*, propinquus, -a, -um, proximus, -a, -um; *adv.*, prope ; *prep.*, prope, ad (*with acc.*).
nearly, *see* **almost.**
necessary, it is, necesse est ; *see also* **must.**
neck, cervix, -īcis, *f.*
need, opus est (*with dat. of person and abl. of thing*) ; careō (*with abl.*).
negligence, negligentia, -ae, *f.*
neither . . . nor, nec . . . nec (= et nōn), nēve . . . nēve (= et nē).
nest, nīdus, -ī, *m.*
never, numquam.
new, novus, -a, -um, recens, -entis.
news, *see* **messenger.**
next, proximus, -a, -um ; — **day**, postrīdiē.
night, nox, noctis, *f.* ; **by** —, nocte, noctū.
no, *adj.*, nullus, -a, -um ; *adv.*, nōn, minimē ; **nobody**, nēmō, -inis, *c.* ; **nowhere**, nusquam.
noble, nōbilis, -e, honestus, -a, -um.
noise, strepitus, -ūs, *m.*
not, nōn, haud ; nē (*in wishes, commands, etc.*) ; (*in questions*) nonne ; — **even**, nē . . . quidem.
note-book, commentariī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* ; pugillārēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
nothing, nihil (*indecl.*).
now, nunc, iam ; (*to-day*) hodiē.
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*, cōpia, -ae, *f.* ; (*multitude*) multitūdō, -inis, *f.*
nymph, nympha, -ae, *f.*

oar, rēmus, -ī, *m.*
oath, iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.*
obey, pāreō, 2 (*with dat.*).
observe, animadvertō, -vertī, -versum, 3 ; spectō, 1.
obtain, *see* **get.**
occupy, habeō, 2 ; teneō, tenuī, tentum, 2 ; obtineō, -tinuī, -tentum, 2.
occurs to me, etc., **it**, in mentem mihi, etc., venit ; *see* **happen.**
often, saepe.
old, vetus, -eris, antīquus, -a, -um, priscus, -a, -um ; — **man**, senex, senis, *m.* ; — **woman**, anus, -ūs, *f.* ; — **age**, senectūs, -ūtis, *f.*

on, in *with abl.* ; — **the side,** ā parte ; — **account of,** propter, ob (*with acc.*).
once, semel ; **at —,** repente, subitō, statim.
one, ūnus, -a, -um.
only, *adj.*, ūnus, -a, -um, sōlus, -a, -um ; *adv.*, sōlum, tantum.
open, *adj.*, apertus, -a, -um.
open, *vb.*, aperiō, -peruī, -pertum, 4 ; patefaciō, -fēcī, -factum, 3.
openly, palam.
opinion, opīniō, -ōnis, *f.*, sententia, -ae, *f.* ; **in my —,** ut mihi vidētur ; **I give my —,** sententiam dīcō, dixī, dictum, 3.
opportunity, occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, potestās, -ātis, *f.*, facultās, -ātis, *f.*
oppose, resistō, -stitī, -stitum, 3 (*with dat.*).
opposite, adversus, -a, -um.
oppress, premō, pressī, pressum, 3 ; afflīgō, -flixī, -flictum, 3.
or, aut, vel.
oration, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
order, *n.*, (*rank*) ordō, -inis, *m.* ; *see also* **command** ; **in — to,** ut *with subj.*
order, *vb.*, iubeō, iussī, iussum, 2 (*with acc. and inf.*) ; imperō, 1 (*with dat. and* ut *with subj.*).
ornament, decus, -oris, *n.*, insigne, -is, *n.*
other, alius, -a, -um ; (*of two*) alter, -era, -erum ; (*the rest*) cēterī, -ae, -a.
otherwise, aliter, contrā, ē contrāriō.
ought, *see* **must.**
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
out of, ē *or* ex (*with abl.*).
outside, *adj.*, externus, -a, -um ; *adv.*, extrā.
over, *adv.*, suprā ; *prep.*, super ; **I make a bridge — a river,** pontem in flumine faciō, fēcī, factum, 3.
overhang, immineō, 2.
overthrow, subvertō, -vertī, -versum, 3 ; dēvincō, -vīcī, -victum, 3.
owe, debeō, 2 ; **it was owing to you that . . . not,** per tē stetit quōminus (*with subj.*).
own, my, your, etc., meus, -a, um, tuus, -a, -um, suus, -a, -um.
ox, bōs, bovis, *m.*

pace, gradus, -ūs, *m.*, passus, -ūs, *m.*
pain, dolor, -ōris, *m.* ; **to cause — to,** dolōre commoveō, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2 ; **take pains,** operam dō, dedī, datum, 1.
palace, rēgia, -ae, *f.*
pardon, *see* **forgive.**
parent, parens, -entis, *c.*
part, pars, partis, *f.* ; **I take — in,** partem capiō, cēpī, captum, 3 (*with gen.*) ; intersum, -fuī, -esse (*with dat.*).
pass, transeō, -īvī *or* -iī, -itum, -ire ; **transgredior,** -gressus, 3, *dep.* ; — **by,** praetereō, -iī, -itum, -īre.
past, praeteritus, -a, -um ; (*previous*) prior, -us.
pay, *n.*, stīpendium, -iī, *n.*
pay, *vb.*, solvō, solvī, solūtum, 3.
peace, pax, pācis, *f.*, ōtium, -iī, *n.*
peasant, agricola, ae, *m.*
people, vulgus, -ī, *n.* ; plebs, plēbis, *f.* ; populus, -ī, *m.* ; hominēs, -um, *m. pl.*
perceive, *see* **feel.**
perform, conficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, 3 ; fungor, functus, 3, *dep.* (*with abl.*).
perhaps, fortasse, forsitan (*with subj.*).
perish, *see* **die.**
persuade, persuādeō, -suāsī, -suāsum, 2 (*with dat.*) ; addūcō, -duxī, -ductum, 3 ; indūcō, 3.

philosopher, philosophus, -ī, *m.*; sapiens, -entis, *m.*
pick, *see* **gather.**
pierce, transfīgō, -fixī, -fixum, 3.
pig, sūs, suis, *c.*
pitiable, miser, -era, -erum, miserābilis, -e.
pity, misericordia, -ae, *f.*; **I feel —**, misericordiam habeō, 2.
place, *n.*, locus, -ī, *m.*
place, *vb.*, statuō, statuī, statūtum, 3; prōpōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3; — **oneself at**, consistō, -stitī, -stitum, 3.
plain, *adj.*, (*manifest*) manifestus, -a, -um.
plain, *n.*, plānitiēs, -ēī, *f.*
plan, consilium, -ī, *n.*, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
plant, serō, sēvī, satum, 3.
play, *n.*, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
play, *vb.*, lūdō, lūsī, lūsum, 3.
pleasant, grātus, -a, -um, iūcundus, -a, -um.
please, placeō, 2 (*with dat.*); dēlectō, 1 (*with acc.*); **to be —d**, gaudeō, gāvīsus, 2; **displease**, displiceō, 2 (*with dat.*).
pleasure, voluptās, -ātis, *f.*, dēlectātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
plenty, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
plot, *n.*, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
plot, *vb.*, coniūrō, 1.
plough, *n.*, arātrum, -ī, *n.*
plough, *vb.*, arō, 1.
pluck, vellō, vulsī, vulsum, 3; carpō, carpsī, carptum, 3.
plunder, *n.*, praeda, -ae, *f.*
plunder, *vb.*, dīripiō, -ripuī, -reptum, 3.
poem, carmen, -inis, *n.*, poēma, -atis, *n.*
poet, poēta, -ae, *c.*
point of, be on the, in eō sum (fuī, esse) ut (*with subj.*).
poison, venēnum, -ī, *n.*
poor, pauper, -eris.
position, *see* **place.**
possess, possideō, -sēdī, -sessum, 2; habeō, 2; teneō, tenuī, tentum, 2.
possible, *use* possum.
post, dispōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3; collocō, 1.
poverty, paupertās, -ātis, *f.*, egestās, -ātis, *f.*
power, potentia, -ae, *f.*, potestās, -ātis, *f.*
praise, *n.*, laus, -dis, *f.*
praise, *vb.*, laudō, 1.
prefer, praepōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3; antepōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3 (*with acc. of thing preferred*); posthabeō, 2 (*with dat. of thing preferred*); mālō, māluī, malle (*with infin.*).
prepare, parō, 1; instruō, -struxī, -structum, 3.
present, praesens, -entis; **at —**, in praesentī; **I am —**, adsum, intersum (-fuī, -esse).
presently, mox, statim.
preserve, conservō, 1; (*health*) tueor, tuitus *and* tūtus, 2, *dep.*
preside over, praesum, -fuī, -esse (*with dat.*).
pretence, speciēs, -ēī, *f.*
prevent, prohibeō, 2; impediō, 4.
price, pretium, -ī, *n.*; **at a high, low —**, magnō, parvō.
pride, superbia, -ae, *f.*
priest, sacerdōs, -ōtis, *c.*
prison, carcer, -eris, *m.*; **put in —**, in vincula (custōdiam) mittō, mīsī, missum, 3, in vincula conicio, -iecī, -iectum, 3.
private, prīvātus, -a, -um; — **affairs**, rēs prīvāta *or* domestica.
privately, clam.
probable, vērī similis, -e.
proclaim, praedīcō, -dixī, -dictum, 3; prōnuntiō, 1.
produce, ferō, tulī, lātum, ferre; ēdō, ēdidī, ēditum, 3.
prohibit, *see* **forbid.**

promise, prōmittō, -mīsī, missum, 3 ; polliceor, pollicitus, 2, *dep.*
proportion to, in, prō (*with abl.*).
propose a law, lēgem rogō, 1.
protect, tueor, tuitus *and* tūtus, 2, *dep.* ; dēfendō, -fendī, -fensum, 3.
prove, dēmonstrō, 1 ; (*teach*) doceō, docuī, doctum, 2.
prudence, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*
public, publicus, -a, -um.
publicly, palam, cōram omnibus.
pugilist, pugil, -ilis, *m.*
punish, pūniō, 4 ; castīgō, 1 ; **to be punished,** poenās dō, dedī, datum, 1, poenās solvō, solvī, solūtum, 3.
punishment, poena, -ae, *f.*, animadversiō, -ōnis, *f.*
pure, pūrus, -a, -um, integer, -gra, -grum.
purpose, on, consultō, dē industriā ; **to no —,** temerē.
pursue, prōsequor, prōsecūtus, 3, *dep.*
put, pōnō, posuī, positum, 3 ; collocō, 1 ; — **off,** differō, distulī, dīlātum, differre; — **over,** praficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, 3 (*with dat.*) ; — **to flight,** fugō, 1.

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*
question, interrogātiō, -ōnis, *f.* ; **there is no — about,** nōn est dubium quīn (*with subj.*) ; **the — is,** id agitur.
quick, *see* **fast.**
quickly, citō, celeriter.
quiet, tranquillus, -a, -um.
quietly, tacitē, tranquillē.
quite, omnīnō ; — **certainly,** haud dubiē.

race, (*kind*) genus, -eris, *n.* ; (*horse-race, etc.*) cursus, -ūs, *m.*
rain, *n.*, pluvia, -ae, *f.*, imber, imbris, *m.*
rains, it, pluit, pluit, 3.
raise, tollō, sustulī, sublātum, 3; (*money*) colligō, -lēgī, lectum, 3 ; comparō, 1.
rampart, vallum, -ī, *n.*, agger, -eris, *m.*
rash, inconsultus, -a, -um, temerārius, -a, -um.
rashly, inconsultē, temerē.
rather, potius ; **I would —,** mālō, māluī, malle (*with infin.*).
reach, perveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, 4.
read, legō, lēgī, lectum, 3 ; recitō, 1.
ready, parātus, -a, -um.
real, vērus, -a, -um.
really, rēvērā.
rear, *n.*, novissimum agmen, -inis, *n.*
rear, *vb.*, alō, aluī, altum, 3.
reason, (*cause*) causa, -ae, *f.* ; (*rationality*) ratiō, -ōnis, *f.* ; **for this —,** propterea ; **there is no —,** nōn (nihil) est, quod (cūr).
rebellion, mōtus, -ūs, *m.*, tumultus, -ūs, *m.*
rebuke, reprehendō, -prehendī, -prehensum, 3 ; increpō, -crepuī, -crepitum, 1.
recall to one's mind, in mēmōriam redigō, -ēgī, -actum, 3.
receive, accipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 ; (*a person*) excipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3.
reckless, imprūdens, -entis.
recklessly, temerē.
recognise, agnoscō, -nōvī, -nitum, 3.
refuse, recūsō, 1 ; nōlō, nōluī, nolle.
regret, paenitet, piget, 2 (*with acc. & gen. or inf.*).
regular, iustus, -a, -um.
reign, regnō, 1 ; imperium teneō, tenuī, tentum, 2.

reject, spernō, sprēvī, sprētum, 3.
rejoice, gaudeō, gāvīsus sum, 2; laetor, 1, *dep.*
relation, propinquus, -ī, *m.*, necessārius, -ī, *m.*
release, dīmittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3.
remain, maneō, mansī, mansum, 2; (*survive*) superō, 1, supersum, -fuī, -esse.
remedy, medicīna, -ae, *f.*
remember, meminī, -isse (*with gen.*); recordor, 1, *dep.*
remind, commoneō, 2.
remove, *tr.*, āmoveō, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2; tollō, sustulī, sublātum, 3; *intr.*, discēdō, -cessī, -cessum, 3.
renew, renovō, 1; redintegrō, 1.
repair, reficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, 3.
repent, paenitet (*with acc. & gen. or inf.*).
report, nuntiō, 1; referō, rettulī, relātum, referre.
reproof, *see* **blame.**
reputation, glōria, -ae, *f.*, laus, laudis, *f.*
request, *see* **ask.**
resign magistracy, magistrātum abdicō, 1, magistrātū abeō, -iī, -itum, -īre.
resist, *see* **oppose.**
respect, observantia, -ae, *f.*, reverentia, -ae, *f.*
retire, mē, *etc.*, removeō, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2.
retreat, *n.*, receptus, -ūs, *m.*
retreat, *vb.*, mē, *etc.*, recipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3; pedem referō, rettulī, relātum, referre.
return, *n.*, reditus, -ūs, *m.*
return, *vb. intr.*, revertor, reversus, 3, *dep.*; redeō, -iī, -itum, -īre; *vb. tr.*, reddō, -didī, -ditum, 3; restituō, -stituī, -stitūtum, 3.
reveal, patefaciō, -fēcī, -factum, 3.
revenge, ulciscor, ultus, 3, *dep.*
rich, dīves, -itis.
riches, dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, opēs, -um, *f. pl.*
right, *adj.*, (*right hand*) dexter -tera, -terum, *or* -tra, -trum; (*just*) aequus, -a, -um, rectus, -a, -um, iustus, -a, -um; *n.*, iūs, iūris, *n.*
rise, surgō, surrexī, surrectum, 3; orior, ortus, 4, *dep.*
rising, *see* **rebellion.**
river, fluvius, -ī, *m.*, flūmen, -inis, *n.*, amnis, -is, *m.*
road, via, -ae, *f.*
rob, ēripiō, -ripuī, -reptum, 3 (*with acc. of thing, dat. of person*).
rock, saxum, -ī, *n.*, rūpēs, -is, *f.*
rod, virga, -ae, *f.*
roof, tectum, -ī, *m.*, culmen, -inis, *n.*
rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*
rule, *n.*, lex, lēgis, *f.*
rule, *vb.*, regō, rexī, rectum, 3; moderor, 1, *dep.*
run, currō, cucurrī, cursum, 3.
rush, ruō, ruī, rutum, 3; irruō, -ruī, -rutum, 3.

sacred, sacer, -cra, -crum, sanctus, -a, -um.
sacrifice, *n.*, sacra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
sacrifice, *vb.*, sacrificō, 1; immolō, 1.
sad, maestus, -a, -um, tristis, -e.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um (*adv.* tūtō), integer, -gra, -grum, incolumis, -e.
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
sail, *n.*, vēlum, -ī, *n.*
sail, *vb.*, nāvigō, 1.
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
sake of, for the, ob, propter (*with acc.*), causā, grātiā (*with gen.*).
salute, salūtō, 1.

same, īdem, eadem, idem.
satisfy, placeō, 2 (*with dat.*).
save, servō, 1.
say, dīcō, dixī, dictum, 3; praedicō, 1; **say that . . . not**, negō, 1; **says he**, inquit.
scarcely, vix, aegrē.
science, scientia, -ae, *f.*, ars, artis, *f.*
scorn, contemnō, contempsī, contemptum, 3; spernō, sprēvī, sprētum, 3.
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*; **seamanship**, nāvigandī ars, artis, *f.*
season, annī tempus, -oris, *n.*
seat, sella, -ae, *f.*, sedīle, -is, *n.*; **seats** (*in court, etc.*), subsellia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
second, secundus, -a, -um, alter, -era, -erum.
secret, abditus, -a, -um.
secretly, clam.
see, videō, vīdī, vīsum, 2; spectō, 1; — **to**, consulō, -suluī, -sultum, 3 (*with dat.*).
seed, sēmen, -inis, *n.*
seek, quaerō, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 3; petō, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītum, 3.
seem, videor, vīsus, 2, *dep.*
seemly, **it is**, decet, 2 (*with acc.*).
seize, comprehendō, -prehendī, -prehensum, 3; corripiō, -ripuī, -reptum, 3.
sell, vendō, -didī, -ditum, 3; venditō, 1.
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*; **senate-house**, cūria, -ae, *f.*
senator, senātor, -ōris, *m.*
send, mittō, mīsī, missum, 3; transmittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3; — **away**, dīmittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3; — **back**, remittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3; — **for**, arcessō, -īvī, -ītum, 3; acciō, 4.
sentinel, vigil, -ilis, *m.*
separate, sēiungō, -iunxī, -iunctum, 3.
serious, gravis, -e, sevērus, -a, -um.
servant, servus, -ī, *m.*; minister, -tri, *m.*
serve, serviō, 4 (*with dat.*).
service, ministerium, -iī, *n.*
serviceable, *see* **useful**.
set, impōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3; — **up**, exstruō, -struxī, -structum, 3.
several, nonnullī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, plūrēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, aliquot (*indecl.*).
severe, gravis, -e.
shade, **shadow**, umbra, -ae, *f.*
shake, quatiō, quassum, 3; concutiō, -cussī, -cussum, 3; quassō, 1.
shame, pudor, -ōris, *m.*
share, *n.*, pars, partis, *f.*
share, *vb.*, partior, 4, *dep.*
sharp, acūtus, -a, -um, ācer, ācris, ācre.
shatter, ēlidō, -līsī, -līsum, 3; quassō, 1.
sheep, ovis, -is, *f.*
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
shine, lūceō, luxī, —, 2; niteō, 2.
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
shock, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
shoot, iaculor, 1, *dep.*; ēmittō, -mīsī, -missum, 3.
short, brevis, -e; **in a — time**, brevī, paucīs diēbus.
shout, *n.*, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*; **to raise a —**, clāmōrem tollō, sustulī, sublātum, 3.
shout, *vb.*, clāmō, 1; exclāmō, 1.
show, monstrō, 1; ostendō, -dī, -tum, 3; prōpōnō, -posuī, -positum, 3; ostentō, 1.
shower, imber, imbris, *m.*, pluvia, -ae, *f.*
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.
side, latus, -eris, *n.*
siege, oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.*
sign, *see* **mark**.
silence, silentium, -iī, *n.*

silent, tacitus, -a, -um; **be —,** sileō, 2; taceō, 2.
silently, tacitē, silentiō.
silver, argentum, -ī, *n.*
simple, simplex, -icis.
sin, *n.*, nefās (*indecl.*), *n.*
sin, *vb.*, peccō, 1.
since, *adv.*, abhinc; *prep.*, ē, ex, ā, ab (*with abl.*), post (*with acc.*); *conj.*, (*because*) cum, quandoquidem, (*after*) postquam.
sing, canō, cecinī, cantum, 3; cantō, 1.
single, ūnus, -a, -um, sōlus, -a, -um.
sink, collābor, -lapsus, 3, *dep.*
sister, soror, -ōris, *f.*
sit, sedeō, sēdī, sessum, 2; consīdō, -sēdī, -sessum, 3.
skill, peritia, -ae, *f.*, ars, artis, *f.*
sky, caelum, -ī, *n.*
slaughter, caedēs, -is, *f.*, clādēs, -is, *f.*
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*
slay, *see* **kill.**
sleep, *n.*, somnus, -ī, *n.*
sleep, *vb.*, dormiō, 4.
slow, tardus, -a, -um.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
smoke, fūmus, -ī, *m.*
snake, anguis, -is, *c.*
so, sīc, ita, tam; — **far from . . . that,** tantum abest ut . . ., ut . . .
soften, molliō, 4.
soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*; **foot —,** pedes, -itis, *m.*; **horse —,** eques, -itis, *m.*
sole, *see* **only.**
son, fīlius, -iī, *m.*; **— in-law,** gener, -erī, *m.*
song, cantus, -ūs, *m.*; carmen, -inis, *n.*
soon, brevī tempore, mox; **sooner,** citius.
soothsayer, haruspex, -icis, *m.*
sorrow, dolor, -ōris, *m.*, tristitia, -ae, *f.*
sort, of what? cūiusmodī?
sound, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, strepitus, -ūs, *m.*
sow, serō, sēvī, satum, 3; sēmen spargō, sparsī, sparsum, 3.
spare, parcō, peperci, parsum, 3 (*with dat.*).
speak, loquor, locūtus, 3, *dep.*; dīcō, dixī, dictum, 3; — **to,** alloquor, -locūtus, 3, *dep.*
spear, hasta, -ae, *f.*
speed, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*
spend, (*time*) agō, ēgī, actum, 3; (*time or money*) consūmō, -sumpsī, -sumptum, 3.
spoil, praeda, -ae, *f.*, spolia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
spread, pandō, pandī, passum, 3; **be — out,** pateō, 2.
spring, (*fountain*) fons, fontis, *m.*; (*the season*) vēr, vēris, *n.*
sprinkle, aspergō, -spersī, -spersum, 3.
spur, calcar, -āris, *n.*
spy, speculor, 1, *dep.*
stab, fīgō, fixī, fixum, 3; confodiō, -fōdī, -fossum, 3.
staff, baculum, -ī, *n.*
stag, cervus, -ī, *m.*
stand, stō, stetī, stātum, 1; consistō, -stitī, -stitum, 3.
star, sīdus, -eris, *n.*
start, *n.*, *see* **beginning.**
start, *vb.*, proficiscor, profectus, 3, *dep.*
state, *n.*, respublica, rēīpublicae, *f.*
state, *vb.*, *see* **report.**
statue, statua, -ae, *f.*
stay, commoror, 1, *dep.*; maneō, mansī, mansum, 2.
steep, praeceps, -cipitis.
step, prōgredior, prōgressus, 3, *dep.*; dīgredior, dīgressus, 3, *dep.*
stick, baculum, -ī, *n.*, virga, -ae, *f.*
still, *adj.*, tranquillus, -a, -um, placidus, -a, -um.

still, *adv.*, adhūc, etiam.
stone, lapis, -idis, *m.*, saxum, -ī, *n.*
stop, *intr.*, consistō, -stitī, -stitum, 3; *tr.*, impediō, 4.
storm, *n.*, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*
storm, *vb.*, expugnō, 1.
strait, fretum, -ī, *n.*
strange, novus, -a, -um, mīrus, -a, -um, aliēnus, -a, -um.
stream, flūmen, -inis, *n.*
street, via, -ae, *f.*, vīcus, -ī, *m.*
strength, vīs, *abl.* vī, *f.*, rōbur, -oris, *n.*, opēs, opum, *f. pl.*
stretch out, porrigō, porrexī, porrectum, 3.
strike, verberō, 1; caedō, cecīdī, caesum, 3.
strip, spoliō, 1; exuō, exuī, exūtum, 3.
strong, validus, -a, -um, firmus, -a, -um, fortis, -e.
submit, cēdō, cessī, cessum, 3; manūs dō, dedī, datum, 1.
succeed, succēdō, -cessī, -cessum, 3.
such, tālis, -e.
suddenly, subitō, improvīsō.
suffer, patior, passus, 3, *dep.*; perferō, -tulī, -lātum, -ferre.
sufficient, satis.
suicide, commit, mortem conscīscō, -scīvī *and* -scīī, -scītum, 3 (*with dat.*).
summon, citō, 1; arcessō, -īvī, -ītum, 3.
sun, sōl, -is, *m.*
superior, (*higher*) superior, -us; (*better*) melior, -us.
supply, *see* **furnish.**
suppose, opīnor, 1, *dep.*
sure, certus, -a, -um; **be —,** certē sciō, 4.
surely, certē, certō, sānē.
surpass, superō, 1.
surrender, *n.*, dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
surrender, *vb.*, mē, *etc.*, dēdō, -didī, -ditum, 3; mē, *etc.*, trādō, -didī, -ditum, 3 (*with dat.*).
surround, circumdō, -dedī, -datum, 1; cingō, cinxī, cinctum, 3.
suspect, suspicor, 1, *dep.*
swear, iūrō, 1; iūs iūrandum dō, dedī, datum, 1.
sweet, dulcis, -e, suāvis, -e.
swell, tumeō, 2.
swift, vēlox, -ōcis, celer, -eris, -ere.
swiftly, citō, celeriter.
swim, nō, 1; natō, 1.
sword, gladius, -ii, *m.*

table, mensa, -ae, *f.*
take, sūmō, sumpsī, sumptum, 3; capiō, cēpī, captum, 3; tollō, sustulī, sublātum, 3.
talk, loquor, locūtus, 3, *dep.*; — **together,** inter sē colloquī.
tall, excelsus, -a, -um, longus, -a, -um.
tarry, *see* **delay.**
tax, vectīgal, -ālis, *n.*, tribūtum, -ī, *n.*
teach, doceō, docuī, doctum, 2.
tear, *n.*, lacrima, -ae, *f.*
tear, *vb.*, lanīō, 1; convellō, -vellī, -vulsum, 3.
tedious, longus, -a, -um.
tell, *see* **report.**
temperance, continentia, -ae, *f.*, temperantia, -ae, *f.*
tempest, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*, procella, -ae, *f.*
temple, aedēs, -is, *f.*, templum, -ī, *n.*, fānum, -ī, *n.*
tend, pertinet (2) **ad** (*with acc.*).
terms, condiciōnēs, -um, *f. pl.*
terrible, atrox, -ōcis, immānis, -e.
than, quam; *or use abl.*
thank, grātiās agō, ēgī, actum, 3 (*with dat.*).
thanks, grātiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*; **return —,** *see* **thank.**
that, *dem. adj. or pron.*, ille, -la, -lud; iste, -ta, -tud (*that of yours*); is, ea, id.

that, *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod.
that, *conj.*, ut (*in order that*); **that** (*in order that*) . . . **not**, nē; (*in indirect statements*) *use acc. & inf.*
the . . . the, quō . . . eō.
then, tunc, tum.
thence, illinc.
theory, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, doctrīna, -ae, *f.*
there, ibi, illic.
thick, densus, -a, -um.
thief, fūr, fūris, *c.*
thin, tenuis, -e.
thing, rēs, rēī, *f.*
think, cōgitō, 1; putō, 1; arbitror, 1, *dep.*; censeō, censuī, censum, 2; crēdō, crēdidī, crēditum, 3.
thirst, sitis, is, *f.*
this, hīc, haec, hōc.
thither, eō.
thou, tū, tuī.
though, *see* **although**.
thousand, mille, *pl.* mīlia, -ium, *n.*
threat, minae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
threaten, minor, 1, *dep.*; dēnuntiō, 1 (*with dat.*).
through, per (*with acc.*).
throw, iaciō, iēcī, iactum, 3; mittō, mīsī, missum, 3.
thunders, **it**, tonat, 1.
tide, aestus, -ūs, *m.*
till, *prep.*, usque ad (*with acc.*); *conj.*, dum.
till, *vb.*, arō, 1; colō, coluī, cultum, 3.
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*; **in the mean—**, interea.
timid, timidus, -a, -um, pavidus, -a, -um.
to, ad, in (*with acc.*), *or use dat.*; **to-day**, hodiē; **to-morrow**, crās.
tomb, sepulcrum, -ī, *n.*
too, etiam, quoque.
tooth, dens, -entis, *m.*
touch, tangō, tetigī, tactum, 3.
tower, turris, -is, *f.*
town, urbs, urbis, *f.*, oppidum, -ī, *n.*; **townspeople**, oppidānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
traitor, prōditor, -ōris, *m.*
transport, nāvis (-is) onerāria (-ae), *f.*
treaty, foedus, -eris, *n.*
tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*
tremble, tremō, tremuī, 3.
tribe, tribus, -ūs, *f.*, gens, gentis, *f.*, populus, -ī, *m.*
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
trouble, *n.*, animī mōtus, -ūs, *m.*, sollicitūdō, -inis, *f.*
trouble, *vb.*, sollicitūdine afficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, 3.
truce, indūtiae, -ārum, *f.*
true, vērus, -a, -um.
trust, *n.*, fīdūcia, -ae, *f.*, fidēs, -ēī, *f.*
trust, *vb.*, (con) fīdō, -fīsus sum, 3 (*with dat.*); crēdō, crēdidī, creditum, 3 (*with dat.*).
truth, **speak**, vērum *or* vēra dicō, dixī, dictum, 3.
try, experior, expertus, 4, *dep.*; cōnor, 1, *dep.*
turn, vertō, vertī, versum, 3; convertō, -vertī, -versum, 3.
tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, *m.*, rex, rēgis, *m.*

unable, nequeō, -quīvī, -īre, *or use* possum.
unaccustomed, insuētus, -a, -um.
unaware, inopīnans, -antis, imprōvīsus, -a, -um.
uncertain, incertus, -a, -um, dubius, -a, -um, anceps, -cipitis.
uncle, patruus, -ī, m., avunculus, -ī, *m.*
unconquered, invictus, -a, -um.
under, sub (*with abl. & acc.*).
undergo, sustineō, -tinuī, -tentum, 2; perferō, -tulī, -lātum, -ferre.

understand, intellegō, -exī, -ectum, 3 ; percipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3.
undertake, suscipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3.
unexpectedly, ex improvīsō, contrā opīniōnem.
ungrateful, ingratus, -a, -um.
unhappy, infēlix, -īcis, miser, -era, -erum.
unhealthy, aeger, -gra, -grum.
unite, coniungō, -iunxī, -iunctum, 3.
unjust, iniustus, -a, -um, inīquus, -a, -um.
unknown, ignōtus, -a, -um, incognitus, -a, -um.
unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis, -e.
unlucky, infēlix, -īcis.
unpleasant, molestus, -a, -um, ingrātus, -a, -um.
unrevenged, inultus, -a, -um.
until, dum, dōnec, quoad.
untrue, falsus, -a, -um.
unwilling, invītus, -a, -um.
unworthy, indignus, -a, -um (*with abl.*).
urge, impellō, -pulī, -pulsum, 3 ; accendō, -cendī, -censum, 3.
useless, inūtilis, -e, vānus, -a, -um, inānis, -e.

vain, in, frustrā.
value, aestimō, 1 ; magnī faciō, fēcī, factum, 3.
vast, immānis, -e, ingens, -entis.
venerate, colō, coluī, cultum, 3 ; veneror, 1, *dep.*
vengeance, *see* **revenge.**
very, maximē, valdē.
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
vigorously, fortiter, ācriter, vehementer.
vigour, rōbur, -oris, *n.*
villa, villa, -ae, *f.*
violate, violō, 1.
violence, violentia, -ae, *f.*, vīs, *abl.* vī, *f.*
virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
visit, vīsō, vīsī, —, 3 ; salūtō, 1.
voice, vox, vōcis, *f.*
vote, *n.*, sententia, -ae, *f.*
vote, *vb.*, censeō, 2 ; dēcernō, -crēvī, -crētum, 3.
voyage, cursus, -ūs, *m.*

wait, maneō, mansī, mansum, 2 ; — **for**, exspectō, 1.
walk, eō, īvī, itum, īre ; ambulō, 1.
wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*, moenia, -ium, *n.*
want, *n.*, inopia, -ae, *f.*
want, *vb.*, *see* **need.**
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*, mīlitia, -ae, *f.*
waste, (*lay waste*) vastō, 1 ; (dē)populor, 1, *dep.* ; — **time**, tempus perdō, -didī, -ditum, 3.
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
wave, fluctus, -ūs, *m.*, unda, -ae, *f.*
way, via, -ae, *f.*, iter, -ineris, *n.*
weapon, arma, armōrum, *n. pl.*
weary, fessus, -a, -um ; **be** —, taedet (*with acc.*).
weep, lacrimō, 1 ; fleō, flēvī, flētum, 2.
well, bene, rectē.
what, id quod (*that which*) ; quid (*in dependent questions*).
when, *interrog. adv.*, quandō ; *rel. adv.*, cum, ut, ubi ; *often trans. by participle.*
whence, *interr. & rel. adv.*, unde.
whenever, *rel. adv. or conj.*, quandōque, quandōcumque ; cum (§ 259).
where, *interrog. or rel. adv.*, ubi, quā (*in what place*) ; quō (*to what place*) ; —**from**, unde.
whereupon, quam ob rem (*on account of which*).

wherever, *rel. adv.*, ubicumque (*in whatever place*); quōcumque (*to whatever place*).
whether . . . or, seu (sīve) . . . seu (sīve); *in dependent questions*, num, utrum . . . an.
which, *interr. adj. & rel. pron.*, *see* **who**; *which of two*, uter, -tra, -trum, *gen.* utrius.
white, albus, -a, -um, candidus, -a, -um.
who, *interr. pron.*, quis, quid; *rel. pr. and interr. adj.*, qui, quae, quod.
why, cūr? quārē?
wicked, impius, -a, -um, scelestus, -a, -um, malus, -a, -um.
wife, coniux, -iugis, *f.*, uxor, -ōris, *f.*
wild, ferus, -a, -um.
will, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*, testamentum, -ī, *n.*
willing, libens, -entis (*adv.*, libenter), volens, -entis.
win, (*victory*) reporto, 1.
wind, ventus, -ī, *m.*
wine, vīnum, -ī, *n.*
wing, āla, -ae, *f.*, (*of an army*) cornū, -ūs, *n.*
winter, hiems, -is, *f.*; — **quarters**, hiberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
wipe out, aboleō, -evī, -itum, 2.
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*
wise, sapiens, -entis, prūdens, -entis.
wish, volō, voluī, velle; cupiō, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītum, 3.
wit, facētiae, -ārum, *f.*, sal, salis, *m.*, salēs (*dat.* salibus), *m. pl.*
with, cum (*with abl.*), *or use abl.*
withdraw, *tr.*, removeō, -ōvī, -ōtum, 2; *intr.*, *use* mē removeō, *or* removeor.
within, intrā, intus.
without, *adv.*, extrā; *prep.*, sine (*with abl.*).
witness, *n.*, testis, -is, *c.*; **call as a —**, testor, 1, *dep.*; contestor, 1, *dep.*
woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*, mulier, -eris, *f.*; **old —**, anus, -ūs, *f.*
wonder, mīror, 1, *dep.*
wonderful, mīrus, -a, -um, mīrābilis, -e.
wont, be, soleō, -itus sum, 2.
wood, silva, -ae, *f.*
word, verbum, -ī, *n.*, dictum, -ī, *n.*
work, *n.*, opus, operis, *n.*
work, *vb.*, labōrō, 1.
world, orbis (-is) terrārum, *m.*; (*universe*) mundus, -ī, *m.*
worthless, perditus, -a, -um, nēquam (*indecl.*).
worthy, dignus, -a, -um (*with abl.*).
wound, *n.*, vulnus, -eris, *n.*
wound, *vb.*, vulnerō, 1.
wreck, frangō, frēgī, fractum, 3; **be wrecked**, naufragium faciō, fēcī, factum, 3.
wretched, miser, -era, -erum, tristis, -e.
write, scribō, scripsī, scriptum, 3; **writing-tablet**, pugillārēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
wrong, *n.*, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
wrongly, male, iniūriā.

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
yearly, *adv.*, quotannīs.
yesterday, herī.
yet, (*however*) *tamen, etiam, (*still*) adhūc; **not —**, nondum.
yield, *see* **surrender**.
yoke, iugum, -ī, *n.*
young, (*man*) adulescens, -entis; (*grass*, etc.) novus, -a, -um.
youth, (*abstract*) iuventūs, -ūtis, *f.*; (*young man*) adulescens, -entis, *m.*, iuvenis, -is, *m.*

zeal, studium, -ī, *n.*, industria, -ae, *f.*

INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS, ETC.

The numbers refer to the sections of the book.
For Cases see § 524 ; *for the Subjunctive see* § 525.

ABLATIVE—
1st decl. pl. 312
3rd decl. sing. 324
4th decl. pl. . . . 343
absolute 134-9
syntax of, 27, 68-9, 224-5, 364-81, 383-5
Accentuation 5
Accusative—
in 3rd decl. 324
subject of infinitive 95-7
syntax of . . . 23-4, 55-7, 222-3, 313-7, 327-31, 383-4
Accusing, verbs of 339
Adjectives—
declension of . . . 19, 52-4, 103, 326, 452-5
used substantivally 40
with substantives 18, 141, 151-2
comparison of . . . 112-7, 140-4
indeclinable 141
numeral 217-21, 456-7
usages 342
equivalent to adverbs . . . 390
Advantage, dative of 349
Adverbial accusative 331
Adverbs 126-9, 520
comparison of . . . 130-2, 145
numeral 217, 456
usages 386-90
Agent 68, 226-7, 353
Alphabet 2
Antecedence of tenses 248
Apposition 110-1
Asking, verbs of 56, 327
Attribute 151
Attributive genitive 333-8

BASE—
of substantives 14
of verbs—
present 31
perfect 43
supine 59
table of bases 471

CALENDAR 427-30
Calling, verbs of 55
Cardinal numerals 217-9, 456-7
Cases 13, 524
See also Nominative, etc.
Causal clauses 276-82
Cause, ablative of 67
Circumstantial clauses 296
Classical Latin 1
Clauses, classification of . . . 296
See also Temporal, Conditional, etc.
Cognate accusative 328
Commands 33, 149
dependent 236-7
in oratio obliqua 425
Comparative—
adjectives 112-7, 140-4
with abl. 381
adverbs 130-1, 145
clauses 284-6
Complex sentences 181, 289, 293-6
Composite subject 215
Compound verbs 197-200
Concessive clauses 271-5
Condemning, verbs of 339
Conditional sentences . . . 244-58
dependent 393, 397-400
in oratio obliqua 526

Conjugation, *see* Verbs
Conjunctions 406-10
Consecutive clauses... 202 5, 242

DATIVE—
in certain adjectives (ī) 153, 453
4th declension pl. 344
syntax of ... 26, 66, 80, 345-55
Decreeing, verbs of 236
Defective substantives 325
Defective verbs 216, 515-9
Deliberative subjunctive ... 150
Demonstrative pronouns 156-66, 460-5
Dependent—
question 185-94
command 236-7
statement 95, 99, 294
Deponent verbs... .. 73-8, 482-5, 491-5
Description, ablative of . 377
Distributive numerals 217, 456
Doubting, verbs of 242
Dubitative subjunctive 150

ENCLITICS 38-9
Epistolary imperfect 418
Ethic dative..... . .. 350
Exclamations, accusative .. 315
Exhortations 149
Extent, accusative of 222-3, 329

FACTITIVE verbs..... 55
Fearing, verbs of 233
Final clauses 230-5, 239-43
Fractions of **ās** 433
Future—
indicative 31, 251, 259
imperative 382
infinitive active 82, 96-7
infinitive passive 82, 317
infinitive (periphrasis) ... 398
participle 105, 109
Future-perfect indicative 248, 251, 259

GENDER of substantives 15-7, 70-1 100 2
Genitive—
in 1st decl. 310-1
in 2nd decl. 319-21
in 3rd decl. 323
in certain adjectives (-ius) 153, 453
syntax of 25, 58, 332-43, 385
Gerund 89-92, 226, 255
Gerundive..... ... .. . 227-9, 255
Greek substantives 362-3

HETEROCLITE substantives 356, 357
Hexameter..... 300-3
Hindering, verbs of . . 241
Historic infinitive . . 416
Historic present 416
Hoping, verbs of 97
Hypothetical sentences. *See* Conditional.

IDIOM and word-order 527-36
Imparisyllabic substantives..... .. 64, 323
Imperative 31, 33, 382
in apodosis 251
Imperfect—
indicative 32, 417-8
subjunctive 146
Impersonal verbs... 79-81, 93, 94, 385
Indefinite adverbs 201
Indefinite pronouns.. 207-14, 468
Indefinite subject 81
Indicative—
in relative clauses 173
in conditional sentences 246, 251, 255
in temporal clauses . 259-60, 262-6, 269
in concessive clauses ... 273-4
in causal clauses 271
in local clauses 283
in comparative clauses ... 284
dependent on acc. and inf. 395

Indicative—
See also Present, etc.
Indirect. *See* Dependent.
Infinitive 82-4, 93-9
tenses of 96-7
in oratio obliqua 420
See also Present, etc.
Instrument, ablative of 27, 372-3
Interest..... 434
Interrogative particles 38, 164-6
Interrogative pronouns 184, 467
Intransitive verbs—
with dat. 26, 66
with acc. 328
Irregular verbs 167-70, 182-3, 472 499-514

JUSSIVE subjunctive .. 148-9

LACKING, verbs of 339, 368
Likeness, adjectives of 341
Local ablative..... .. 365-70
Local clauses 283
Locative—
of substantives 357, 361
syntax of 361

MAKING, verbs of 55
Manner, ablative of 67, 376
Material, genitive of 335
Measure, ablative of 374
Metre..... ..... 300 305
Money, Roman 431
Mood. *See* Indicative, etc.

NEARNESS, adjectives of..... 341
Negative phrases 387
Nominative 20
Number 9, 215
Numerals..... 217-21, 456-7

OBJECT—
external 23, 55, 314-7, 347
Object—
internal 56, 57. 222-3, 328-31
indirect 26, 66, 346 54
double 55-6
cognate 328
Objective genitive..... ... 339-41
Optative subjunctive..... . 161
Oratio obliqua 419-26, 526
Order of words 28, 527-36
Ordinal numerals 220, 456
Origin, ablative of 380

PARISYLLABIC substantives 48, 323
Participles 104, 120-5
and clauses 288
See also Present, Perfect, etc.
Particles, inseparable 38-9
Partitive genitive 338
Passive, of intransitive verbs 79-80
Patronymics... 363
Pentameter 304-5
Perfect—
indicative.. .... 45, 59
infinitive 82
participle. 118-25
as simple predicate..... 60
with active meaning 412
with passive meaning from deponents..... 413
Person 8, 215
in oratio obliqua 422
Personal pronouns 41, 85 7, 458-9
with cum 88
Place—
whither 24, 316
where 27, 361, 366
whence 69, 379
Plural, with special meaning 217
Possessive—
adjectives..... . .. .. 42, 87
genitive 25, 333
dative 352
Potential subjunctive 256
Praenomina 435

Predicative—
genitive 58
dative 355
Prepositions 401-5, 521-3
in composition 198-200
Present—
indicative 12, 414-6
imperative 33
infinitive 82
participle 105-8
subjunctive 146
Preventing, verbs of 241
Price—
genitive of 337
ablative of 375
Principal parts of verbs 61, 486-508
Prohibitions 162-3, 234
Promising, verbs of 97
Pronouns. *See* Personal, Demonstrative, etc.
table of 470
in dependent clauses 238
in oratio obliqua 423-9
Pronunciation 6
Prosody 298
Purpose—
how expressed 229-32, 239, 317
dative of 354

QUALITY, genitive of 336
Quantity 3-4, 298
Questions—
direct 35-8, 164-6
dependent 185-94
in oratio obliqua 426

REFLEXIVE pronouns 86
Relative pronouns 171-2, 466
clauses 173-9, 203-5, 239-40, 275
Remembering, verbs of 339
Reported—
questions 185-94
cause 278
description or definition 290-292
Reported—
condition 291-2
statement 95, 99, 294
Respect—
accusative of 330
ablative of 368
Retained accusative 57
Road, ablative of 373

SEMI-DEPENDENCE, subj. in 237
Semi-deponents 77
Separation, ablative of 380
Sequence of tenses 190-1, 290, 393, 526
Space, extent of 222
Sub-dependent clauses 392-400
Subject 20
composite 215
Subjective genitive 334
Subjunctive 146-7, 525
See also Jussive, etc.
Substantives—
declensions of 13, 47-51 64, 70-2, 436-51
gender of 15-17, 100-1
irregularities in declension 310-2, 318-25, 343-4, 444
Greek 362-3, 448-51
verbal 82-4, 89-92, 226, 255
usages 355, 372, 376
Superlative—
adjectives 112-6
adverbs 130-2
Supine 317, 369
with īrī 82, 317

TAKING away, verbs of 346
Teaching, verbs of 56
Temporal clauses 259-70
Tenses. *See* Sequence, Present, Perfect, etc.
Time—
throughout which 223
when 224, 361
within which 225

VALUE—
genitive of 337
locative of 360
ablative of 375
Verbs ....' 7-12
impersonal 79-81, 385
contracted forms... 411
regular conjugations of 473-80
deponent 73-8, 482-5
principal parts of..... 486-508
Verbs—
irregular 472, 509-24
defective 216
Vocative 22
in ī.... 318

WISHES 161
Word - order and idiom 527-36

PRINTED AT THE BURLINGTON PRESS, FOXTON, NEAR CAMBRIDGE, ENGLAND